SIEMENS

Industrial Controls

Motor management and control devices SIMOCODE pro

System Manual

05/2018
A5E40507475002A/RS-AB/002

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

⚠DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

⚠WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Division Digital Factory
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E40507475002A/RS-AB/002
℗ 05/2018 Subject to change

Table of contents

Introduction 1

1.1 Important notes

Purpose of this manual

The SIMOCODE pro System Manual describes in detail the motor management system and its functions. It contains information about configuring, commissioning, service and maintenance.

In addition to help on how to identify and rectify faults in the event of a malfunction, the manual also contains specific information for servicing and maintenance.

Required basic knowledge

To understand this manual you will require basic knowledge of low-voltage controls and distribution, digital circuit engineering and automation technology.

Scope of the manual

This manual is applicable to the listed SIMOCODE pro system components. It contains a description of the components applicable at the time of printing the manual. SIEMENS reserves the right to include updated information about launched new components or new versions of components in a Product Information.

Manual Collection

A Manual Collection (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/document/109743951), a collection of the following five SIMOCODE pro manuals, is available in Industry Online Support:

- SIMOCODE pro - 1 Getting Started
- SIMOCODE pro - 2 System Manual
- SIMOCODE pro - 3 Parameterization
- SIMOCODE pro - 4 Applications
- SIMOCODE pro - 5 Communication.

Device series

When reference is made to "SIMOCODE pro", the reference also includes the following device series:

SIMOCODE pro C (see Device series (Page 20))

SIMOCODE pro S (see Device series (Page 20))

SIMOCODE pro V PB (PROFIBUS) (see Device series (Page 20))

SIMOCODE pro V PN (PROFINET) (see Device series (Page 20))

SIMOCODE pro V MBR (Modbus RTU) (see Device series (Page 20)

SIMOCODE pro V EIP (EtherNet/IP) (see Device series (Page 20)

When reference is made to "SIMOCODE pro V", the reference also includes all pro V devices, independently of communication.

SIMOCODE pro response tables

Specific responses (deactivated, signaling, warning, tripping) can be parameterized for various SIMOCODE pro functions, such as overload. These are always displayed in tabular form:

- "X" = Applicable
- "—" = not applicable
- Default values are marked "d" for "default" in parentheses.

Response	Function 1	Function 2	Function 3
Tripping	—	X (d)	X
Warning	X (d)	X	—
Signaling	X	X	—
Deactivated	X	X	X (d)
Delay	0 to 25.5 s (default: 0)	—	—

Short description of the responses:

- Tripping: The contactor controls QE* are tripped. A fault message is generated which is available as a diagnosis via PROFIBUS DP. The fault message and the device-internal signal remain on until the appropriate length of time has elapsed or the cause of the fault has been eliminated and acknowledged.
- Warning: In addition to the device-internal signal, a warning signal is generated that is available as diagnostics via the communication bus.
- Signaling: Only a device-internal signal is generated, which can be further processed as required.
- Deactivated: The appropriate function is switched off, no signals are generated.

A delay time can also be set for specific responses.

Operating instructions and other manuals

- Please read the operating instructions of the respective components (Operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals))
- In addition to the "SIMOCODE pro" manual collection, the following manuals are available to you:
  - The manual "SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852)
  - The appropriate manual for the DP master
  - The system manual "SIMATIC PROFINET System Description" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127)
  - The manual "Fault-tolerant S7-400H systems" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/1186523)
  - Programming manual "PROFINET IO - from PROFIBUS DP to PROFINET IO" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19289930)
  - The application description "Saving Energy with SIMATIC S7 and ET200 S" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/41986454)

More information

You will find further information on the Internet:

- SIMOCODE pro (https://www.siemens.com/simocode)
- Information and Download Center (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/infomaterial)
- Siemens Industry Online Support (SIOS) (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/support)
- Certificates (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/approvals).

Technical Assistance

Support Request (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/technical-assistance)

Telephone: +49 (911) 895-5900 (8 a.m. to 5 p.m. CET)

Fax: +49 (911) 895-5907

Email: technical-assistance@siemens.com

Disclaimer of liability

The products described here have been developed to perform safety-related functions as part of a complete plant or machine. In general, a complete safety system consists of sensors, evaluation units, signaling devices and methods for safe tripping. The manufacturer is responsible for ensuring safe functioning of the complete plant or machine. Siemens AG, its subsidiaries, and associated companies (hereinafter referred to as "Siemens") are not in a position to guarantee every characteristic of a complete plant or machine not designed by Siemens.

Siemens also denies all responsibility for any recommendations that are made or implied in the following description. No new guarantee, warranty, or liability claims above those standard to Siemens can be derived from the following description.

Recycling and disposal

For environmentally friendly recycling and disposal of your old device, please contact a company certified for the disposal of electronic waste and dispose of the device in accordance with the regulations in your country.

1.2 Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens' products and solutions only form one element of such a concept.

Customer is responsible to prevent unauthorized access to its plants, systems, machines and networks. Systems, machines and components should only be connected to the enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent necessary and with appropriate security measures (e.g. use of firewalls and network segmentation) in place.

Additionally, Siemens' guidance on appropriate security measures should be taken into account. For more information about industrial security, please visit:
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends to apply product updates as soon as available and to always use the latest product versions. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under:
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity

1.3 Current information about operational safety

Important note for maintaining operational safety of your system

DANGER

Hazardous Voltage

Can Cause Death, Serious Injury or Risk of Property Damage

Please take note of our latest information!

Systems with safety-related characteristics are subject to special operational safety requirements on the part of the operator. The supplier is also obliged to comply with special product monitoring measures. For this reason, we publish a special newsletter containing information on product developments and features that are (or could be) relevant to operation of safety-related systems. By subscribing to the appropriate newsletter in the Industry newsletter system (https://www.industry.siemens.com/newsletter), you will ensure that you are always up-to-date and able to make changes to your system, when necessary. Sign on to the following newsletter under "Products & Solutions":

- Control Components and System Engineering News
- Safety Integrated Newsletter.

1.4 Information about third-party software

Third-party software components

This product, this solution or this service ("product") contains the third-party software components listed below. These consist either of open source software that is licensed under a license recognized by Open Source Initiative (http://www.opensource.org) or a license defined by Siemens as being comparable ("OSS") and/or commercial software or freeware. With regard to the OSS components, the relevant OSS terms and conditions take priority over all other terms and conditions applicable to this product.

SIEMENS is providing you with the OSS portions of this product at no additional cost. Insofar as SIEMENS has combined or linked, according to the definition of the applicable license, specific components of the product with OSS components that are licensed under GNU LGPL Version 2 or a later version, and insofar as the applicable object file may not be used without restrictions ("LGPL-licensed module, the LGPL-licensed module and the components with which the LGPL-licensed module is combined hereinafter referred to as "combined product") and the applicable LGPL license criteria are fulfilled, you may additionally (i) edit the combined product for your own purposes and may in particular acquire the right to edit the combined product to link it with a modified version of the LGPL-licensed module and (ii) reverse engineer the combined product, but solely for the purpose of error correction of your edits. The right to edit shall not include the right to distribute. You must treat as confidential all information you acquire from reverse engineering of the combined product.

Certain OSS licenses require SIEMENS to publish the source code, e.g. the GNU General Public License, the GNU Lesser General Public License and the Mozilla Public License. Insofar as these licenses apply and the product has not already been delivered with the necessary source code, anyone may request a copy of the source code from the following address during the period of time specified in the applicable OSS license:

Siemens AG

Digital Factory Division

Control Products

Technical Assistance

Breslauer Strasse 5

90766 Fürth

Germany

Email: technical-assistance@siemens.com
(https://www.siemens.com/sirius/technical-assistance)

Subject: open source inquiry (specify the product name and version, where applicable)

SIEMENS can charge a processing fee of up to 5 euros to respond to the inquiry.

Warranty regarding use of open source software

The warranty obligations of SIEMENS are laid down in the applicable contract with SIEMENS. Insofar as you modify the product or the OSS components or use them in a manner other than specified by SIEMENS, warranty shall be ruled out and no technical support shall be provided. The following license terms and conditions may contain liability limitations that apply between you and the relevant licensor. To clarify matters, your attention is drawn to the fact that SIEMENS shall not cede any warranty obligations on behalf of or as an obligation for a third-party licensor.

NOTICE
Open source software and/or third-party software included in this product Please note the following license terms and conditions and copyright notices applicable to the open source software and/or other components (or parts thereof):

Component	Open Source Software [Yes/No]	Acknowledgements/ Comments	License conditions and copyright notices
tiva ware - 2.1.0	NO		LICENSE AND COPYRIGHT INFORMATION FOR COMPONENT TIVA WARE - 2.1.0 (see below)

LICENSE CONDITIONS AND COPYRIGHT NOTICES

Commercial Software: tiva ware - 2.1.0

Enclosed you'll find license conditions and copyright notices applicable for Commercial Software tiva ware - 2.1.0.

License conditions:

//

// Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without

// modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions

// are met:

//

// Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright

// notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

//

// Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright

// notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the

// documentation and/or other materials provided with the

// distribution.

//

// Neither the name of Texas Instruments Incorporated nor the names of

// its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived

// from this software without specific prior written permission.

//

// THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS

// "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT

// LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR

// A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT

// OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL,

// SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT

// LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE,

// DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY

// THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT

// (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE

// OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyrights:

1.5 What is SIMOCODE pro?

SIMOCODE pro (SIRIUS Motor Management and Control Device) is a flexible and modular motor management system for motors with constant speeds in low-voltage applications. It optimizes the link between the control system and the motor feeder, increases plant availability and allows significant savings to be made during installation, commissioning, operation and maintenance. SIMOCODE pro is installed in the low-voltage switchgear system and links the higher-level automation system and the motor feeder intelligently. It comprises the following functions:

- Multifunctional and electronic full motor protection, independently of the automation system
- Integrated control functions for motor control (instead of hardware)
- Detailed operating, service and diagnostics data
- Fail-safe shutdown up to SIL3 using fail-safe expansion modules (SIMOCODE pro V only)
- Open communication through PROFIBUS DP, PROFINET, Modbus RTU and EtherNet/IP
- Parameterization with the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software package

Only the switching and short-circuit protection mechanisms of the main circuit (contactors, circuit breakers, fuses) are additionally needed.

1.6 Device series

The following functionally graduated device series are available for SIMOCODE pro:

- SIMOCODE pro C - the compact system for PROFIBUS DP communication with a direct-on-line and reversing starter function and/or for controlling a circuit breaker (MCCB).
- SIMOCODE pro S - the smart system for PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET with direct-on-line, reversing, and star-delta starter function or for controlling a circuit breaker or soft starter. Its expandability with a multifunction module ensures there are always plenty of inputs and outputs. It enables precise ground-fault monitoring via the 3UL23 residual current transformer and temperature measurement.
- SIMOCODE pro V - the variable system that offers numerous functions, such as voltage measurement and fail-safe shutdown, in addition to all the SIMOCODE pro C/pro S functions. Devices are available for the following communication protocols:
  - PROFIBUS DP
  - Modbus RTU
  - PROFINET
  - EtherNet/IP.

See Check list for selecting a device series (Page 51).

1.7 Modules, interfaces, configuration options

For each feeder, every system comprises a basic unit and a separate current measuring module. Both modules are connected to each other electronically via the system interface, by means of a connecting cable, and can be installed together as a unit (behind one another) or separately (side-by-side). An operator panel can also be connected optionally via the second system interface on the basic unit, and installed in the switchgear cabinet door. The current measuring module and the operator panel are connected to the basic unit via connecting cables, which also supply the power. More inputs, outputs and functions can be added to the SIMOCODE pro S, pro V PB, pro V MB RTU, pro V EtherNet/IP and pro V PN basic units by means of optional expansion modules, thus supplementing the inputs and outputs already existing on the basic unit. All modules are connected by connecting cables. The connecting cables are available with different lengths (ribbon cable 0.025 m, 0.1 m, 0.3 m, 0.5 m; round cable 0.5 m, 1.0 m, 2.5 m).

NOTICE
Maximum length of the connecting cable The total length of all cables must not exceed 3 m on either of the system interfaces of the basic unit!

NOTICE
The maximum distance between modules The maximum distance between the modules (e. g. between the basic unit and the current measuring module) must not exceed 2.5m.

Additional control programs (star-delta starters, Dahlander starters, pole-changing starters, soft starters, each program also possible in combination with reversing starter, solenoid valve and positioner) are integrated in SIMOCODE pro V. The SIMOCODE pro V device type is also particularly versatile. Its functionality can be expanded, if required, for example:

- The number and type of binary inputs and outputs can be increased in stages and adapted.
- A current / voltage measuring module can be used for additional voltage measurement and for monitoring power-related measured values (power management).
- A temperature module enables the evaluation of several analog temperature sensors.
- A ground-fault detection system can be integrated together with a summation current transformer.
- An analog module extends the system by additional analog inputs and outputs, for example, for fill-level or flow-rate monitoring.
- An operator panel with display (OPD) is available as an alternative to the standard operator panel (OP) (restriction in the case of the SIMOCODE pro V PB: from version *E03*).

SIMOCODE pro C and SIMOCODE pro S are upwardly-compatible with SIMOCODE pro V. This means you can combine different series in your plant according to functional requirements.

Depending on functional requirements, the systems can be used simultaneously in a low-voltage switchboard without any problems and without any additional effort.

Parameterization of SIMOCODE pro C or SIMOCODE pro S can be transferred without a problem.

Advantages/benefits/configuration with SIMOCODE pro

2

2.1 Advantages/benefits

- The quantity of cabling required between the motor feeder and the PLC is reduced significantly by connecting the entire motor feeder to the process control system via the fieldbus (see Figures "SIMOCODE pro, integrated in the main circuit, control circuit and at automation level (PLC)")
- Automated processes are decentralized by means of configurable control and monitoring functions in the feeder. This saves automation system resources and ensures that the feeder is fully functional and protected even if the control system or bus system fails.
- By recording and monitoring operating, service and diagnostics data in the feeder and process control system, plant availability is increased, and the feeder is easier to service and maintain.
- The user can implement plant-specific requirements for every motor feeder thanks to the high degree of modularity.
- SIMOCODE pro provides compact solutions and different levels of functions for every customer application.
- By replacing the control circuit hardware with an integrated control function, the quantity of required hardware components with wiring is reduced. This drives down storage costs and limits potential wiring errors.
- Using electronic full motor protection allows the motors to be used more efficiently and ensures that the tripping characteristic remains stable and the tripping response stays the same, even after many years.

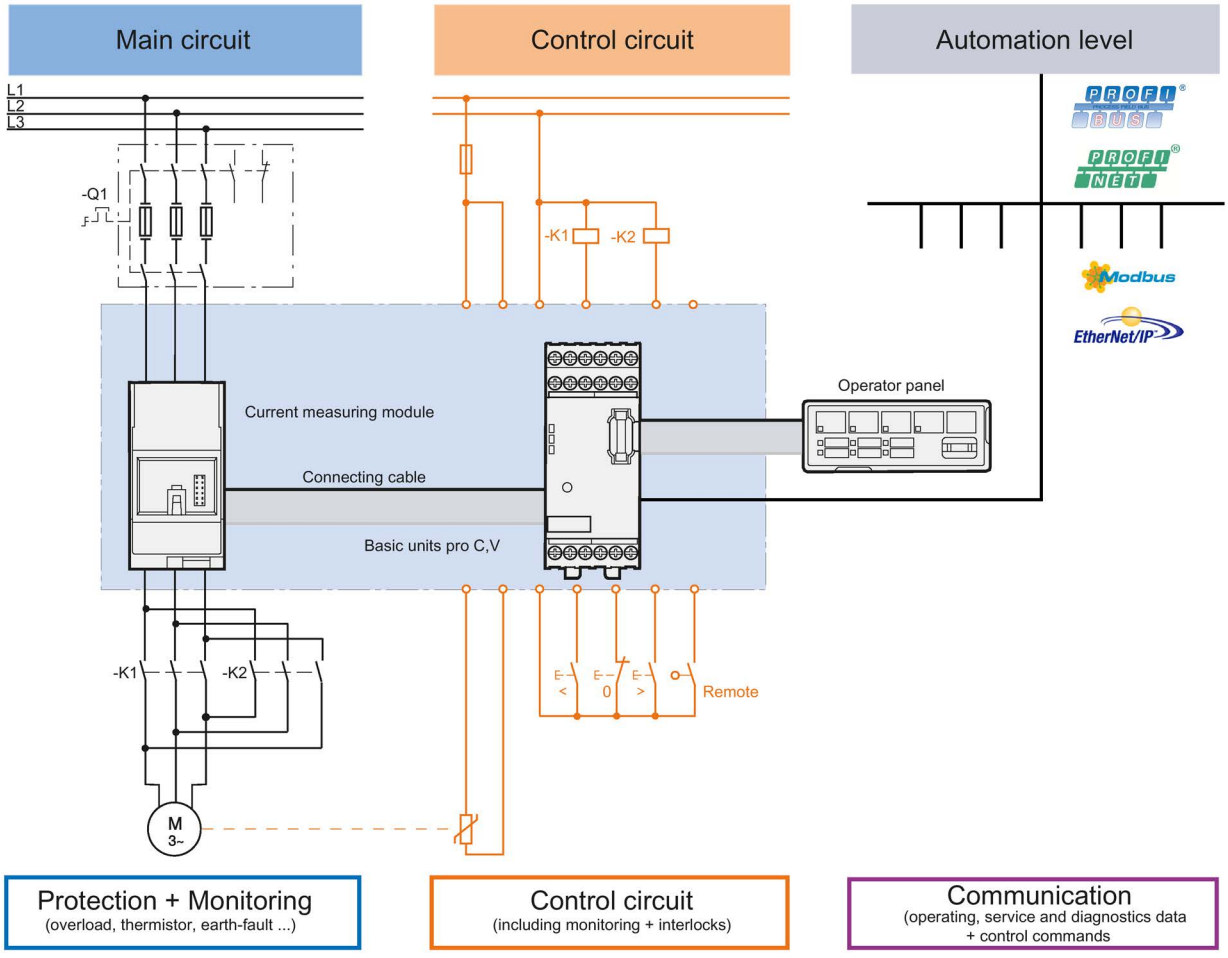


Figure 2-1 SIMOCODE pro C, pro V, integrated in the main circuit, control circuit and at automation level (PLC)

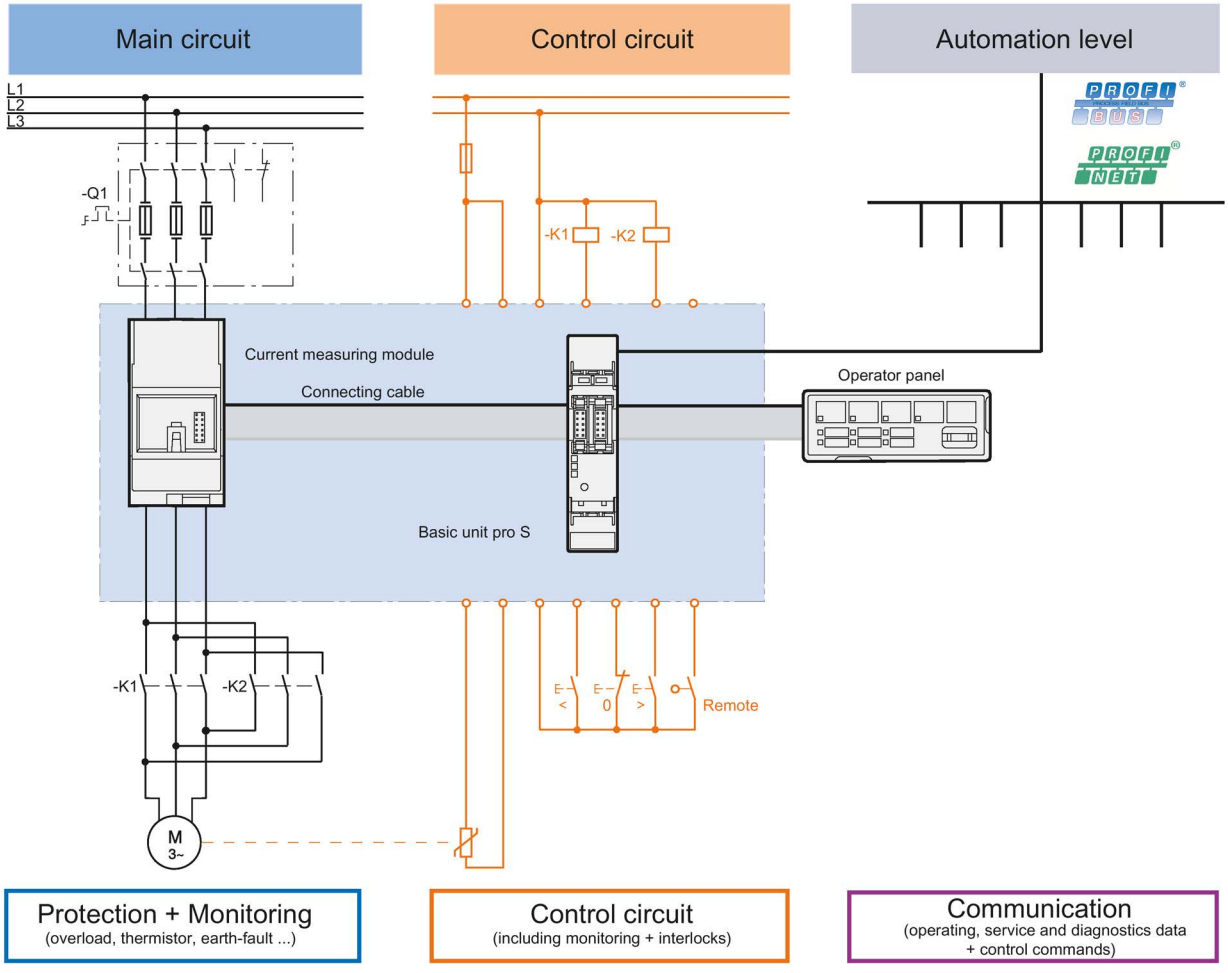


Figure 2-2 SIMOCODE pro S, integrated in the main circuit, control circuit and at automation level (PLC)

2.2 Independent operation

SIMOCODE pro protects and controls the motor feeder, independently of the automation system. Even if the automation system (PLC) fails, or if communication is disrupted, the motor feeder remains fully protected and controllable. SIMOCODE pro can be used without being connected to the fieldbus. This can easily be connected later, if required.

2.3 Simplifying configuration with SIMOCODE pro

Conventional configuration without SIMOCODE pro

Individual components are used for control, monitoring and signal pre-processing. The component and wiring requirements for this type of configuration are as follows:

- Use and wiring of overload relays, thermistor evaluation devices, current transformers and analog/digital converters
- Wiring of the control circuit
- Connection of start / stop control devices
- The contactor must be brought into locking mode via the auxiliary switches
- Wiring of the interlocks

The following figure illustrates the conventional configuration of a direct starter:

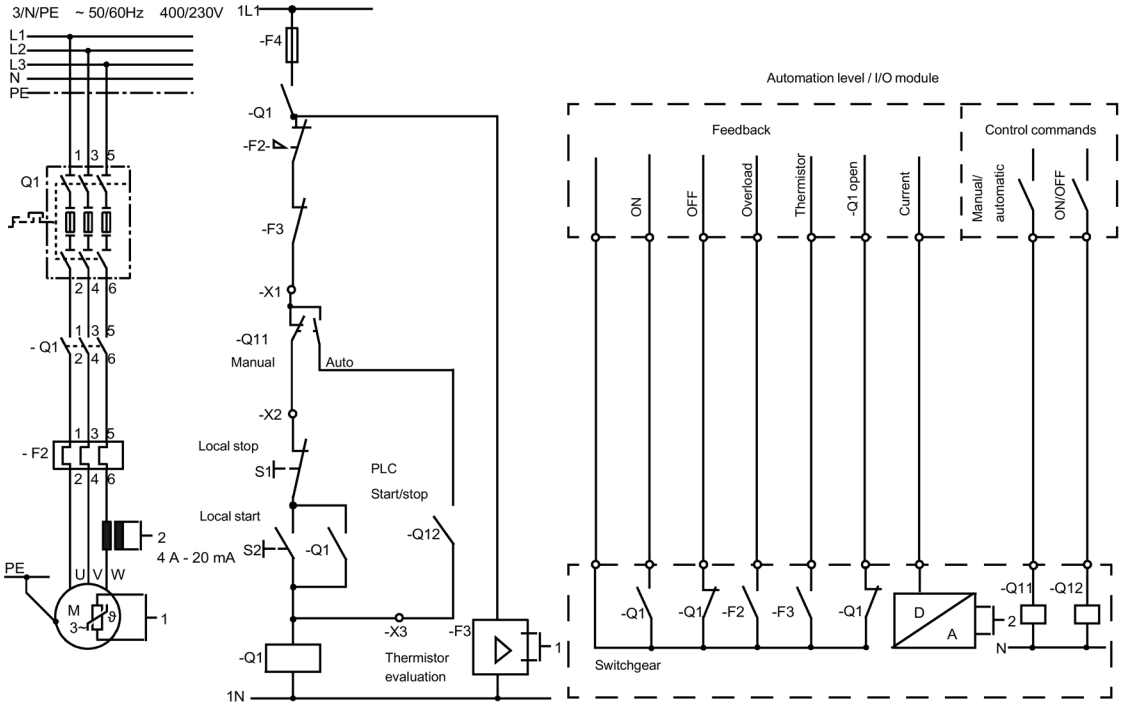


Figure 2-3 Conventional configuration of a motor feeder (direct starter)

Configuration with SIMOCODE pro

SIMOCODE pro only is used to perform all control, monitoring and signal pre-processing functions.
The advantages of this configuration are as follows:

- Additional overload relays, thermistor evaluation devices, current transformers and analog/digital converters are not necessary.
- The wiring of the control circuit (interlocking) is simplified.
- The start and stop switches are wired directly to the inputs of the basic unit.
- The contactor coil is energized via the output of the basic unit. An auxiliary contact for locking is not required.

The following figure illustrates a configuration with SIMOCODE pro connected to PROFIBUS:

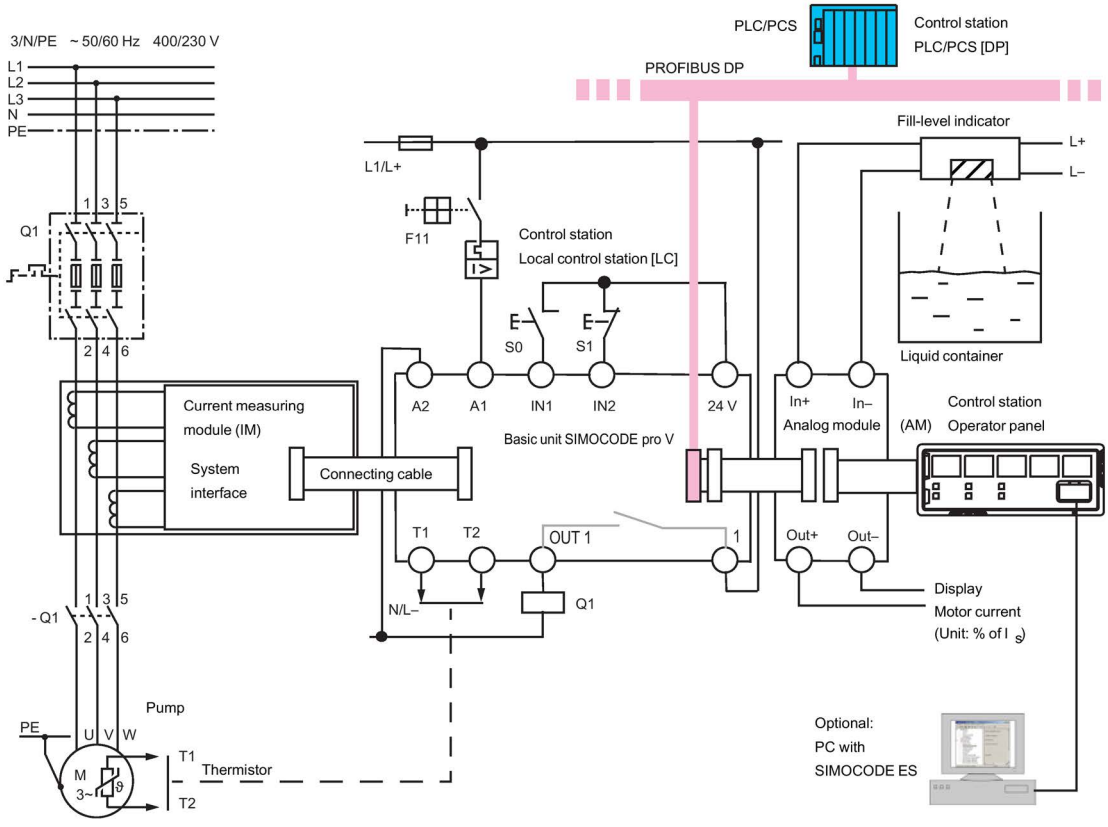


Figure 2-4 Configuration of a load feeder (direct-on-line starter) with SIMOCODE pro

2.4 Typical configuration

The following figures show typical hardware configurations:

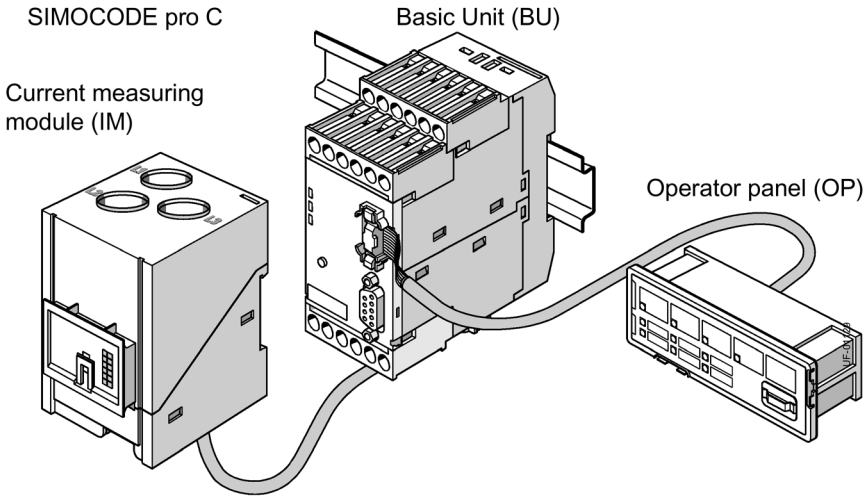


Figure 2-5 Typical SIMOCODE pro C hardware configuration

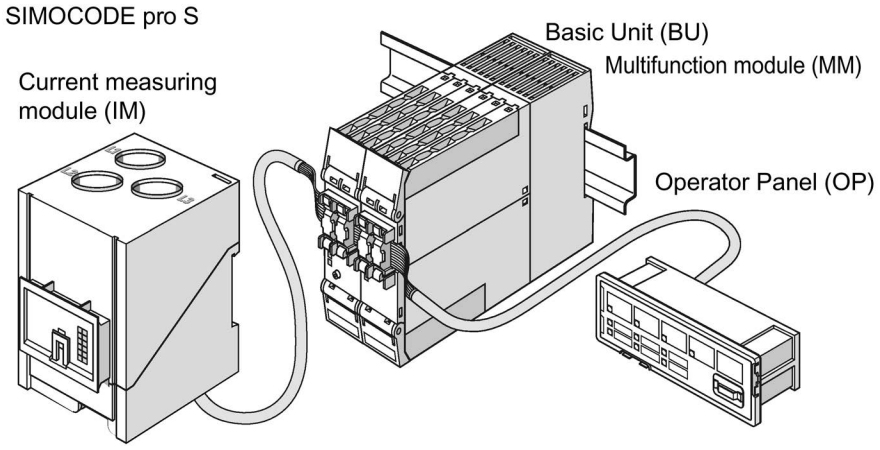


Figure 2-6 Typical SIMOCODE pro S hardware configuration

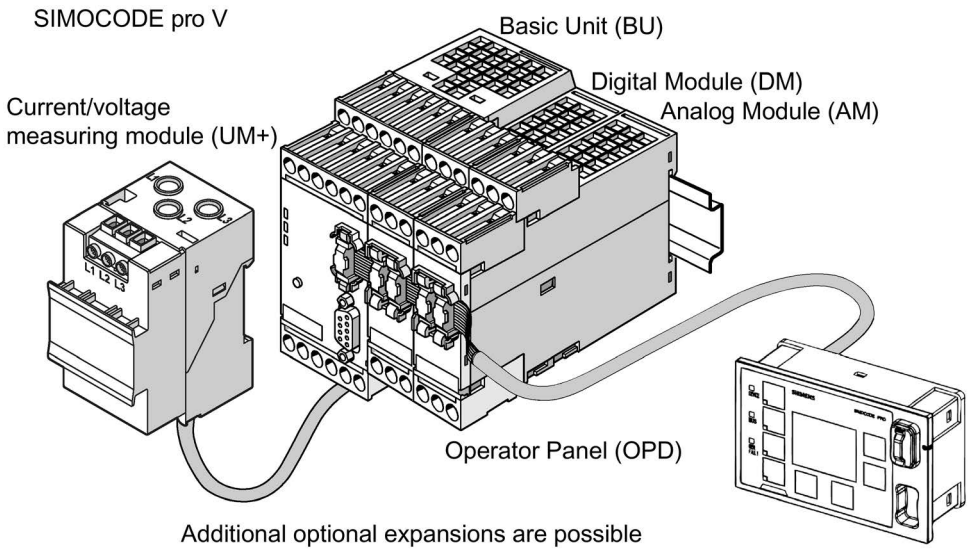


Figure 2-7 Typical SIMOCODE pro V PROFIBUS/Modbus RTU hardware configuration

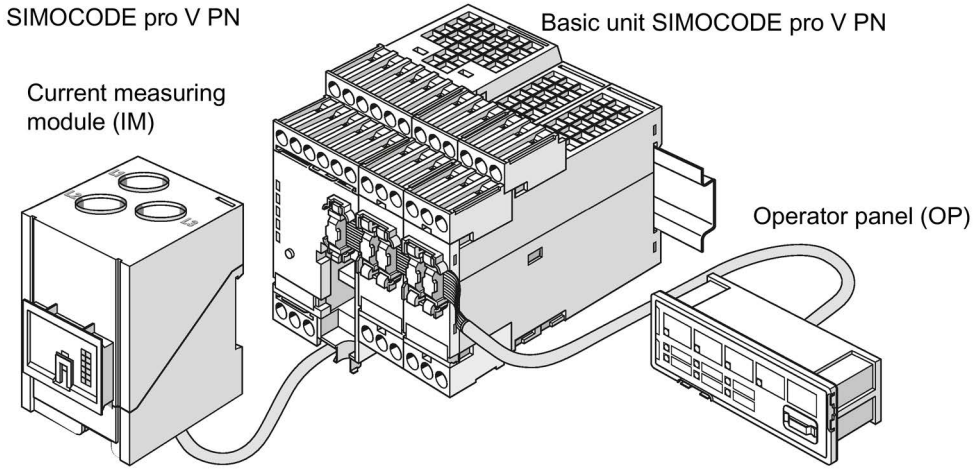


Figure 2-8 Typical SIMOCODE pro V PN/EtherNet/IP hardware configuration

For information about system components, see Chapter Description of system components (Page 67).

Areas of application

3

SIMOCODE pro is often used for automated processes where plant downtimes are very expensive (e.g. steel or cement industry) and where it is important to prevent plant downtimes through detailed operating, service and diagnostics data or to localize the fault very quickly in the event of a fault.

SIMOCODE pro is modular and space-saving and suited especially for operation in motor control centers (MCC) in the process industry and in power plants.

Protection and control of motors:

- in hazardous areas for different types of protection according to the ATEX Directive 2014/34/EU (see also Section Safety and commissioning information for Ex areas (Page 279))
- Heavy-starting motors (paper, cement and metal industries; water management)
- In high-availability plants (chemical, oil, and raw material processing industry, power plants)

SIMOCODE pro is especially designed for the chemical industry (including oil and gas), the steel industry, water management, and the paper, pharmaceutical, cement and glass industries. Further applications include power plant engineering and diamond, gold and platinum mines. Based on the experience gained with the predecessor system SIMOCODE DP, SIMOCODE pro has been tailored even more specifically to the requirements of these industries. The availability of motors and thus the entire process plays an important role in these industries. Downtimes caused by faults often lead to high costs. This is why it is even more important to detect potential faults early on and to initiate targeted, preventative measures. SIMOCODE pro provides the user with a motor management system based on years of experience and the latest technology.

Features

4

Multifunction, electronic full motor protection for rated motor currents up to 820 A

SIMOCODE pro provides comprehensive protection of the motor feeder by means of a combination of delayable, multi-level protection and monitoring functions:

- Current-dependent electronic overload protection (CLASS 5 to 40)
- Thermistor motor protection
- Phase failure/unbalance protection
- Stalled rotor protection
- Monitoring of adjustable limit values for the motor current
- Voltage monitoring
- Power monitoring
- Monitoring of cos phi (no-load operation/load shedding)
- Ground-fault monitoring
- Temperature monitoring, e.g. using Pt100/Pt1000
- Monitoring of operating hours
- Monitoring of downtimes
- Monitoring the number of starts within a specific period of time
- Safety-related tripping of motor feeders, e.g. fail-safe tripping in the process industry, locally or via fieldbus (see manual "SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852))

Recording of measured curves

SIMOCODE pro is able to record measured curves and can, for example, illustrate the characteristic curve of the motor current during motor startup.

Flexible motor control with integrated control functions (instead of extensive hardware interlocks):

SIMOCODE pro has many pre-defined, integrated motor control functions, including all necessary connections and interlocks:

- Overload relay
- Direct starter (direct-on-line starter)
- Reversing starter
- Star-delta starter, also with direction reversal
- Two speeds, motors with separate windings (pole-changing starter), also with direction of rotation reversal
- Two speeds, motors with separate Dahlander windings, also with direction of rotation reversal
- Positioner control
- Solenoid valve control
- Actuation of a circuit breaker
- Soft starter control, possibly combined with reversing starter

These control functions are pre-defined in SIMOCODE pro and can be assigned freely to device inputs and outputs.

These pre-defined control functions can also be adjusted flexibly to meet customer requirements of the motor feeder, without requiring additional auxiliary relays in the control circuit. This is achieved by means of freely parameterizable logic modules (truth tables, counters, timers, pulse width modulators, etc.) and standard functions (power failure monitoring, emergency start, external fault monitoring, etc.).

Detailed operating, service and diagnostics data:

SIMOCODE pro provides a range of operating, service and diagnostics data and helps to detect impending faults in good time and stop these occurring with preventative measures. If a fault occurs, it can be diagnosed, traced and resolved within a short period of time. Plant downtime is thus reduced to a minimum or does not occur at all. See Chapter Overview of functions (Page 37).

Communication:

The SIMOCODE pro basic units have integrated communication bus interfaces and are thus able to replaces all individual wiring and distribution boxes normally required to exchange data with a higher-level automation system with a single bus cable.

Communication through PROFIBUS:

PROFIBUS stands for Process Field Bus. PROFIBUS is a multi-vendor standard for the networking of field devices (e.g. PLCs, drives, actuators, or sensors) in compliance with the European process and fieldbus standard (PROFIBUS standard EN 50170, Volume 2, - PROFIBUS). It specifies the functional, electrical and mechanical characteristics of a bit-serial fieldbus system.

PROFIBUS is a bus system that networks PROFIBUS-compatible automation systems and field devices at the cell and field level. PROFIBUS is available with the DP (= Distributed Peripherals), FMS (= Fieldbus Message Specification), PA (= Process Automation), or TF (= Technological Functions) protocol.

PROFIBUS DP is a bus system with the DP (distributed I/O) protocol. The main task of PROFIBUS DP is to manage the fast, cyclic data exchange between the central DP devices and the I/O devices.

PROFIBUS DPV1 is the extension of the DP protocol. It enables acyclic data exchange of parameter, diagnostic, receive and test data.

SIMOCODE pro C, pro S and pro V support, among others:

- Baud rates up to 1.5 Mbit / s or 12 Mbit / s
- Automatic baud rate detection
- Communication with one master (class 1) and up to two masters (class 2)
- Time stamp with high timing precision (SIMATIC S7) for SIMOCODE pro V
- Cyclic services (DPV0) and acyclic services (DPV1)
- DPV1 communication downstream from the Y-Link.

See Chapter "PROFIBUS communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Communication via PROFINET:

PROFINET (Process Field Network) is the open Industrial Ethernet Standard from Profibus & Profinet International (PI) for automation.

Within the context of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA), PROFINET is the systematic continuation of PROFIBUS DP, the established fieldbus, and Industrial Ethernet, the communication bus for the cell level. Experiences from both systems have been and are being integrated in PROFINET.

SIMOCODE pro V PN has two integrated PROFINET interfaces and provides communication functions via PROFINET IO with the following properties:

- Integrated switch with two ports
- Device replacement without removable medium/programming device
- Shared device
- Media redundancy
- System redundancy
- RT communication
- Support for PROFIenergy

See Chapter "ETHERNET communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Communication via Modbus:

Modbus RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) is a standard protocol for network communication and uses the electrical RS485 connection for serial data transmission between Modbus devices in the network.

Modbus RTU uses a master/slave network in which the entire communication is triggered by only one master device while the slaves can only respond to the request of the master. The master sends a request to a slave address and only this slave address responds to the command (exception: broadcast frames to slave address 0 that are not acknowledged by the slaves).

SIMOCODE pro V Modbus devices have been developed in accordance with the "MODBUS over serial line specification and implementation guide" (available at www.modbus.org (http://www.modbus.org)). You can find the relevant information on establishing Modbus RTU communication in this specification. The key points for a Modbus RTU communication network ("Multipoint System requirements") listed in the specification apply equally for a communication network with SIMOCODE devices.

See Chapter "Modbus communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Communication via EtherNet/IP:

EtherNet/IP (EtherNet Industrial Protocol, often simply called EIP) is a real-time Ethernet that is used mainly in automation engineering. EtherNet/IP was developed by Allen-Bradley and was later handed over to the Open DeviceNet Vendor Association (ODVA) as an open standard. See Open DeviceNet Vendor Association (http://www.odva.org).

Besides PROFINET and Modbus/TCP, EtherNet/IP is an Ethernet-based fieldbus that is currently widely spread.

SIMOCODE pro V EtherNet/IP devices were developed in compliance with the EtherNet/IP standard.

See Chapter "EtherNet/IP communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Overview of functions

5

5.1 Protection functions

Detailed description: See Chapter "Motor protection" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

Overload protection

Current-dependent electronic protection of three-phase and AC motors with adjustable tripping characteristics (class times) according to IEC 60947-4-1 requirements.

Unbalance protection

Protects motors from excessive temperatures caused by excessive phase unbalance.

Phase failure protection

Protects motors from excessive temperatures caused by phase failure.

Stalled rotor protection

Immediate trip after the motor current overshoots an adjustable threshold.

Thermistor protection

SIMOCODE pro provides the option of connecting thermistor sensors (binary PTC) for monitoring the motor temperature.

5.2 Monitoring functions

Detailed description: See Chapters "Monitoring functions" and "Logic blocks" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

Current limit monitoring

Current limit monitoring is used for process monitoring. This enables incipient anomalies in the system to be detected in good time. If a current limit is exceeded but still below the overload limit, it can, for example, indicate a dirty filter on a pump, or an increasingly sluggish motor bearing. If the current limit is undershot, it can be the first sign of a worn-out drive motor belt.

Ground-fault monitoring

Residual current monitoring relays are used in industry to

- Protect systems from damage caused by residual currents
- Prevent production losses caused by unplanned downtime
- Perform maintenance to meet all demands.

Basic units have:

- An internal ground-fault monitoring system: for motors with a 3-wire connection, the basic unit calculates a possible fault current/ground-fault current from the total current via a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module. Internal ground-fault monitoring is only possible for motors with a 3-phase connection in networks that are either grounded directly or grounded with low impedance.
- External ground-fault monitoring in SIMOCODE pro S and SIMOCODE pro V [4)] : The external ground-fault monitoring using residual current transformer 3UL23 and ground-fault module is normally used in the following cases:
  - in cases in which power systems are grounded with high impedance
  - in cases, in which precise detection of the ground-fault current is necessary, for example, for condition monitoring.

  A ground-fault module can be used to create an additional input on the SIMOCODE pro V basic unit to connect a 3UL23 residual current transformer.

  A multifunction module can be used to create an additional input on the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit to connect a 3UL23 residual current transformer.

  With ground-fault detection using the 3UL23 residual current transformer, it is possible to determine the precise residual current as a measured value, and to define freely selectable warning and trip limits in a wide range from 30 mA - 40 A.

  See also Chapter "External ground-fault monitoring with 3UL23 residual current transformer" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

Voltage monitoring [1)]

SIMOCODE pro V allows voltage monitoring of a three-phase current network or a single-phase network for undervoltage or further availability:

- Monitoring for undervoltage: Two-level monitoring for freely selectable limits. The response of SIMOCODE pro on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized.
- Monitoring for further availability: Even when the motor is switched off, SIMOCODE pro can indicate the further availability of the feeder by measuring the voltage directly at the circuit breaker or fuses.

Temperature monitoring [2)]

The SIMOCODE pro S and SIMOCODE pro V devices offer the option of implementing analog temperature monitoring, e.g. of the motor windings or the bearings - SIMOCODE pro S with the multifunction module, SIMOCODE pro V with the temperature module.

SIMOCODE pro S and SIMOCODE pro V support two-level monitoring for overtemperature for freely selectable limit values. The response of SIMOCODE pro on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized and delayed. Temperature monitoring takes into account the highest temperature of all the sensor measuring circuits in use.

Active power monitoring [1)]

The active power curve of a motor reflects its actual load. Excess load results in increased wear of the motor and, thus, may lead to premature motor failure. Excessively low active power can indicate no-load operation of the motor, for example.

SIMOCODE pro V offers the option of two-level active power monitoring for freely selectable upper and lower limits respectively. The response on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized and delayed.

Cos phi monitoring [1)]

The power factor fluctuates more than the motor current, particularly in the low-end performance range of a motor. For this reason, the monitoring of the power factor comes into consideration for the detection of faults. Examples: Breakage of a drive belt or drive shaft

SIMOCODE pro V enables two-phase monitoring of the power factor cos phi for freely selectable minimum limits. The devices' response on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized and delayed.

Monitoring operating hours, stop time, and number of starts

SIMOCODE pro can monitor the operating hours and stop times of a motor to avoid plant downtimes due to failed motors caused by either running too long (wearing out) or being stopped for too long. For example, if an adjustable limit value is exceeded, a signal indicating that the relevant motor requires maintenance or replacement can be generated. After the motor has been replaced, the operating hours and stop times can be reset.

To avoid excessive thermal loads and premature aging of a motor, the number of motor starts in a selected time frame can be limited. The limited number of possible starts can be indicated by pre-warnings.

Monitoring additional process variables via the analog module [3)]

SIMOCODE pro V allows measuring and monitoring of any other process variables via the analog module.

For example, the fill level can be monitored to protect a pump against dry operation, or a differential pressure transducer can be used to monitor the degree of pollution in a filter. If the fill level undershoots a specified level, the pump can be switched off and, if a specific differential pressure value is exceeded, the filter should be cleaned.

The devices support two-phase monitoring of the applicable process variable for freely selectable upper and lower current limits. The response of SIMOCODE pro on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized and delayed.

Phase sequence identification [1)]

SIMOCODE pro allows the direction of rotation of a motor to be determined by identification of the phase sequence. If the direction of rotation is wrong, a signal can be generated or the motor switched off. See Chapter Menu of the operator panel with display (Page 80).

Monitoring any measured values using unrestricted limit monitors

SIMOCODE pro can monitor every measured value in the system for undershooting or overshooting a set threshold value by means of unrestricted limit monitors, e.g. the frequency [1)]. Further information can be found in Chapter "Limit monitors" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

1) For use with current / voltage measuring module

2) Temperature module or multifunction module additionally required

3) Analog module additionally required

4) SIMOCODE pro V and pro S device types: Ground-fault module or multifunction module and residual current transformer additionally required

5.3 Safety-oriented tripping

The SIMOCODE pro motor management system has two modules for the safety-related tripping of motors:

- Fail-safe digital module DM-F local: For applications requiring safety-related tripping of a motor feeder via a hardware signal that is acquired and evaluated by the module.
- DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module: For applications that require the safety-related tripping of a motor feeder by a fail-safe controller (F-CPU) via the communication bus with the fail-safe PROFIsafe profile.

These modules conform to the general requirements for EMERGENCY STOP devices or safety circuits described in EN 418 and EN 60204-1 (06.2006).

Depending on the external circuit, the following Performance Level / Safety Integrity Level can be achieved:

- PL e with Category 4 according to ISO 13849-1 or
- SIL 3 according to IEC 61508/62061

Safety technology and safety-related functions

- Are exclusively restricted to the fail-safe digital modules.
- Do not directly affect existing SIMOCODE pro components and concepts.

A more detailed description is provided in the documentation listed below

- Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro, German (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/50564852)
- Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro, English (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/50564852/0/en)
- Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro, French (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/50564852/0/fr)
- Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro, Spanish (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/50564852/0/es)
- Operating instructions "Fail-Safe Digital Module DM-F Local" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/49222263)
- Operating instructions "Fail-Safe Digital Module DM-F PROFIsafe" (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/49222281).

You will find the System Manuals and Operating Instructions at Manuals/operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

⚠ CAUTION
Loss of safety function is possible
For the 24 V DC power supply, always use an SELV or PELV power supply unit!
For capacitive and inductive loads, an adequate protective circuit is required!

5.4 Control functions

Depending on the device series, the following parameterizable control functions are available:

Table 5- 1 Control functions

Control function	SIMOCODE pro					
	C	S	V PB	V MB	V PN	V EIP
Overload relay	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Direct starter (direct-on-line starter)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Reversing starter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Molded case circuit breaker (MCCB)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Star-delta starter	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Star-delta reversing starter	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Dahlander starter, combinable with reversing starter	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pole-changing starter, combinable with reversing starter	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Solenoid valve	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Positioner	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Soft starter	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Soft starter with reversing contactor	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓

All the necessary protection functions and interlocks are already available and can be flexibly adapted and expanded.

For a detailed description of the individual control functions: See Chapter "Motor control" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

5.5 Communication

PROFIBUS DP

SIMOCODE pro has an integrated PROFIBUS DP interface (SUB D socket or terminal connection on the basic units). SIMOCODE pro supports the following services, for example:

Table 5- 2 PROFIBUS DP services

Service	SIMOCODE pro		
	C	S	V PB
Baud rates of up to 12 Mbit / s via Sub-D socket	✓	—	✓
Baud rates of up to 1.5 Mbit / s via terminal connection	✓	✓	✓
Automatic baud rate detection	✓	✓	✓
Cyclic services (DPV0) and acyclic services (DPV1)	✓	✓	✓
Operation as DPV1 slave downstream from the Y link	✓	✓	✓
Alarms according to DPV1	✓	✓	✓
Time synchronization via PROFIBUS DP	—	—	✓
3UF50 compatibility mode	—	—	✓
Safety-related tripping "PROFIsafe"	—	—	✓

Detailed description: See Chapter "PROFIBUS DP communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Modbus RTU

SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU possesses integrated Modbus RTU communication functions.

Detailed description: See Chapter "Modbus communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

PROFINET

PROFINET IO

SIMOCODE pro V PN has integrated PROFINET IO device communication functions, such as:

- Integrated switch with two RJ45 ports
- Ethernet services: ping, arp, network diagnostics (SNMP) / BIB-2, LLDP, NTP
- Port diagnostics
- Deactivation of ports
- Media redundancy
- Shared device
- Device replacement without PG/PC
- I/O data
- Diagnostics and maintenance alarms
- Data records
- PROFIenergy
- PROFIsafe

OPC UA

In addition to the PROFINET IO device communication functions, pro V PN also has OPC UA server functions. Using these functions, an OPC UA client can access SIMOCODE pro V PN data.

Web server

In addition to the PROFINET IO device communication functions, SIMOCODE pro V PN has an integrated web server function that permits access to the service and diagnostic data from a PC on which a web browser is installed.

Detailed descriptions: See Chapter "PROFINET communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

EtherNet/IP

SIMOCODE pro V EtherNet/IP has integrated EtherNet/IP communication functions:

- Integrated switch with two RJ45 ports
- Assembly objects for integration in cyclic communication with the controller
- CIP objects
- Application objects for access to SIMOCODE data such as measured values, statistics data, diagnostics and selected parameters
- Device Level Ring support
- Ethernet services: ping, arp, network diagnostics (SNMP)/BIB-2, LLDP, NTP
- Port diagnostics
- Deactivation of ports

Detailed description: See Chapter "EtherNet/IP communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Web server

In addition to the EtherNet/IP communication functions, SIMOCODE pro V EIP has an integrated web server function that permits access to the service and diagnostic data from a PC on which a web browser is installed.

Detailed descriptions: See Chapter "EtherNet/IP communication" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960)"SIMOCODE pro - Communication".

5.6 Standard functions

Standard functions are pre-defined functions that can be easily activated, e.g. time-staggered restart of the drives after a power failure. SIMOCODE pro has the following standard functions:

Table 5- 3 Standard functions

Standard function	SIMOCODE pro					
	C Number	S Number	V PB Number	V MB Number	V PN Number	V EIP Number
Test	2	2	2	2	2	2
Reset	3	3	3	3	3	3
Test Position Feedback (TPF)	1	1	1	1	1	1
External fault	4	4	6	6	6	6
Operational Protection Off (OPO)	—	—	1	1	1	1
Power failure monitoring (UVO)	—	—	1	1	1	1
Emergency start	1	1	1	1	1	1
Watchdog (PLC / PCS monitoring)	1	1	1	1	1	1
Time stamping	—	—	1	1	1	1
Safety-related tripping "Local"	—	—	1	1	1	1

Detailed description: See Chapter "Standard functions" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

5.7 Freely-programmable logic modules

If you need any other additional functions for your application, you can use the freely programmable logic modules. These can be used, for example, to implement logical operations, time relay functions and counter functions. Furthermore, limit monitors can monitor any value in SIMOCODE pro for undershooting or overshooting of a freely selected limit. Depending on the device series, the system provides several freely parameterizable logic modules:

Table 5- 4 Freely-programmable logic modules

Logic module	SIMOCODE pro					
	C Number	S Number	V PB Number	V MB Number	V PN Number	V EIP Number
Truth table 3 inputs/1 output	3	4	6	6	8	8
Truth table 2 inputs/1 output	—	2	2	2	2	2
Truth tables 5 inputs/2 outputs	—	—	1	1	1	1
Timers	2	2	4	4	6	6
Counters	2	2	4	4	6	6
Signal conditioning	2	4	4	4	6	6
Non-volatile elements	2	2	4	4	4	4
Flashing	3	3	3	3	3	3
Flicker	3	3	3	3	3	3
Limit monitor	—	—	4	4	6	6
Calculation modules (calculators)	—	—	2 [1)]	2	4	4
Analog multiplexer	—	—	—	—	1	1
Pulse width modulator	—	—	—	—	1	1
1) from version *E03*						

Detailed description: See Chapter "Logic blocks" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

5.8 Operating, service and diagnostics data

SIMOCODE pro supplies a large amount of detailed operating, service and diagnostics data.

Operating data

- Motor switching state (ON, OFF, LEFT, RIGHT, SLOW, FAST), derived from the current flow in the main circuit: thus, feedback via auxiliary contacts of circuit breakers and contactors is not necessary.
- Current in phases 1, 2 and 3 and maximum current in % of current setting
- Voltage in phases 1, 2 and 3 in V [1)]
- Frequency [7)]
- Active power in W [1)]
- Apparent power in VA [1)]
- Power factor in % [1)]
- Phase unbalance in %
- Phase sequence [1)]
- Ground-fault current [6)]
- Temperature in the respective sensor measuring circuits, and maximum temperature in K [3)]
- Current analog signal values [4)]
- Time to trip in s
- Temperature rise for motor model in %
- Remaining cooling down period of the motor in s, etc.

It is possible to adapt the units via the device-internal conversion of individual measured values with the help of the logic modules (calculators) provided by SIMOCODE pro. For example, the temperature recorded by SIMOCODE pro can be calculated in either °F or °C and transmitted to the automation system via PROFIBUS DP.

Service data

Among other things, SIMOCODE pro provides the following relevant data for maintenance:

- Number of motor operating hours, also resettable
- Motor stop times, also resettable
- Number of motor starts, also resettable
- Number of permissible starts remaining
- Number of overload trips, also resettable
- Feeder power consumption in kWh, also resettable [2)]
- Internal feeder-related comments stored in the device, e.g. information regarding maintenance events, etc.
- Safety-related tripping monitoring in h, also resettable [5)]

Diagnostics data

- Numerous detailed early warning and fault messages, also for further processing in the device or in the control system
- Device-internal error logging with time stamp
- Value of the last trip current
- Feedback faults (e.g. no current flow in the main circuit after switch-on command), etc.
- "Local" and "PROFIsafe" diagnostic messages

1) When using SIMOCODE pro V basic units with current / voltage measuring module

2) When using SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units from version *E03* current / voltage measuring module

3) When using the SIMOCODE pro V basic units with the 3UF77 temperature module or the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit with multifunction module

4) When using SIMOCODE pro V basic units with current / voltage measuring module

5) SIMOCODE pro V together with fail-safe digital module DM-F

6) When using the SIMOCODE pro V basic units with the 3UF7510 ground-fault module or the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit with a multifunction module and 3UL23 residual current transformer

7) 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module necessary

Check list for selecting a device series

6

The following check list should help you decide upon the optimum device series for your requirements:

Function/component		SIMOCODE pro					
		C	S	V PB	V MB	V PN	V EIP
Control functions	Intelligent overload relay	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Direct starter, reversing starter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Star-delta starter	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Dahlander starter	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Pole-changing starter	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Soft starter	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Solenoid valve	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Positioner	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Can be combined with reversing function	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Protection functions	Overload protection	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Thermistor motor protection with PTC (binary)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Stalled rotor	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Unbalance	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Phase failure	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Measurement functions	Current measurement	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Current / voltage / power measurement	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓

Function/component		SIMOCODE pro					
		C	S	V PB	V MB	V PN	V EIP
Monitoring functions	Current limits	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ground-fault monitoring (internal)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ground-fault monitoring (residual current transformer)	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Voltage monitoring	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Temperature monitoring	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Active power monitoring	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Power factor (cos phi) monitoring	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Monitoring operating hours, stop time, and number of starts	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Monitoring additional process variables via the analog module	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Phase sequence detection	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Monitoring any measured values using unrestricted limit monitors	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Frequency measurement (with the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules)	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Safety functions	Safety-related tripping	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Number of inputs/outputs	Number of digital inputs of basic unit	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Max. number of digital inputs with expansion modules	4	8	12	12	12	12
	Number of outputs of basic unit	3	2	3	3	3	3
	Max. number of digital outputs with expansion modules	3	4	7	7	7	7

Function/component		SIMOCODE pro					
		C	S	V PB	V MB	V PN	V EIP
Expansion modules	Multifunction module; monostable relay; 24 V DC inputs, temperature measurement, ground-fault monitoring	—	✓	—	—	—	—
	Multifunction module; monostable relay; 110 - 240 V AC/DC inputs, temperature measurement, ground-fault monitoring	—	✓	—	—	—	—
	Digital module; monostable relay; 24 V DC inputs	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Digital module; bistable relay; 24 V DC inputs	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Digital module; monostable relay; 110 to 240 V AC/DC inputs	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Digital module; bistable relay; 110 to 240 V AC/DC inputs	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DM-F LOCAL fail-safe digital module	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module	—	—	✓	—	✓	—
	Analog module: Measuring, processing and outputting analog values	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ground-fault module: Residual current monitoring using a residual current transformer	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Temperature module: Analog temperature monitoring of three measuring circuits with NTC, PT100, PT1000, and KTY	—	✓ 1)	✓	✓	✓	✓

1) only 1 sensor can be connected

An overview of system components

7

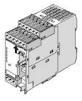
Modules

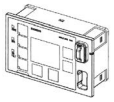
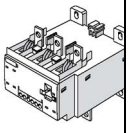
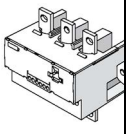
Selection and ordering data: See also Catalog IC10 (https://www.siemens.com/ic10).

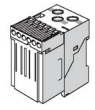
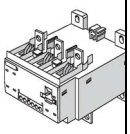
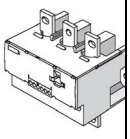
For simple product selection, we recommend the TIA Selection Tool (https://www.siemens.com/TIA-Selection-Tool).

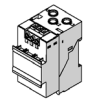
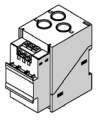
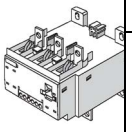
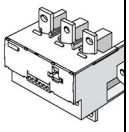
Table 7- 1 Modules

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Basic units (BU)									
SIMOCODE pro C The compact system for PROFIBUS and direct-on-line and reversing starters and/or for controlling a circuit breaker. 4 inputs/3 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, monostable relay outputs				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7000-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7000-1AU00-0							
SIMOCODE pro S The smart system for PROFIBUS and for direct-on-line, reversing and star-delta starters or for controlling a circuit breaker or soft starter. 4 inputs/2 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, expandable with expansion modules				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7020-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7020-1AU00-0							
SIMOCODE pro V PB The variable system for PROFIBUS, which offers numerous functions in addition to all of the SIMOCODE pro C/S functions. 4 inputs/3 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, monostable relay outputs, expandable with expansion modules				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7010-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7010-1AU00-0							

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU The variable system for Modbus RTU that offers numerous functions in addition to all of the SIMOCODE pro C/S functions. 4 inputs/3 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, monostable relay outputs, expandable with expansion modules				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7012-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7012-1AU00-0							
SIMOCODE pro V PN basic unit The variable system for PROFINET with extensive functions. 4 inputs/3 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, monostable relay outputs, expandable with expansion modules				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7011-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7011-1AU00-0							
SIMOCODE pro V EtherNet/IP The variable system for EtherNet/IP that offers numerous functions in addition to all of the SIMOCODE pro C/S functions. 4 inputs/3 outputs freely parameterizable, input for thermistor, monostable relay outputs, expandable with expansion modules				—	—	—	—	—	—
	24 V DC	3UF7013-1AB00-0							
	110-240 V AC/DC	3UF7013-1AU00-0							
Operator panel (OP) Installation in control cabinet door or front plate, for connection to basic unit, system interface for connecting a PC, 10 LEDs for status indication and user-assignable buttons for controlling the motor.									
	—	3UF7200-1AA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
	—	3UF7200-1AA01-0		1	1	1	1	1	1

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Operator panel with display (OPD) Installation in control cabinet door or front panel, for connection to a pro V basic unit, system interface for connecting a PC, 7 LEDs for status indication and user-assignable buttons for controlling the motor, multiple-language display, e.g. for indication of measured values, status information or fault messages.									
	—	3UF7210-1AA00-0		—	—	1 (from *E03*)	1	1	1
	—	3UF7210-1BA00-0		—	—	1 (from *E03*)	1	1	1
	—	3UF7210-1AA01-0 (titanium gray)		—	—	1 (from *E03*)	1	1	1
	—	3UF7210-1BA01-0 (titanium gray)		—	—	1 (from *E03*)	1	1	1
Current measuring module (IM) Current measuring with through-hole or bus connection system.									
0.3 A to 3 A	—	3UF7100-1AA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
(straight-through transformer)		3UF7101-1AA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
2.4 A to 25 A		3UF7102-1AA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
(straight-through transformer)		3UF7103-1AA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
10 A to 100 A		3UF7103-1BA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
(straight-through transformer)		3UF7104-1BA00-0		1	1	1	1	1	1
20 A to 200 A									
(straight-through transformer)									
20 A to 200 A									
(bar connection)									
63 A to 630 A									
(bar connection)									

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Current / voltage measuring module (UM) Can only be mounted next to the basic unit, otherwise like current measuring modules. Additionally: • Voltage measurement • Power measurement • Power factor (cos phi) measurement • Phase sequence			 						
0.3 A to 3 A (through-hole transformer) 2.4 A to 25 A (through-hole transformer) 10 A to 100 A (through-hole transformer) 20 A to 200 A (through-hole transformer) 20 A to 200 A (bus connection) 63 A to 630 A (bus connection)	—	3UF7110-1AA00-0 3UF7111-1AA00-0 3UF7112-1AA00-0 3UF7113-1AA00-0 3UF7113-1BA00-0 3UF7114-1BA00-0	 	— — — — — —	— — — — — —	1 (from *E02*) 1 (from *E02*) 1 (from *E02*) 1 (from *E02*) 1 (from *E02*) 1 (from *E02*)	1 1 1 1 1 1	1 1 1 1 1 1	1 1 1 1 1 1

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules (UM+) Can only be mounted below / next to the basic unit, otherwise like current measuring modules. In addition to current measurement: • Voltage measurement • Frequency measurement • Power measurement • Power factor (cos phi) measurement • Phase sequence detection			 						
0.3 A to 4 A (straight-through transformer) [1] 3 A to 40 A (straight-through transformer) [1] 10 A to 115 A (straight-through transformer) 20 A to 200 A (straight-through transformer) 20 A to 200 A (bar connection) 63 A to 630 A (bar connection)	—	3UF7110-1AA01-0 3UF7111-1AA01-0 3UF7112-1AA01-0 3UF7113-1AA01-0 3UF7113-1BA01-0 3UF7114-1BA01-0	 	— — — — — —	— — — — — —	1 (from *E15*) 1 (from *E15*) 1 (from *E15*) 1 (from *E15*) 1 (from *E15*) 1 (from *E15*)	1 (from *E03*) 1 (from *E03*) 1 (from *E03*) 1 (from *E03*) 1 (from *E03*) 1 (from *E03*)	1 (from *E10*) 1 (from *E10*) 1 (from *E10*) 1 (from *E10*) 1 (from *E10*) 1 (from *E10*)	1 1 1 1 1 1
Decoupling module (DCM) [1] For connecting on the line side of a current / voltage measuring module of the 1st generation UM at the system interface for use of voltage measurement in isolated-neutral systems, systems with high-impedance resistive or asymmetrical grounding, and in single-phase systems.									
	—	3UF7150-1AA00-0		—	—	—	—	—	—

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Digital modules (DM) 2)									
Up to two digital modules can be used to add additional binary inputs and relay outputs to the basic unit. The input circuits of the digital modules are supplied from an external power supply. 4 binary inputs and 2 relay outputs.									
Input voltage 24 V DC; monostable relay outputs Input voltage 110 V-240 V AC/DC; monostable relay outputs	—	3UF7300-1AB00-0 3UF7300-1AU00-0		— —	1 1	2 2	2 2	2 2	2 2
Input voltage 24 V DC; bistable relay outputs Input voltage 110 V-240 V AC/DC; bistable relay outputs	—	3UF7310-1AB00-0 3UF7310-1AU00-0		— —	— —	2 2	2 2	2 2	2 2
Fail-safe digital module (DM-F)									
DM-F Local fail-safe digital module 2) For fail-safe tripping via hardware signal. 2 relay enabling circuits, wired in parallel; 2 relay outputs, common ground, fail-safe tripping. Inputs for sensor circuit, start signal, cascading and feedback circuit Safety function via DIP switch									
	Rated control supply voltage Us:								
	24 V DC 110 to 240 V AC/DC	3UF7320-1AB00-0 3UF7320-1AU00-0		— —	— —	1 (from *E07*) 1 (from *E07*)	1 1	1 1	1 1
DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module 2) For fail-safe tripping via PROFIBUS/PROFIsafe: 2 relay enabling circuits, wired in parallel 2 relay outputs, common ground, fail-safe tripping 1 input for feedback circuit; 3 binary standard inputs.									
	24 V DC 110 to 240 V AC/DC	3UF7330-1AB00-0 3UF7330-1AU00-0		— —	— —	1 (from *E07*) 1 (from *E07*)	— —	1 1	— —

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Analog module (AM)									
By means of the analog module, the basic unit can be optionally expanded by analog inputs and outputs (0 to 20 mA). 2 inputs (passive) for inputting and 1 output for outputting 0/4 to 20 mA signals.									
	—	3UF7400-1AA00-0		—	—	1	1	2	2
Ground-fault module (EM)									
The external ground-fault monitoring using residual current transformer and ground-fault module is normally used in the following cases: • in cases in which power systems are grounded with high impedance • in cases, in which precise detection of the ground-fault current is necessary, for example, for condition monitoring.									
	—	3UF7500-1AA00-0 for connecting a 3UL22 residual-current transformer		—	—	1 (from *E02*)	1	1	1
	—	3UF7510-1AA00-0 for connecting a 3UL23 residual-current transformer		—	1	1 (from *E10*)	1	1 (from *E04*)	1
Temperature module (TM)									
Irrespective of the thermistor protection of the basic units, an additional max. 3 analog temperature sensors can be evaluated using a temperature module. Sensor types: PT100/PT1000, KTY83/KTY84 or NTC 3 inputs for connecting up to 3 analog temperature sensors.									
	—	3UF7700-1AA00-0		—	1 [3)]	1 (from E *E02*)	1	2	2

Module	Control supply voltage	MLFB	Diagram	Number that can be connected to					
				pro C	pro S	pro V PB	pro V MB RTU	pro V PN	pro V EIP
Multifunction module									
To expand • the number of inputs and outputs • the functional scope the SIMOCODE pro S basic units. The following inputs and outputs are available: • 4 digital inputs • 2 relay outputs • 1 input for connecting an analog temperature sensor (sensor types: PT100/PT1000, KTY83/KTY84 or NTC) • 1 input for connecting a 3UL23 residual current transformer									
Input voltage 24 V DC		3UF7600-1AB01-0		—	1	—	—	—	—
Input voltage 110-240 V AC/DC		3UF7600-1AU00-0		—	1	—	—	—	—

1) not needed when using the 2nd generation current /voltage measuring modules (UM+)

Detailed description: See Description of system components (Page 67)

Dimension drawings: See CAx data, dimension drawings (Page 331)

Mounting instructions See Mounting (Page 165)

Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V PB when using an operator panel with display and/or a decoupling module: See Chapter Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit (Page 136) and Configuration notes for use of a SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU and SIMOCODE pro V EIP basic unit (Page 139).

2)

Note

Use of a DM-F instead of a DM

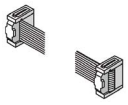
You can use a fail-safe digital module (DM-FL or DM-FP) instead of a digital module (DM).

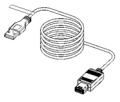
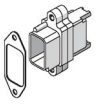
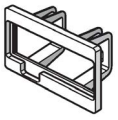
3) Only one temperature sensor can be connected

Accessories

Selection and ordering data: See also Catalog IC10 (https://www.siemens.com/ic10).

Table 7- 2 System components, accessories that can be connected

System component, accessory		MLFB	Diagram	for pro C	for pro S	for pro V PB	for pro V MB RTU	for pro V PN	for pro V EIP
Connecting cable for connecting the basic unit, current measuring module, current / voltage measuring module, operator panel, and decoupling module				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
0.025 m ribbon		3UF7930-0AA00-0							
0.1 m ribbon		3UF7931-0AA00-0							
0.3 m ribbon		3UF7935-0AA00-0							
0.5 m ribbon		3UF7932-0AA00-0							
0.5 m round		3UF7932-0BA00-0							
1.0 m round		3UF7937-0BA00-0							
2.5 m round		3UF7933-0BA00-0							
Interface covers For covering unused system interfaces		3UF7950-0AA00-0 (light gray) 3RA6936-0B (titanium gray)		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Memory module Backup of the full set of parameters of a SIMOCODE pro system when the device is replaced. If a device is replaced, parameter transfer without PC.		3UF7900-0AA00-0 (light gray) 3UF7901-0AA00-0 (light gray) 3UF7901-0AA01-0 (titanium gray)		✓ — —	✓ ✓ ✓	✓ ✓ 1) ✓ 1)	✓ ✓ ✓	— ✓ ✓	— ✓ ✓
Initialization module Storage and initialization of device parameters and device addressing in motor control centers.		3UF7902-0AA00-0		—	✓	✓ 1)	✓	✓	✓
Y connecting cable Connection of the basic unit and current or current / voltage measuring module with the initialization module when using the initialization module				—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Length of system interface	Length of open cable end	3UF7931-0CA00-0 3UF7932-0CA00-0 3UF7937-0CA00-0							
0.1 m	1.0 m								
0.5 m	1.0 m								
1.0 m	1.0 m								

System component, accessory	MLFB	Diagram	for pro C	for pro S	for pro V PB	for pro V MB RTU	for pro V PN	for pro V EIP
Addressing plug Assigning the PROFIBUS/Modbus RTU address without using a PC/PG to SIMOCODE pro through the system interface	3UF7910-0AA00-0		✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—
USB PC cable for connecting SIMOCODE pro to the USB interface of a PC/PG	3UF7941-0AA00-A		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
USB-to-serial adapter For connecting an RS 232 PC cable to the interface of a PC.	3UF7946-0AA0-0		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Door adapter for bringing out the system interface, for example, out of a cabinet	3UF7920-0AA00-0		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Adapter for operator panel Enables use of the smaller operator panel (OP) after system replacement in a front panel cutout in which a larger 3UF5 2 operator panel of SIMOCODE DP had previously been used. Degree of protection: IP54.	3UF7922-0AA00-0		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Labeling strips for pushbuttons of the operator panel 3UF7 20 for pushbuttons of the operator panel with display 3UF7 21 for LEDs of the operator panel 3UF7 20	3UF7925-0AA00-0 3UF7925-0AA01-0 3UF7925-0AA02-0		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

System component, accessory	MLFB	Diagram	for pro C	for pro S	for pro V PB	for pro V MB RTU	for pro V PN	for pro V EIP
Push-in lugs for screw mounting e. g. on mounting plate; 2 units required per device								
Can be used for the current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules 3UF7 1.0, 3UF7 1.1 and 3 UF7 1.2	3RV2928-0B		✓	✓	—	✓	✓	✓
Can be used for 3UF700, 3UF701, 3UF7 3, 3UF7 4, 3UF7 5 a nd 3UF7 7	3RP19 03		✓	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Can be used for 3UF7020-1A.01-0 and 3UF7600-1A.01-0	3ZY1311-0AA00		—	✓	—	—	—	—
Terminal covers								
Covers for cable lug and busbar connections: Length 100 mm, can be used for 3UF7 1.3-1BA00-0 Length 120 mm, can be used for 3UF7 1.4-1BA00-0	3RT1956-4EA1 3RT1966-4EA1		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Covers for box terminals: Length 25 mm, can be used for 3UF7 1.3-1BA00-0 Length 30 mm, can be used for 3UF7 1.4-1BA00-0	3RT1956-4EA2 3RT1966-4EA2		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Covers for screwed connection: between contactor and current measuring module or between current / voltage measuring module with direct mounting can be used for 3UF7 1.3-1BA00-0 can be used for 3UF7 1.4-1BA00-0	3RT1956-4EA3 3RT1966-4EA3		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

System component, accessory	MLFB	Diagram	for pro C	for pro S	for pro V PB	for pro V MB RTU	for pro V PN	for pro V EIP
Box terminal blocks for round and ribbon cable conductors up to 70 mm2, can be used for 3UF7 1.3-1BA00-0 up to 120 mm2, can be used for 3UF7 1.3-1BA00-0 up to 240 mm2, can be used for 3UF7 1.4-1BA00-0	3RT1955-4G 3RT1956-4G 3RT1966-4G		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Bus termination module with dedicated power supply; for bus connection after the last device on the bus Supply voltage: 115/230 V AC 24 V DC **Note** The use of bus connection modules is recommended, in particular, when using SIMOCODE pro S.	3UF1900-1KA00 3UF1900-1KB00		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Bus connecting terminal For securing the PROFIBUS cable on the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit.	3UF7960-0AA00-0		—	✓	—	—	—	—

1) For basic unit SIMOCODE pro V PB from version *E09*

Software

For parameterization, control, diagnostics and testing: See Manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

Selection and ordering data: See also Catalog IC10 (https://www.siemens.com/ic10).

Description of system components

8

8.1 Basic units (BU)

Types of basic units

The basic units are the fundamental components of the SIMOCODE pro system. Basic units are always necessary when using SIMOCODE pro. They contain the processor in which all protection, control and monitoring functions of the SIMOCODE system are executed.

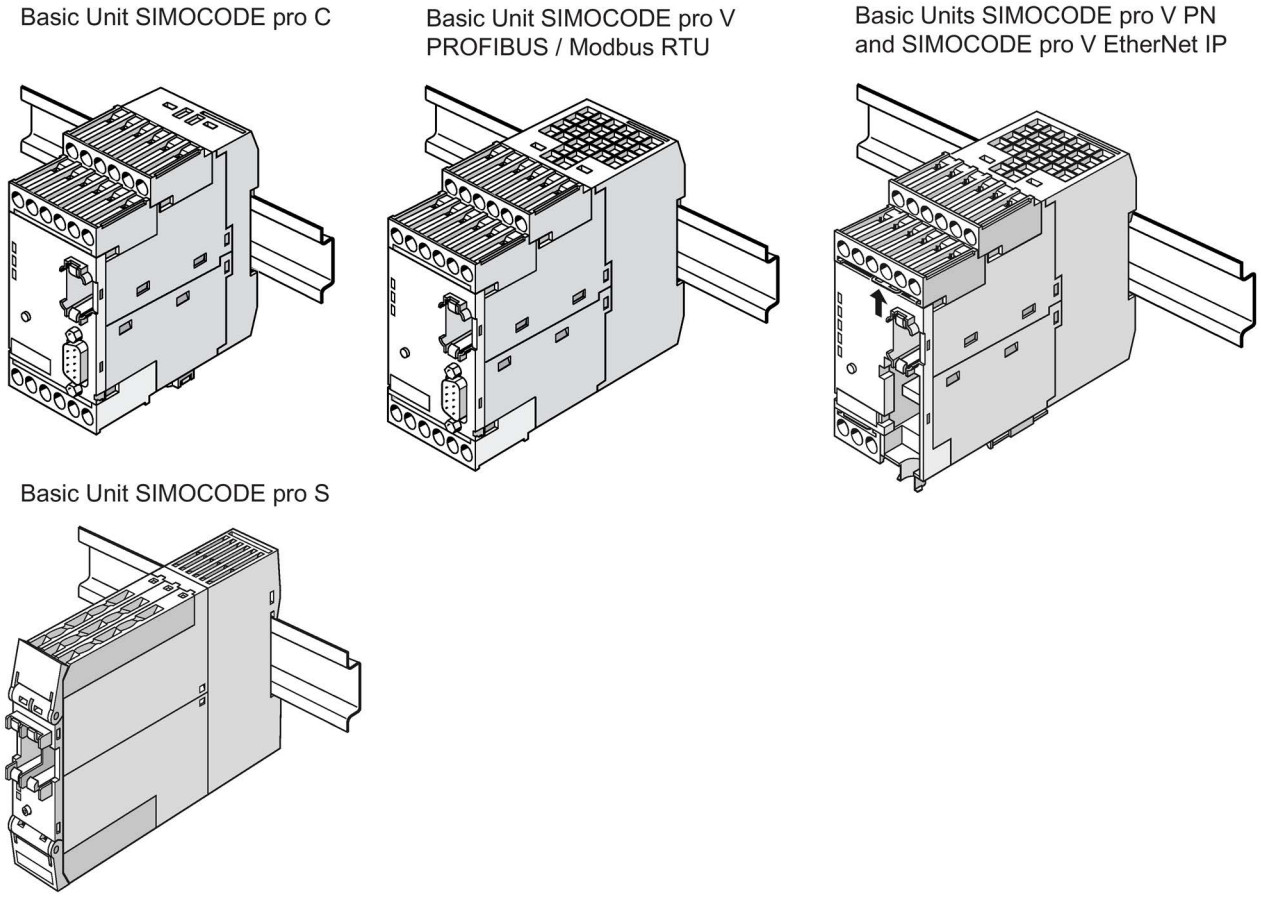


Figure 8-1 Basic units

The basic units are suitable for DIN rail mounting or with additional push-in lugs for mounting on a mounting plate. They are always equipped with removable terminals.

The basic units are available in different types for the following supply voltages:

- 24 V DC
- 110 to 240 V AC / DC

SIMOCODE pro C basic unit

Basic unit pro C is the fundamental component of the SIMOCODE pro C device series and is used in conjunction with a current measuring module and optional operator panels.

The following motor control functions are supported:

- Overload relay
- Direct starter (direct-on-line starter) and reversing starter
- Circuit breaker control (MCCB).

SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

Basic unit pro S is the fundamental component of the SIMOCODE pro S device series and is used in conjunction with a current measuring module and an optional operator panel. As compared with the basic unit SIMOCODE pro C provides the following expansion options by means of connecting a multifunction module:

- Increased device functionality with additional inputs and outputs
- Connection of a residual current transformer
- Connection of a temperature sensor.

The following motor control functions are supported:

- Overload relay
- Direct starter (direct-on-line starter) and reversing starter
- Star-delta starter
- Circuit breaker control (MCCB)
- Control of a soft starter.

SIMOCODE Pro V basic unit

The SIMOCODE pro V basic units are the fundamental components of the SIMOCODE pro V device series and are used in combination with a current measuring module or current / voltage measuring module and optional operator panel.

The following motor control functions are supported:

- Overload relay
- Direct starter (direct-on-line starter) and reversing starter
- Star-delta starter, possibly combined with reversing starter
- 2 speeds, motors with separate windings (pole-changing starters), possibly combined with reversing starter
- 2 speeds, motors with separate Dahlander windings, possibly combined with reversing starter
- Positioner control
- Solenoid valve control
- Circuit breaker control (MCCB)
- Soft starter control, possibly combined with reversing starter

The SIMOCODE pro V basic unit provides the following expansion options not offered by the SIMOCODE pro C and SIMOCODE pro S basic units:

- Increased device functionality via various expansion modules according to need
- Use of a current / voltage measuring module in place of a current measuring module
- Additional inputs and outputs, as required
- Larger number of inputs and outputs
- Use of an operator panel with display in place of a standard operator panel.

Operator controls and display elements, system interfaces basic units

LEDs for device diagnostics (DEVICE, BUS, GEN. FAULT)

These LEDs on the front of the device are used for device and fault diagnostics, and indicate the basic status:

- Of the device itself via the "DEVICE" LED
- For bus communication via the "BUS" LED
- By displaying the activity at the two ports via the LEDs "PORT 1" and "PORT 2"
- Of any motor feeder faults via the "GEN. FAULT" FAULT" LED

For further information, refer to Chapters Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFIBUS) (Page 237) and Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFINET) (Page 242).

"TEST/RESET" button

Enables the device to be reset after tripping or after a fault has occurred and makes it possible to test the device/motor feeder with or without tripping the contactor control. If a memory module or addressing plug is plugged in, parameterization can be initiated via the TEST/RESET button or, for example, by accepting the PROFIBUS address.

You will find further information in Chapter "Test/Reset" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958), in Chapters Setting the PROFIBUS DP address (Page 236) and Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name (Page 239) and in Chapter Backing up and saving parameters (Page 255).

System interfaces

2 system interfaces for connecting

- a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module and
- an operator panel or expansion modules

8.2 Operator panel (OP)

Function of the operator panel

The operator panel controls the motor feeder from the switchgear cabinet. It has an external system interface on the front to allow easier parameterization or diagnostics via a PC / programming device. This system interface (with cover for IP54) can be used to connect (by means of the PC cable) a PC with the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software installed or the memory module or the addressing plug.

On the rear system interface, it is connected to the basic unit or to an expansion module via a connecting cable. It is supplied with power via the basic unit.

The operator panel is frequently installed in the front panels of motor control centers. It is used in all device series. It also contains all the status LEDs available on the basic unit and the "TEST/RESET" button, and facilitates access to the system interface from outside the control cabinet.

The following are available:

- 5 buttons, of which 4 are freely parameterizable
- 10 LEDs, of which 7 are freely parameterizable

The following figure shows an operator panel:

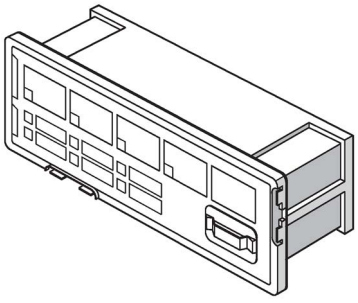


Figure 8-2 Operator panel

Labeling strips:

Labeling strips are enclosed for designating buttons 1 to 4 and the yellow LEDs 1 to 3:

- Buttons 1 to 4: 6 pre-assigned labeling strips and 1 individually inscribable labeling strip
- LEDs 1 to 3: 1 individually inscribable labeling strip

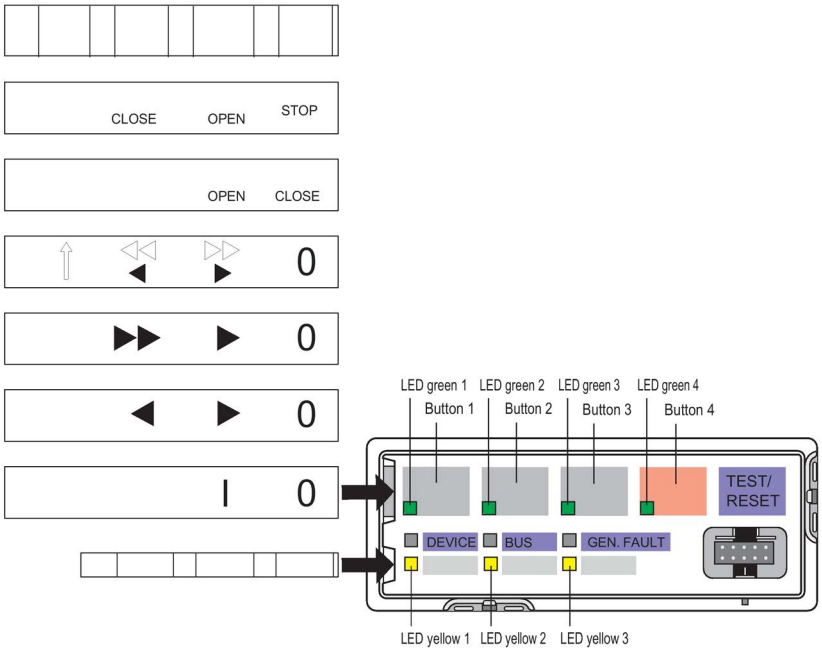


Figure 8-3 Labeling strips for operator panel buttons and LEDs

Unused labeling strips can be stored on the back of the operator panel:

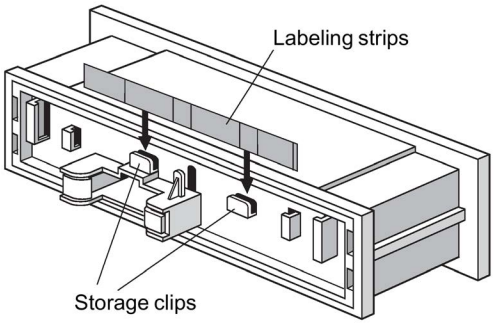


Figure 8-4 Storage clips for labeling strips for pushbuttons and LEDs of the operator panel

"Park position" for memory module:

The memory module can be protected from unauthorized use by "parking" it on the rear of the operator panel inside the switchgear cabinet. In this case, the storage clips for the labeling strips cannot be used.

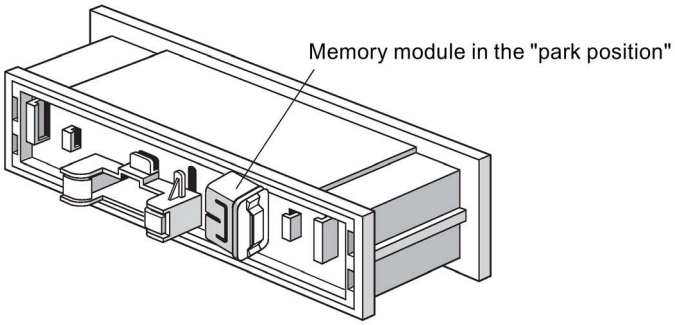


Figure 8-5 "Park position" for memory module

8.3 Operator panel with display

8.3.1 Description of the operator panel with display

Apart from the standard operator panel (OP), an optional operator panel with display (OPD) is also available for SIMOCODE pro V. This operator panel can additionally display current measured values, operating data, diagnostics data or status information of the motor feeder on the cabinet. It also contains all the status LEDs that are present on the basic unit and facilitates access to the system interface from outside the cabinet. The motor can be controlled via the buttons on the operator panel. Current measured values, status information, fault messages or the device-internal error log are simultaneously shown on the display.

Note

Restrictions on use

- SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit: The operator panel with display can only be used with SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit from version *E03*.
- SIMOCODE pro V PN basic unit: For use with the SIMOCODE pro V PN basic unit, an operator panel with display version *E07* or higher is required.

The following are available:

- 4 freely parameterizable buttons for controlling the motor feeder
- 4 keys for navigating the display menu, 2 of these are softkeys with different functions (e g. test / reset)
- 2 system interfaces (front and back)
- 7 LEDs, 4 of which are freely parameterizable (4 green LEDs integrated in the motor control buttons, primarily for feedback regarding the switching state, e.g. ON, OFF, CCW, CW, etc.)

Note

Modification of selected device parameters via the operator panel with display

Modification of selected device parameters is possible via the operator panel with display (see Parameters (Page 108))

The following figure shows an operator panel with display:

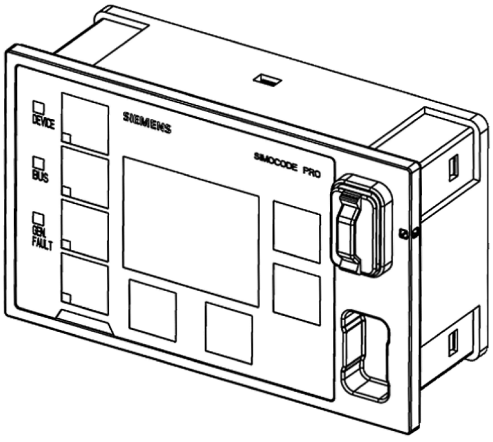


Figure 8-6 Operator panel with display

The operator panel with display can be connected directly to basic unit SIMOCODE pro V or an expansion module via the rear system interface. Voltage is supplied by the basic unit. This front system interface (with cover for IP54) can be used to connect (by means of the PC cable) a PC with the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software installed or the memory module and the addressing plug.

NOTICE
Active operation
The operator panel with display may not be removed or plugged in during operation!

Note

When using an operator panel with display, please note that the type and number of expansion modules that can be connected to a basic unit are limited!

See Chapter Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit (Page 136).

Labeling strips:

Labeling strips for labeling buttons 1 to 4 (6 pre-assigned and 1 that can be labeled individually) are included:

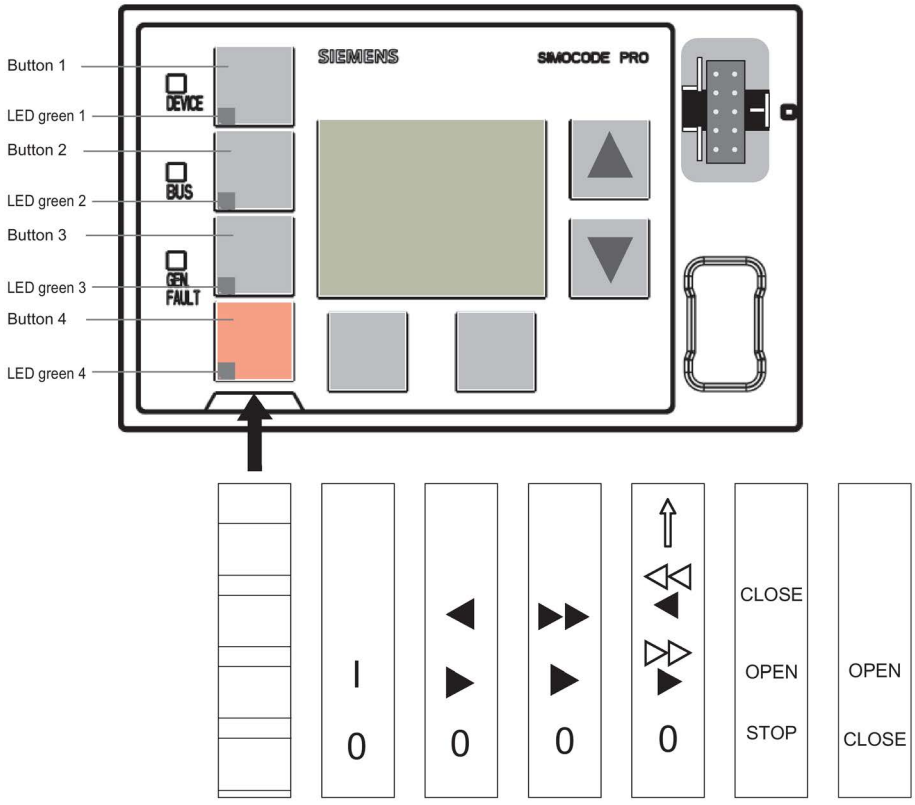


Figure 8-7 Labeling strips for the buttons of the operator panel with display

Unused labeling strips can be stored on the back of the operator panel with display:

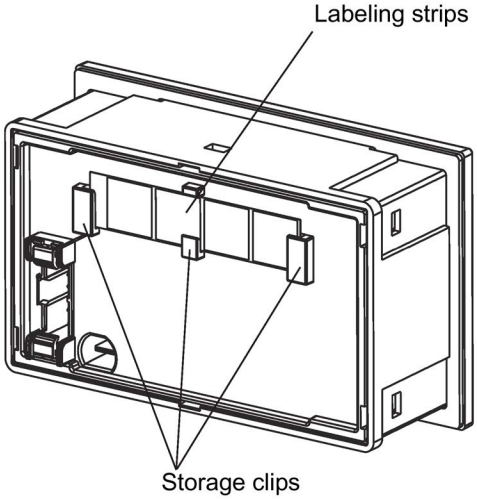


Figure 8-8 Storage clips for labeling strips

"Park position" for memory module:

The memory module can be "parked" on the front of the operator panel with display beneath the system interface:

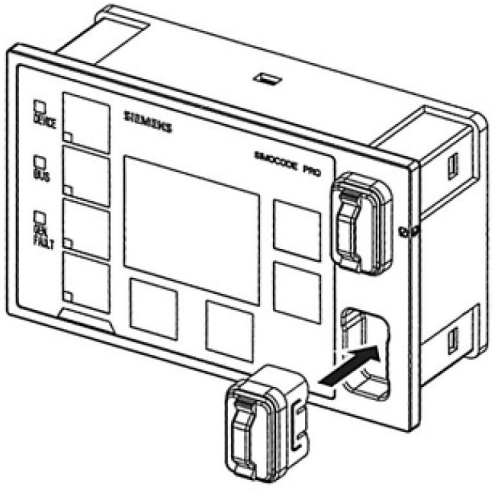


Figure 8-9 "Park position" for memory module

8.3.2 Operator controls and display elements of the operator panel with display

Displays of the operator panel with display

The display shows current measured values, operating data and diagnostics data as well as the status information of the motor feeder in plain text or with the aid of symbols.

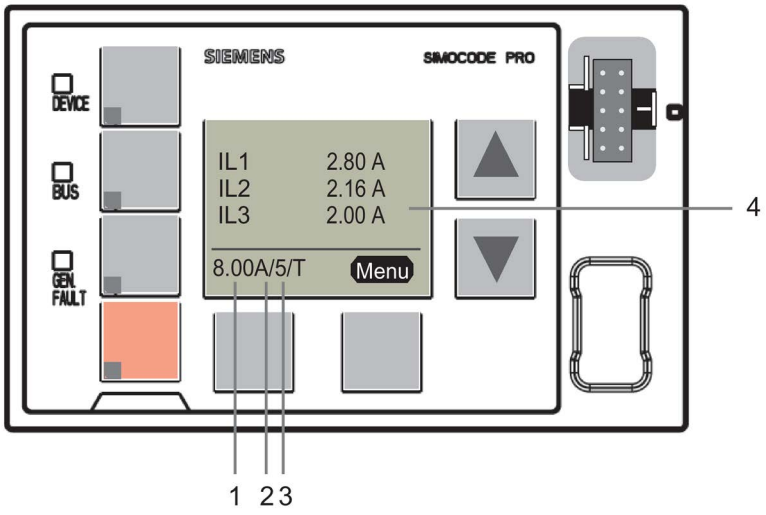


Figure 8-10 Display elements of the operator panel with display

1

Shows the **current setting Is** / rated motor current in A. For motors with two speeds, the relevant current setting Is1 or Is2 is always displayed depending on whether the current speed is slow or fast, e.g. **8 A.** For motors with two speeds, the left-hand softkey can be used when the motor is stopped to alternate between the display of the two current settings. When running, the current setting for the active motor speed is always displayed.

2

Shows the set **class time** of the overload protection system, e.g.:**10** = class 10
(class = trip class)

3

Indicates that temperature monitoring is active, e.g. the motor temperature is being monitored by thermistors or analog temperature sensors (Pt100, Pt1000, KTY, NTC).
(**T**= temperature monitoring active.)

4

The **main display** enables customized depiction of different measured values when running. This is the standard display at the topmost menu level. Predefined profiles in the display settings can be selected for this purpose. By pressing the "Menu" softkey on the right, you can navigate through the submenus of the main display (see Chapter Read and adapt main display (Page 97)).

Operator controls of the operator panel with display

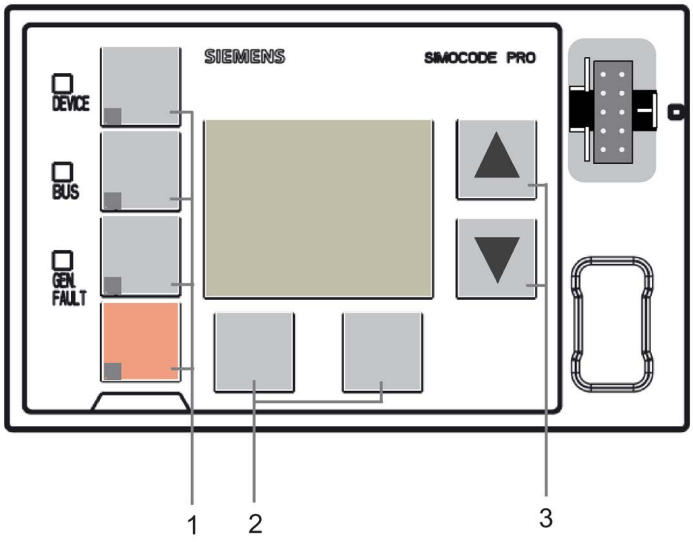


Figure 8-11 Operator controls of the operator panel with display

1

Four freely parameterizable **operator keys** with status LED**.** These operator keys are used to control the motor with integrated status LEDs for any status feedback. The functions can be user-defined. Labeling can be either freely chosen or achieved using the labeling strips supplied with the device (see also Chapter Operator panel with display (Page 74) and Chapters "Operator panel LED" and "Operator panel buttons" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958))

2

Two **softkeys.** They can have different functions depending on the menu displayed (e.g. open menu, exit menu, TEST/RESET). The currently assigned functions are shown on the lower left or right edge of the display.

3

Two **arrow keys** (one upwards arrow and one downwards arrow). They serve to navigate the menu or change the display settings, e.g. to adjust the contrast or to select a profile for the main display.

8.3.3 Menu of the operator panel with display

8.3.3.1 Timing charts

Navigating the menu of the operator panel with display

Main menu, operator panel with display

Details: See Displays of the operator panel with display (Page 94).

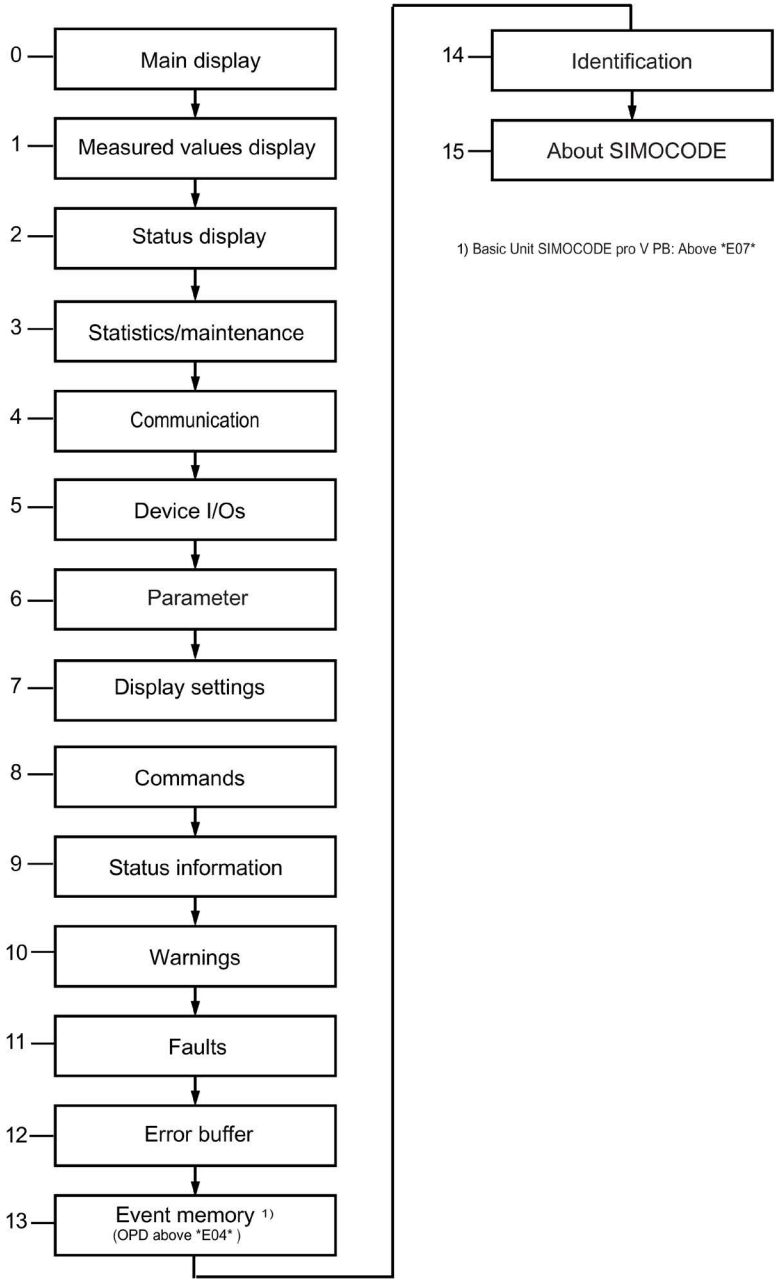


Figure 8-12 Main menu, operator panel with display

Main display, operator panel with display

Details: See Read and adapt main display (Page 97).

1 Measured values, operator panel with display

Details: See Display of measured values in the measured values display (Page 100).

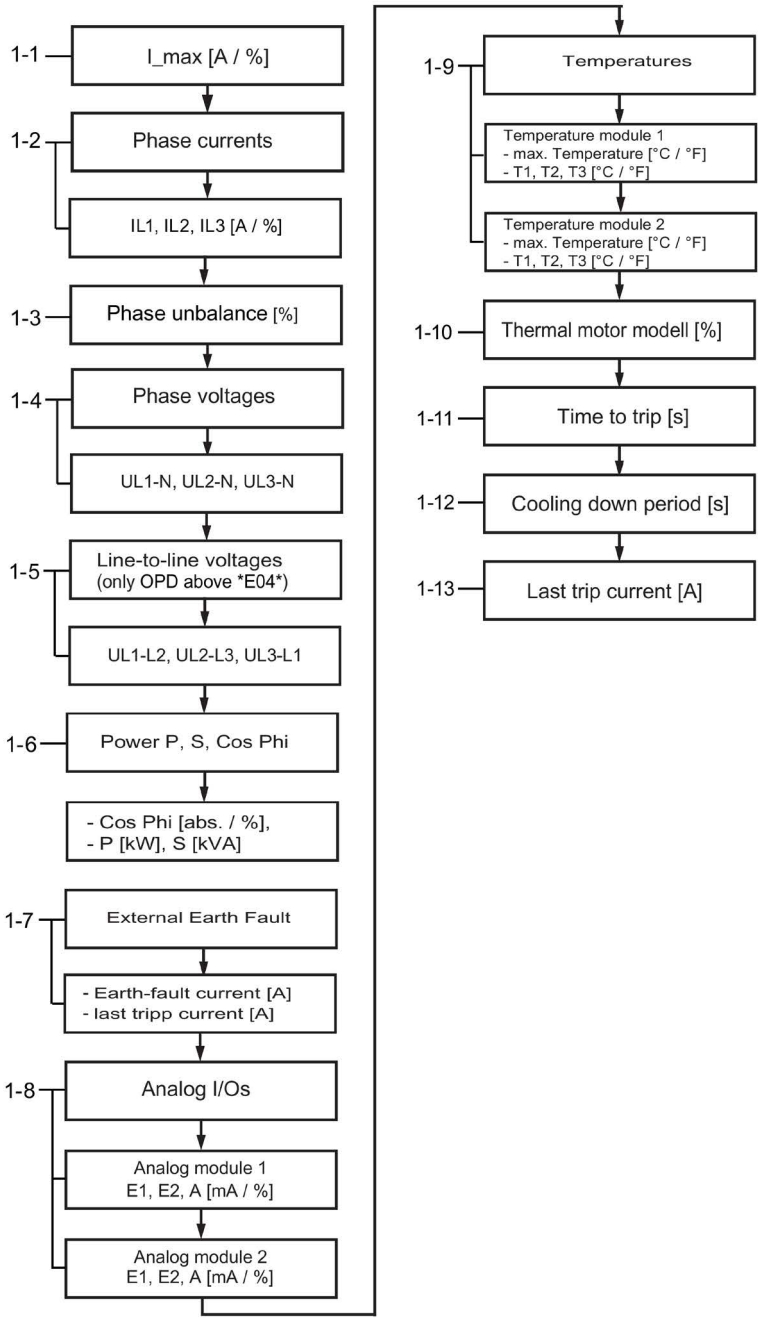


Figure 8-13 Measured values, operator panel with display

Note

Numbering of the displays

The numbering is valid with the maximum expansion.

2 Status motor protection/motor control, operator panel with display

Details: See Motor protection and motor control status (Page 102).

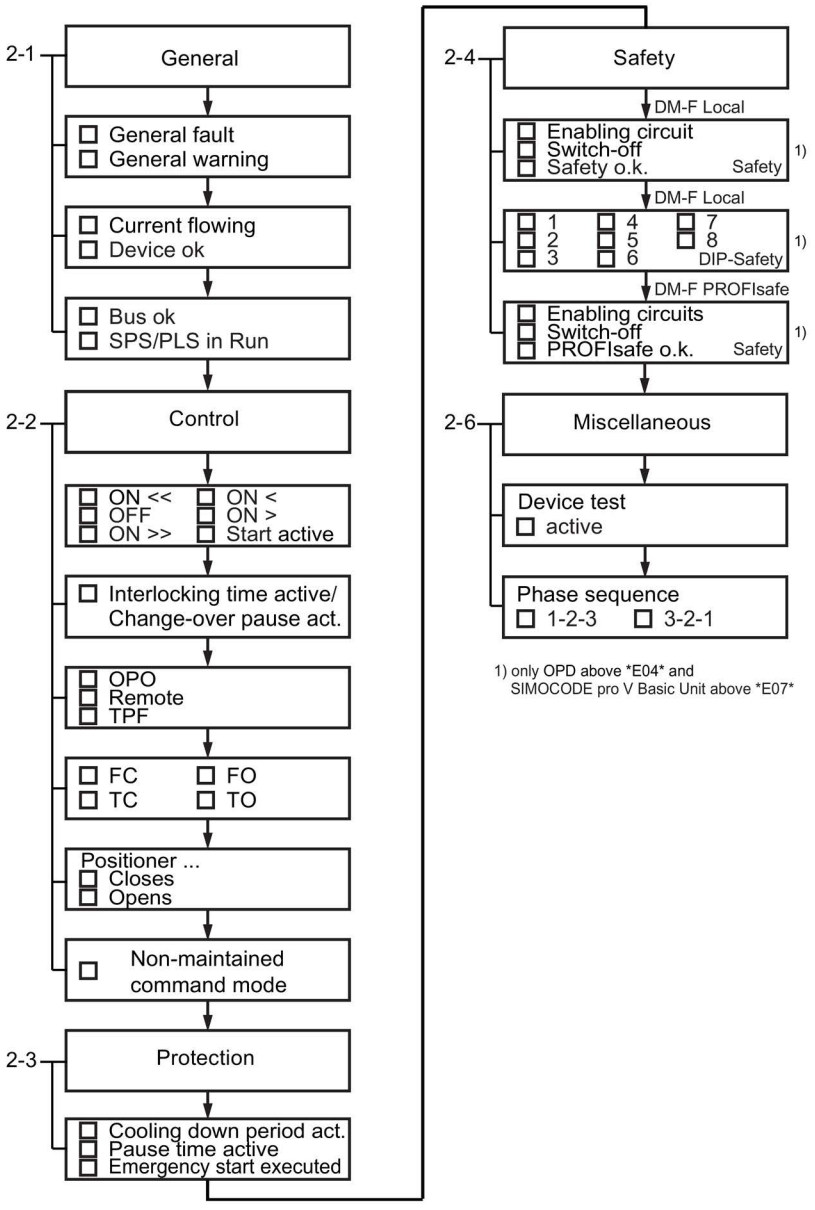


Figure 8-14 Status motor protection/motor control, operator panel with display - PROFIBUS / Modbus RTU

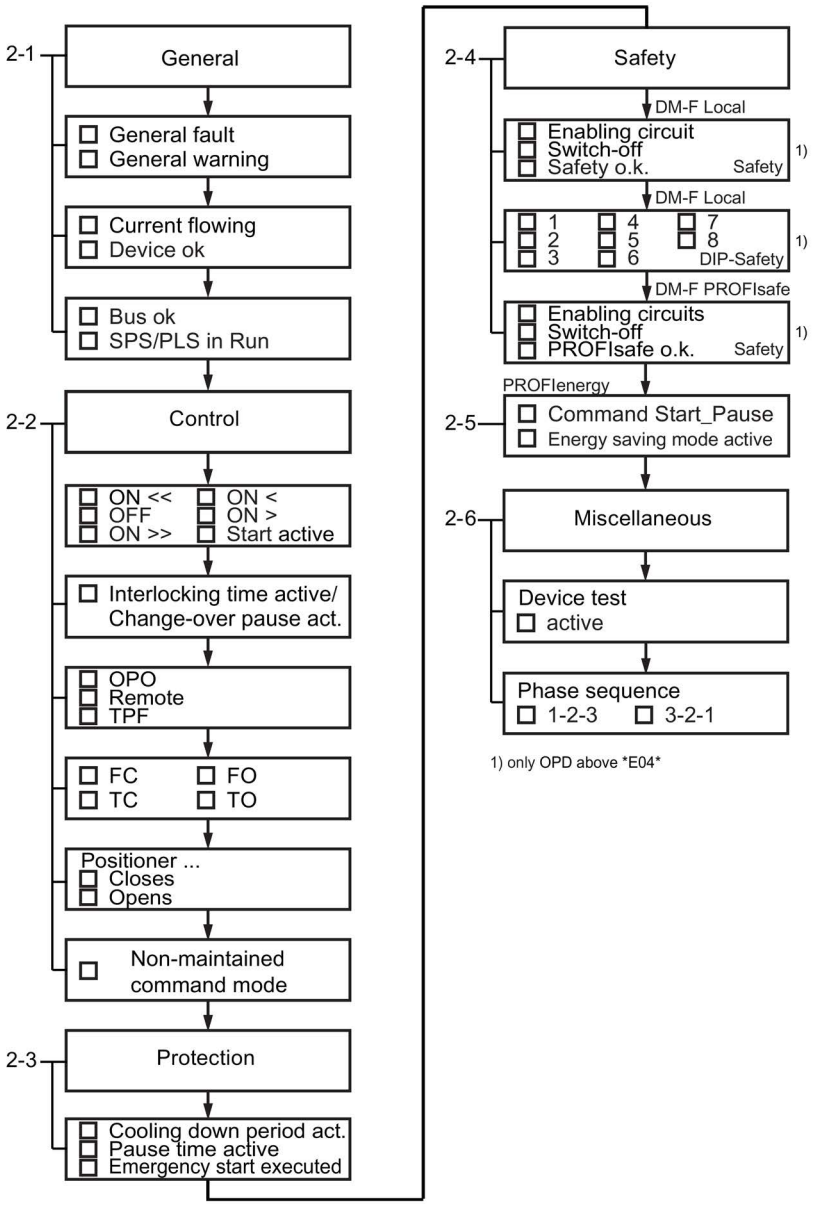


Figure 8-15 Status motor protection/motor control, operator panel with display - PROFINET / EtherNet/IP

3 Statistics/maintenance, operator panel with display

Details: See Display of statistical and maintenance-relevant information on the statistics/maintenance display (Page 103).

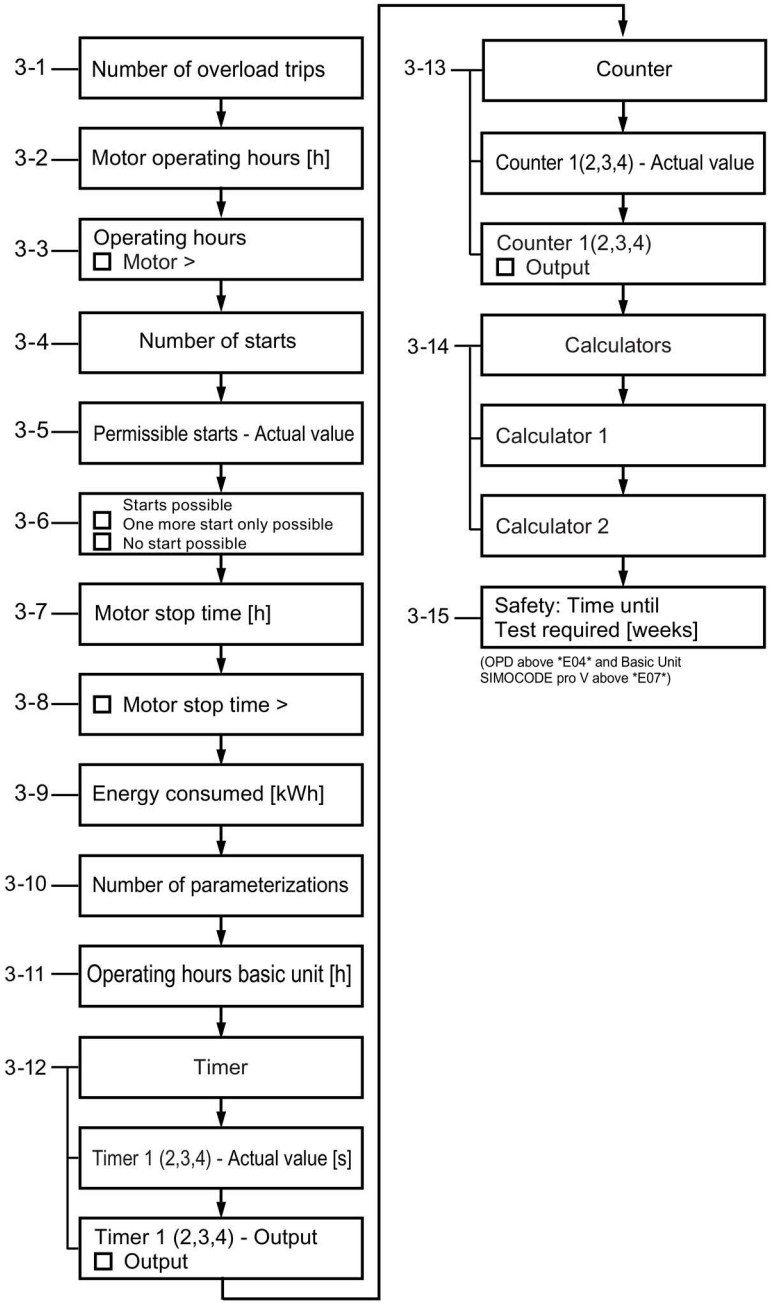


Figure 8-16 Statistics/maintenance, operator panel with display - PROFIBUS / Modbus

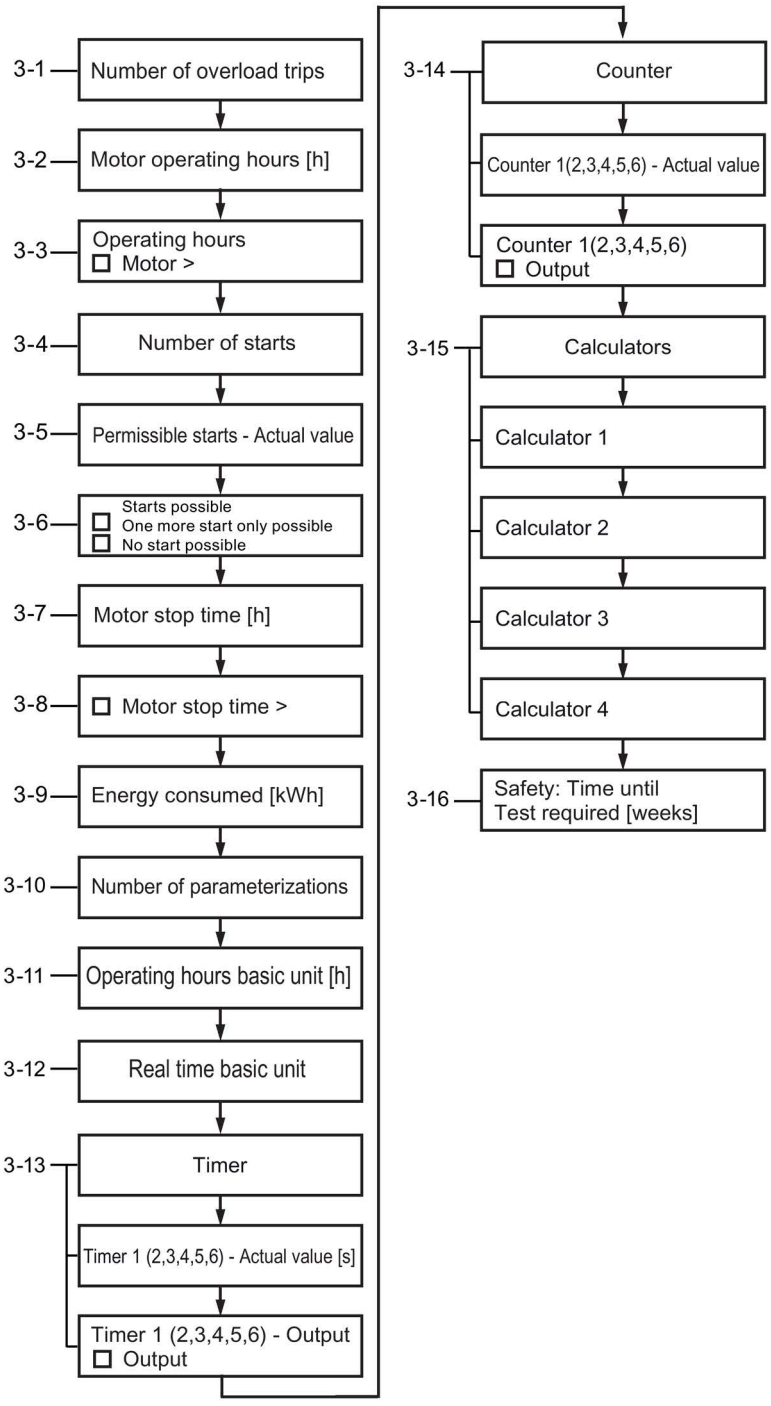


Figure 8-17 Statistics/maintenance, operator panel with display - PROFINET / EtherNet/IP

4 Communication on the fieldbus, operator panel with display

Details: See Status display for fieldbus communication (Page 104).

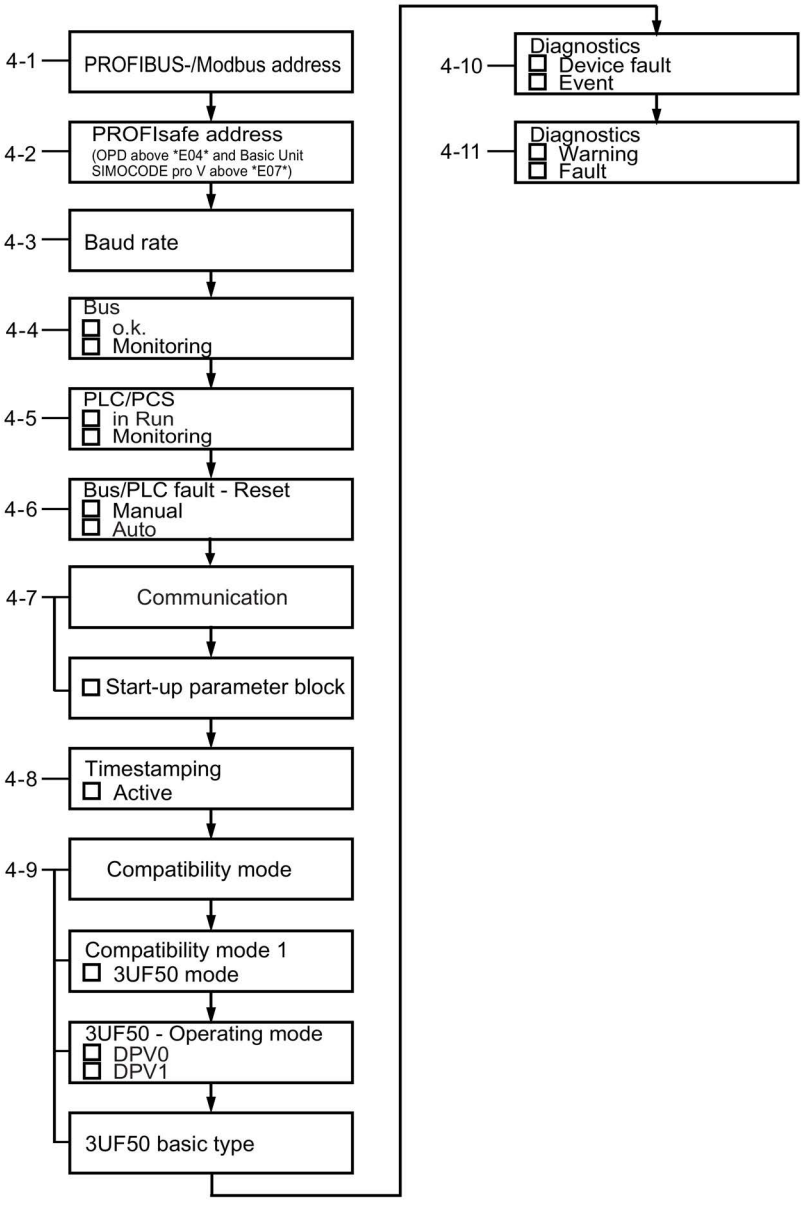


Figure 8-18 Communication on PROFIBUS / Modbus, operator panel with display

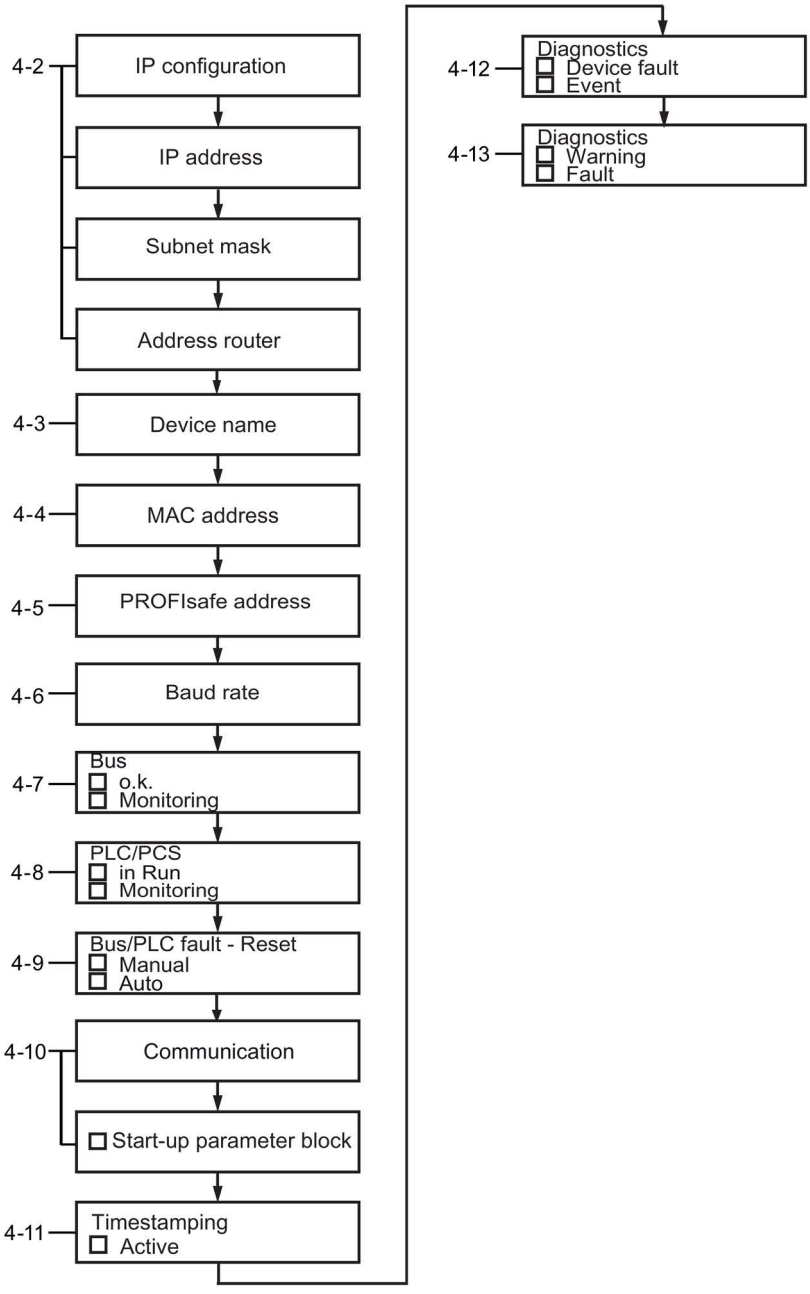


Figure 8-19 Communication on PROFINET/EtherNet/IP, operator panel with display

5 Device I/Os, operator panel with display

Details: See Displays the current status of all device I/Os (Page 106).

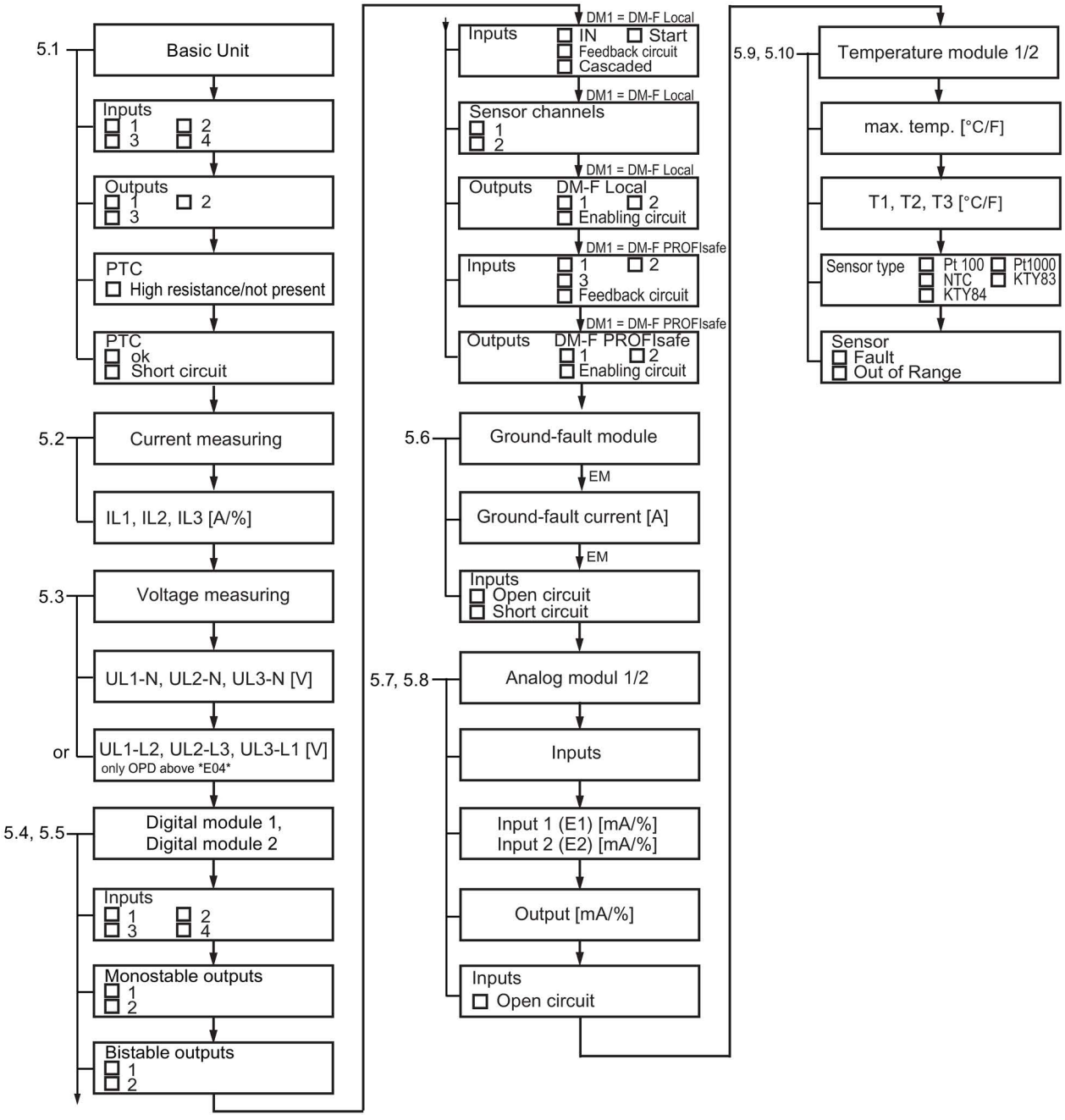


Figure 8-20 Device I/Os, operator panel with display

6 Parameters, operator panel with display

SIMOCODE pro V allows selected parameters to be set using the operator panel with display [1].

Details: See Parameters (Page 108)

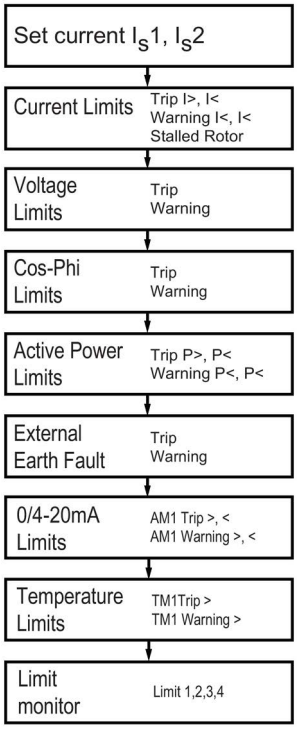


Figure 8-21 Parameter settings, operator panel with display

1)

Overview of the basic units and operator panels and their product versions, which permit the setting of parameters via the operator panel with display:

			Operator panel			
			3UF7210-1AA00-0	3UF7210-1BA00-0	3UF7210-1AA01-0	3UF7210-1BA01-0
SIMOCODE pro V PN	3UF7011-1Ax00-0	E01	E07	E01	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V EIP	3UF7013-1Ax00-0	E01	E07	E01	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V PROFIBUS	3UF7010-1Ax00-0	E15	E10	E02	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU	3UF7012-1Ax00-0	E03	E10	E02	E01	E01

7 Display settings, operator panel with display

Details: See Adapt display settings (Page 110).

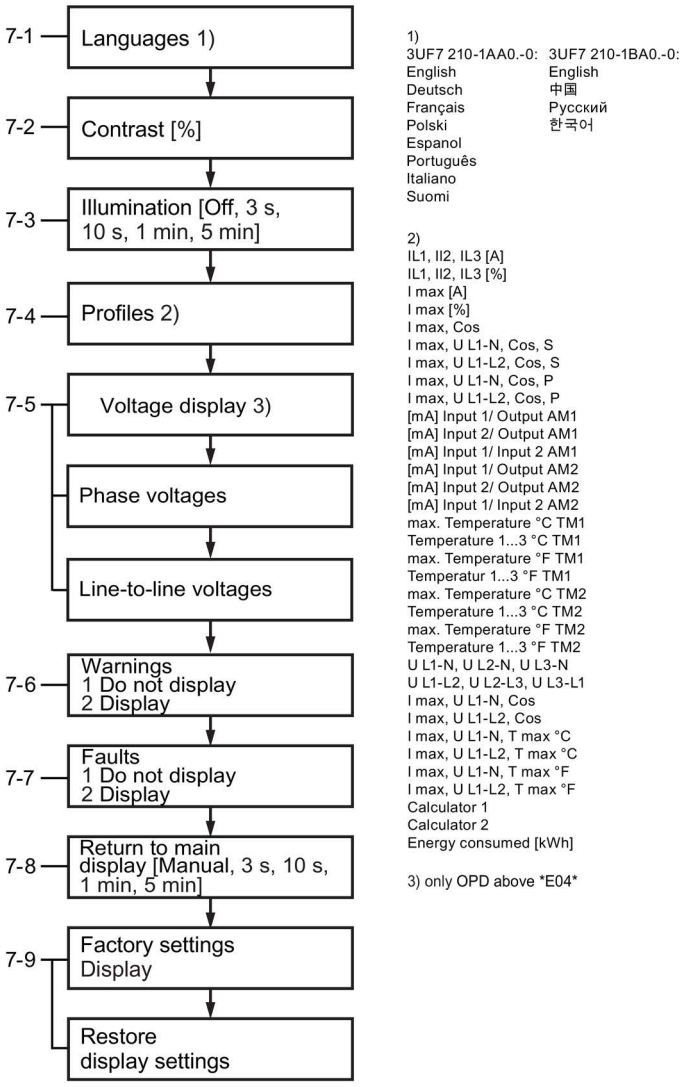


Figure 8-22 Display settings, operator panel with display

8 commands, operator panel with display (for Basic Units pro V PB / pro V MBR)

Details: See Resetting, testing and parameterizing via commands (Page 113).

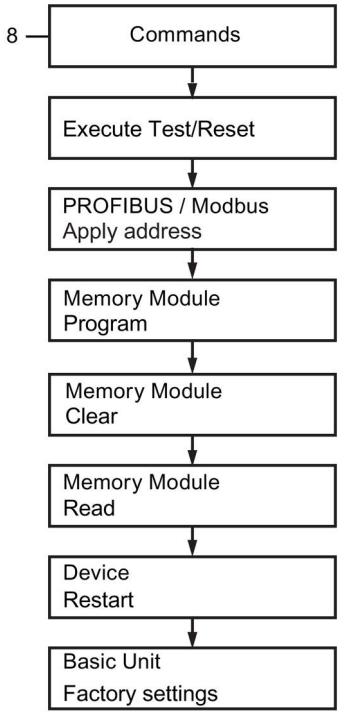


Figure 8-23 Commands, operator panel with display

9 Messages, operator panel with display

Details: See Display of all pending status information (Page 114).

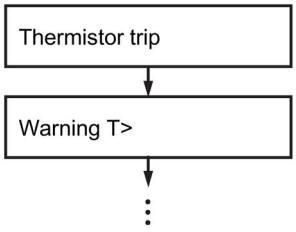


Figure 8-24 Messages, operator panel with display

10 Warnings, operator panel with display

Details: See Display of all pending warnings (Page 114).

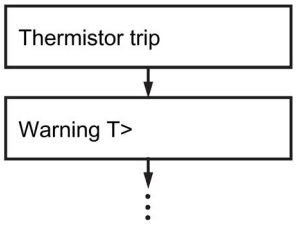


Figure 8-25 Warnings, operator panel with display

11 Faults, operator panel with display

Details: See Display of all pending faults (Page 114).

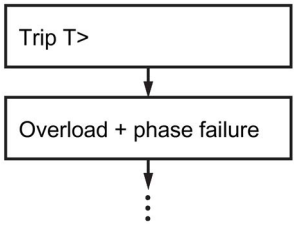


Figure 8-26 Faults, operator panel with display

12 Fault memory, operator panel with display

Details: See Reading the device's internal error buffer (Page 114)

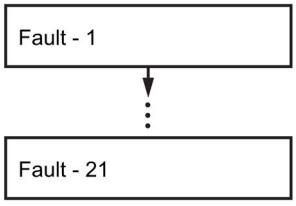


Figure 8-27 Fault memory, operator panel with display

13 Event memory, operator panel with display (only for OPD as from *E06* and BU2 as from *E07*)

Details: See Reading out the device-internal event memory (Page 115).

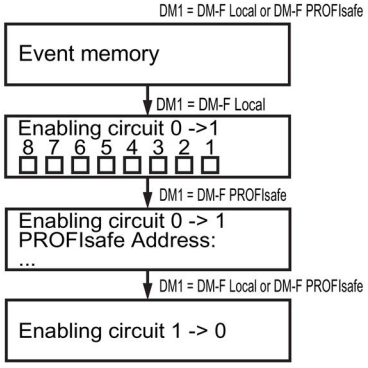


Figure 8-28 Event memory, operator panel with display

14 Identification, operator panel with display

Details: See Identification of the motor feeder and the SIMOCODE pro components (Page 116).

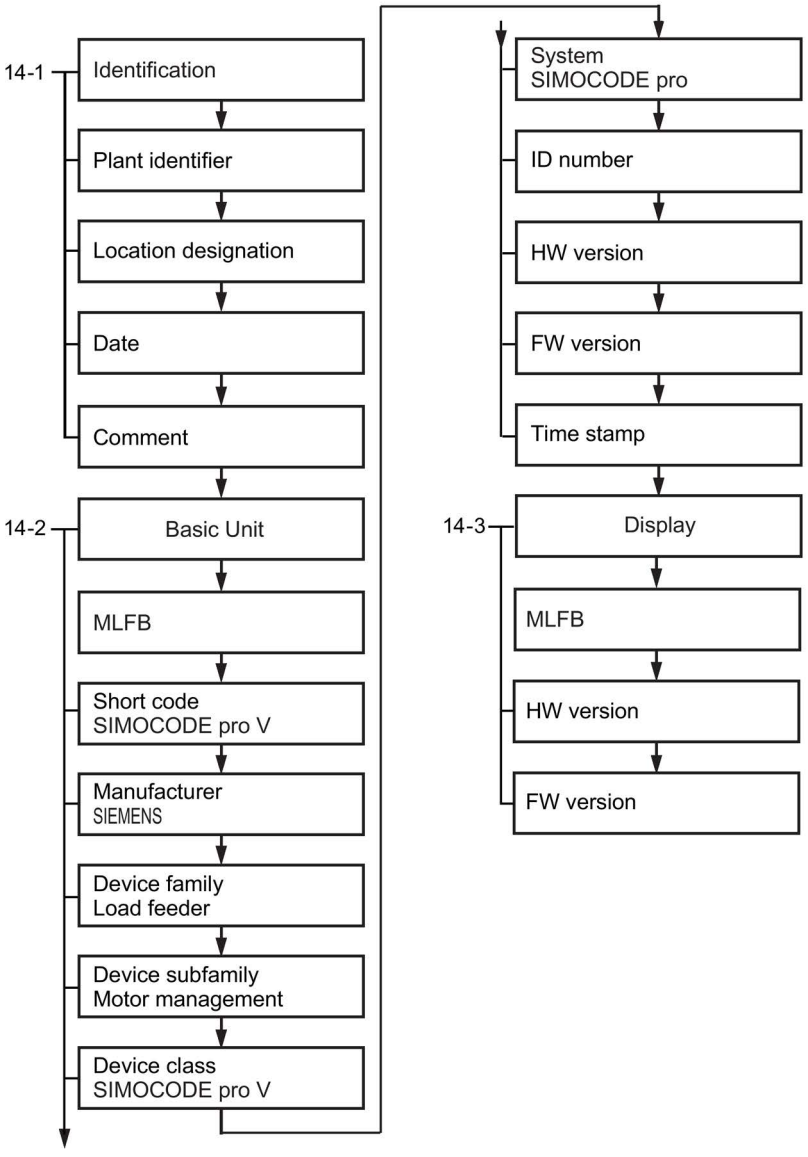


Figure 8-29 Identification, operator panel with display

8.3.3.2 Displays of the operator panel with display

You can navigate through the menu using the arrow keys and softkeys. Each menu item may have one or more submenus. The menu structure and display are, in part, directly dependent on the device parameterization (e. g. selected control function) and hardware configuration (e.g. type and number of expansion modules used).

- Main display

  The "main display" is the standard display of the SIMOCODE pro. It displays current measured values, which can be selected via profiles predefined to meet user-specific requirements. For detailed information: See "Read and adapt main display (Page 97)"

- Measured values display

  The "Measured values display" provides an overview of all values measured by SIMOCODE pro. For example, all phase currents, phase voltages, power-related measured values or temperatures. For detailed information: See "Display of measured values in the measured values display (Page 100)."

- Status display

  The "Status display" shows all higher-level status information, i.e. all status information relevant to the protection and control of the motor. For detailed information: See "Motor protection and motor control status (Page 102)."

- Statistics/Maintenance

  The "Statistics/Maintenance" menu item provides an overview of all SIMOCODE pro information that is primarily relevant to maintenance. For detailed information: See "Display of statistical and maintenance-relevant information on the statistics/maintenance display (Page 103)."

- Communication

  The "Communication" menu item displays all important information concerning fieldbus communication. For detailed information: See Status display for fieldbus communication (Page 104)

- Device I/Os

  The "Device I/Os" menu item provides a complete overview of the current status of all inputs and outputs of the basic unit as well as any connected expansion modules. For detailed information: See Displays the current status of all device I/Os (Page 106)

- Parameters

  SIMOCODE pro V allows selected parameters to be set using the operator panel with display: For detailed information: See Parameters (Page 108)

The parameterization is possible with the following combinations of basic unit/operator panel with display:

			Operator panel			
			3UF7210-1AA00-0	3UF7210-1BA00-0	3UF7210-1AA01-0	3UF7210-1BA01-0
SIMOCODE pro V PN	3UF7011-1Ax00-0	E01	E07	E01	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V EIP	3UF7013-1Ax00-0	E01	E07	E01	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V PROFIBUS	3UF7010-1Ax00-0	E15	E10	E02	E01	E01
SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU	3UF7012-1Ax00-0	E03	E10	E02	E01	E01

- Display settings

  All settings relevant to the operator panel with display can be carried out via "Display Settings". In addition to selecting the language and adjusting the contrast or illumination, it is also possible to select the profiles here that are relevant for adjusting the main display. For detailed information: See also "Adapt display settings (Page 110)."

- Commands

  The "Commands" menu item contains all commands relating to SIMOCODE pro, e.g. for testing the feeder, resetting after tripping and/or transferring parameters into the memory module or into SIMOCODE pro. For detailed information: See "Resetting, testing and parameterizing via commands (Page 113)."

- Messages

  The "Status Information" menu item provides an overview of all pending status information. For detailed information: See "Display of all pending status information (Page 114)."

- Warnings

  The "Warnings" menu item provides an overview of all pending warnings. For detailed information: See "Display of all pending warnings (Page 114)."

- Faults

  The "Faults" menu item provides an overview of all pending faults. For detailed information: See "Display of all pending faults (Page 114)."

- Error buffer

  The "Error buffer" menu item displays the SIMOCODE pro device-internal error buffer. For detailed information: See "Reading out the device-internal error buffer (Page 114)."

- Event memory

  The "Event Memory" menu item enables access to the SIMOCODE pro device-internal event memory. For detailed information: See "Reading out the device-internal event memory (Page 115)."

  Note

  Precondition for event memory display

  Is only displayed if DM-F present.

- Identification

  In the "Identification" menu item, you will find detailed information/labeling regarding SIMOCODE pro hardware components (basic unit, operator panel with display). For detailed information: See "Identification of the motor feeder and the SIMOCODE pro components (Page 116)."

- About SIMOCODE

  The "About SIMOCODE" menu item displays further information about SIMOCODE pro.

  See Timing charts (Page 80).

8.3.3.3 Read and adapt main display

To enable users speedy viewing of the measured values typically shown on their switchboard, various profiles are stored in the operator panel with display that enable user-specific adaptation of the standard measured values displayed in the SIMOCODE pro main display. The profile is selected in the menu "Display settings" → Profiles (see Section Adapt display settings (Page 110)).

The set current, the selected class time for the overload protection system and the use of temperature monitoring based on thermistors or analog temperature sensors are displayed (if programmed) at the bottom left of the main display. The submenus of the main display can be navigated with the right-hand softkey. For motors with two speeds, the left-hand softkey can be used to alternate between the display of the two set currents.

- **IL1, IL2, IL3 [A]** 1)

Shows the currents in all three phases in A.

- **IL1, IL2, IL3 [%]** 1)

Displays the currents in all three phases as a percentage of the set current.

- **Imax [A]** 1)

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in A.

- **Imax [%]** 1)

Displays the maximum current of all three phases as a percentage of the set current.

- **Imax, Cos phi** 2)

Displays the maximum current of all three phases in amps and the power factor.

- **Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi, S** 3)

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in amps, the phase voltage UL1 in V, the power factor, and the apparent power in kVA.

- **Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi, S** 4)

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in A, the line-to-line voltage UL1-L2 in V, the power factor, and the apparent power in kVA.

- **Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi, P** 3)

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in amps, the phase voltage UL1 in V, the power factor, and the active power in kW.

- **Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi, P** 4)

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in A, the line-to-line voltage UL1-L2 in V, the power factor, and the active power in W.

- **In1/output AM1 / In1/output AM2** 5) **[mA]**

Shows the current value at input 1 of analog module 1 / 2 and at the output of analog module 1 / 2 in mA.

- **In2/output AM1 / In2/output AM2** 5) **[mA]**

Shows the current value at input 2 of analog module 1 / 2 and at the output of analog module 1 / 2 in mA.

- **Inputs AM 1 / inputs AM2** 5) **[mA]**

Shows the current value at the two inputs of analog module 1 / 2 in mA.

- **Max. temp. °C TM 1 / TM2** [6)]

Shows the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 / 2 in °C.

- **Temperatures °C TM 1 / TM2** [6)]

Shows the individual temperatures of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 / 2 in °C.

- **Max. temp. °F TM 1 / TM2** [6)]

Shows the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 / 2 in °F.

- **Temperatures °F TM 1 / TM2** [6)]

Shows the individual temperatures of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 / 2 in °F.

- **UL1-N, UL2-N, UL3-N** [3)]

Shows all phase voltages in V.

- **UL1-L1, UL2-L3, UL3-L1** [4)]

Shows line-to-line voltages UL1-L2, UL2-L3, UL3-L1 in V.

- **Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi** [3)]

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in amps, the phase voltage UL1-N in V, and the power factor as absolute values.

- **Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi** [4)]

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in A, the line-to-line voltage UL1-L2 in V and the power factor.

- **Imax, UL1-N, °C** [7)]

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in amps, the phase voltage UL1-N in V, and the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module in °C.

- **Imax, UL1-L2, °F** [7)]

Shows the maximum current of all three phases in A, the line-to-line voltage UL1-L2 in V, and the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module in °F.

- **Calculator 1**

Shows the calculated result that the function block Calculator 1 provides without units in the range 0 ... 65535.

Permits display, for example, of a 2-byte value sent directly from the automation system on the display of the switchboard or the display without units of each 2-byte value in SIMOCODE pro.

- **Calculator 2**

Shows the calculated result that the function block Calculator 2 provides without units in the range 0 ... 65535.

Permits display, for example, of a 2-byte or 4-byte value sent directly from the automation system on the display of the switchboard or the display without units of each 2-byte and 4-byte value in SIMOCODE pro.

- **Energy consumed** 2)

Note

Modified system expansion or hardware configuration

If the main display permanently fails to show measured values, this indicates that a profile has been selected in the display settings that is no longer supported, due, for example, to a changed system expansion or changed hardware configuration. The profile must be reselected.

1) Possible only if a current measuring module or current / voltage measuring module is used

2) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used

3) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used Values will only be displayed if phase voltage is set/configured

4) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used and line-to-line voltage is set/configured

5) Possible only if the analog module is used

6) Possible only if the temperature module is used

7) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module and temperature module are used Values will only be displayed if phase voltage is set/configured

8.3.3.4 Display of measured values in the measured values display

The "Measured Values" menu item displays all current SIMOCODE pro measured values. Depending upon the type of expansion modules used, all or only some of the values listed here will be available. These are the most important menus by way of example:

- Imax [1)]

  Shows the maximum current of all three phases and can be switched between A or % of I_s

- IL1, IL2, IL3 [1)]

  Shows the currents of all three phases and can be switched between A or % of I_s.

- Phase unbalance [1)]

  Shows the current phase unbalance as a percentage.

- UL1-N, UL2-N, UL3-N [2)]

  Shows all phase voltages in V.

- U L1-L2, U L2-L3, U L3-L1 [3)]

  Shows all line-to-line voltages in V.

- Cos phi, P, S [4)]

  Shows the power factor (0 to 100 % or absolute, switchable using the right softkey), the active power in kW, and the apparent power in kVA.

- Frequency [Hz] [7)]

- Ground-fault current [mA]

  Shows the measured value of the residual current.

- Last trip current [mA]

  Shows the last measured value of the residual current.

- Analog input 1, analog input 2, analog output (for AM1) [5)]

  Shows the current values at both inputs and the actual value at the output of analog module 1 and can be switched over between mA and %.

- Analog input 1, analog input 2, analog output (for AM2) [5)]

  Shows the actual values at both inputs and the actual value at the output of analog module 2 and can be switched over between mA and %.

- Max. temperature [6)]

  Shows the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 in °C (can be switched to °F).

- Max. temperature [6)]

  Shows the maximum temperature of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 2 in °C (can be switched to °F).

- T1, T2, T3 [6)]

  Shows the individual temperatures of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 1 in °C (can be switched to °F).

- T1, T2, T3 [6)]

  Shows the individual temperatures of all used sensor measuring circuits of the temperature module 2 in °C (can be switched to °F).

- Thermal motor model

  Shows the current temperature rise of the internal thermal motor model in %.

- Time to trip

  Shows the estimated time to trip.

- Cooling down period

  Displays the cooling down period remaining before the motor can be switched on again after an overload trip.

- Last trip current

  Shows the magnitude of the current that was measured at the moment of the overload trip, unit of measurement can be switched between A and % of I_s.

1) Possible only if a current measuring module or current / voltage measuring module is used

2) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used Values will only be displayed if phase voltage is set/configured

3) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used and line-to-line voltage is set/configured

4) Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used

5) Possible only if the analog module is used

6) Possible only if the temperature module is used

7) 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module necessary

8.3.3.5 Motor protection and motor control status

The status display shows all higher-level status information, i.e. all status information relevant to the protection and controlling of the motor. The type of status information depicted is, therefore, in part directly dependent upon the parameterized control function and the hardware configuration of SIMOCODE pro, and may vary.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

General

- General fault, general warning
- Current flowing, device ok
- Bus ok, PLC/PCS in Run

Control

Note

Display status information

The display of the status information can vary according to the control function.

- ON<<, ON<, OFF, ON>, ON>>, start active
- Interlocking time active, change-over pause active
- OPO, Remote, TPF
- FC, FO, TC, TO: Only for "Positioner" control functions.
- Positioner runs in CLOSED direction, positioner runs in OPEN direction: Only for "Positioner" control functions.
- Non-maintained command mode

Protection

- Cooling down period active, pause time active, emergency start executed

Other

- Device test active
- Phase sequence 1-2-3, phase sequence 3-2-1

Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used.

Safety

- Safety DM-F Local: Status of enabling circuit, shutdown "Safety," "Safety o.k." (only with an OPD as from product version *E04*, a SIMOCODE pro V MBR / PN / EIP basic unit or a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit as from product version *E07* and a DM-F Local)
- DIP switches, DM-F Local: Status of DIP switches 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 (only with an OPD as from product version *E04*, a SIMOCODE pro V MBR / PN / EIP basic unit or a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit as from product version *E07* and a DM-F Local)
- Safety DM-F PROFIsafe: Status of enabling circuit, shutdown "Safety," "PROFIsafe active" (only with an OPD as from product version *E04*, a SIMOCODE pro V PN basic unit or a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit as from product version *E07* and a DM-F PROFIsafe).

8.3.3.6 Display of statistical and maintenance-relevant information on the statistics/maintenance display

The "Statistics/Maintenance" menu item gives an overview of all SIMOCODE pro information that is primarily relevant to maintenance. The states of timers and counters, etc. are displayed, as well as operating hours, stop times and the number of starts.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

General

- Number of overload trips
- Motor operating hours
- Motor operating hours >: Displays overshooting of the set limit for operating hours monitoring.
- No. of starts - actual value
- Permissible starts - actual value
- One more start only, no start
- Stop time: Displays overshooting of the set limit for motor stop time monitoring.
- Energy consumed (possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used)
- Number of parameterizations
- Motor operating hours basic unit
- Real time basic unit
- Timer
- Timer 1 (2, 3, 4, 5, 6) actual value
- Timer 1 (2, 3, 4, 5, 6) output
- Counter
- Counter 1 (2, 3, 4, 5, 6) actual value
- Counter 1 (2, 3, 4, 5, 6) output

Calculators

- Calculator 1
- Calculator 2
- Calculator 3
- Calculator 4

Safety

- Time until test requirement: Remaining time until next test requirement in weeks (displayed only when DM-F is installed).

8.3.3.7 Status display for fieldbus communication

The "Communication" menu item displays all important information concerning fieldbus communication.

PROFIBUS/Modbus:

In addition to the current PROFIBUS/Modbus device address, the baud rate or fieldbus-relevant settings concerning process and diagnostic alarms to the automation system.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

- PROFIBUS/Modbus address
- PROFIsafe address: Indicates the PROFIsafe address (only for OPD versions as from *E04*, SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit as from *E07* and an available with a DM-F PROFIsafe)
- Baud rate
- Bus ok, Bus monitoring
- PLC/PCS in Run, PLC/PCS monitoring
- Bus/PLC fault - reset
- Startup parameter block
- Time stamping active
- Compatibility mode
- Compatibility mode 1, 3UF50 Mode
- 3UF50 mode DPV0, DPV1
- 3UF50 basic type
- Diagnostics device error, diagnostics message: Displays which diagnostic information of type "device error" and/or "message" is sent by SIMOCODE pro to a higher-level automation system via PROFIBUS.
- Diagnostics warning, diagnostics trip: Displays which diagnostic information of type "warning" and/or "trip" is sent by SIMOCODE pro to a higher-level automation system via PROFIBUS.

PROFINET:

Not only information about IP configuration, device name, MAC address, PROFIsafe address but also settings about the status of communication and the response of SIMOCODE pro if communication failures are displayed.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

- IP configuration
- Device name
- MAC address
- PROFIsafe address: Shows the PROFIsafe address (only when DM-F PROFIsafe is installed)
- Baud rate
- Bus OK, bus monitoring
- PLC/PCS in Run, PLC/PCS monitoring
- Bus/PLC fault - reset
- Startup parameter block
- Diagnostics device error, diagnostics message: Shows which type of diagnostic information is sent by SIMOCODE pro to a higher-level automation system via PROFINET.
- Diagnostics warning, diagnostics trip: Shows which type of diagnostic information is sent by SIMOCODE pro to a higher-level automation system via PROFINET.

8.3.3.8 Displays the current status of all device I/Os

The "Device I/Os" menu item provides a complete overview of the current status of all inputs and outputs of the basic unit as well as any connected expansion modules. The type of status information displayed is directly dependent upon the SIMOCODE pro hardware configuration.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

Basic unit

- Inputs 1 (2, 3, 4)
- Outputs 1 (2, 3)
- PTC high resistance/not present
- PTC ok, PTC short circuit

Current measurement

IL1, II2, IL3: Displays the currents (in A) in all three phases (possible only if a current measuring module or current / voltage measuring module is used).

Voltage measurement

- UL1-N, UL2-N, UL3-N: Displays all line-to-line voltages in V (possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used and the OPD is version *E04* or higher and line-to-line voltage is set/configured).
- U L1-L2, U L2-L3, U L3-L1: Displays all line-to-line voltages in V (possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is used, line-to-line voltage is set/configured and the OPD used is version *E04* or higher).

Digital module 1, digital module 2

- Inputs 1 (2, 3, 4): Inputs 1, 2, 3, 4 "monostable" or "bistable."
- Outputs 1, 2 "monostable" (possible only if digital module 1 is used as "monostable").

Note
Display

For OPD up to product version *E03*, the display is different.

- Outputs 1, 2 "bistable" (possible only if digital module 1 is used as "monostable" or "bistable").

Note
Display

For OPD up to product version *E03*, the display is different.

Digital module 1 as DM-F Local

Possible only if digital module 1 is "Local," an OPD as from version *E04* and a SIMOCODE pro V (PB basic unit as from product version *E07*) is used.

- Inputs DM-F Local: Inputs "IN," "Start," "Feedback circuit," "Cascaded."
- Sensor channels DM-F Local: Sensor channels 1, 2
- Outputs DM-F Local: Outputs 1, 2, "Enabling circuit."

Digital module 1 is DM-F PROFIsafe

Possible only if digital module 1 is "PROFIsafe", an OPD as from version *E04* and a SIMOCODE pro V PB / PN basic unit (PB as from product version *E07*) is used.

- Inputs DM-F PROFIsafe: Inputs 1, 2, 3, "Feedback circuit".
- Outputs DM-F PROFIsafe: Outputs 1, 2, "Enabling circuit."

Ground-fault module

Possible only if the ground-fault module is used.

- Ground-fault current [mA]
- Inputs
  - Open circuit
  - Short-circuit.

Analog module

Possible only if the analog module is used.

- Input 1, input 2
- Output
- Open circuit

Temperature module

Possible only if the temperature module is used.

- Max. temperature
- T1, T2, T3
- Sensor type Pt100, Pt1000, NTC, KTY83, KTY85
- Sensor fault sensor out of range

8.3.3.9 Parameters

You can set the following parameters using the operator panel with display:

Parameters	Range	Note
Overload protection → current settings		Possible only if a current measuring module is configured
Current setting Is1	0.00 - 9,999.00 A	-
Current setting Is2	0.00 - 9,999.00 A	Possible only in conjunction with the following control functions: • Dahlander starter • Dahlander reversing starter • Pole-changing starter • Pole-changing reversing starter
Current limits		Possible only if a current measuring module is configured
Monitoring of current limits → trip level I > (upper limit)	0 - 1020 % of Is	-
Monitoring of current limits → warning level I > (upper limit)	0 - 1020 % of Is	-
Monitoring of current limits → trip level I < (lower limit)	0 - 1020 % of Is	-
Monitoring of current limits → warning level I < (lower limit)	0 - 1020 % of Is	-
Motor protection → stalled rotor protection level	0 - 1020 % of Is	-
Voltage monitoring → voltage limits		Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is configured
Trip level U < (lower limit)	0 - 2040 V	-
Warning level U < (lower limit)	0 - 2040 V	-
Cos phi monitoring → Cos phi limits		Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is configured
Trip level cos phi < (lower limit)	0 - 100 %	-
Warning level cos phi < (lower limit)	0 - 100 %	-
Active power monitoring → Active power limits		Possible only if a current / voltage measuring module is configured
Trip level P > (upper limit)	0.000 - 9999.000 kW	-
Warning level P > (upper limit)	0.000 - 9999.000 kW	-
Trip level P < (lower limit)	0.000 - 9999.000 kW	-
Warning level P < (lower limit)	0.000 - 9999.000 kW	-

Parameters	Range	Note
Ground fault monitoring → Ground fault limits		Possible only if a 3UF7510 ground-fault module is configured
Trip level	0.00 - 40.00 A	-
Warning level	0.00 - 40.00 A	-
0/4-20 mA monitoring → 0/4-20 mA limits		Possible only if analog module 1 and/or 2 is configured
Analog module 1 - trip level 0/4-20 mA > (upper limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - warning level 0/4-20 mA > (upper limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - trip level 0/4-20 mA < (lower limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - warning level 0/4-20 mA < (lower limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - trip level 0/4-20 mA > (upper limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - warning level 0/4-20 mA > (upper limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - trip level 0/4-20 mA < (lower limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Analog module 1 - warning level 0/4-20 mA < (lower limit)	0 - 255	Represented in 0/4 - 20 mA similar to "Measured values" menu
Temperature monitoring → temperature limits		Possible only if temperature module 1 and/or 2 is configured
Temperature module 1 - trip level > (upper limit)	0 - 65,535 K	Represented in °C/F similar to "Measured values" menu
Temperature module 1 - warning level > (upper limit)	0 - 65,535 K	Represented in °C/F similar to "Measured values" menu
Temperature module 2 - trip level > (upper limit)	0 - 65,535 K	Represented in °C/F similar to "Measured values" menu
Temperature module 2 - warning level > (upper limit)	0 - 65,535 K	Represented in °C/F similar to "Measured values" menu
Limit monitor - limit monitor limit	0 - 65535	-
Limit 1	0 - 65535	-
Limit 2	0 - 65535	-
Limit 3	0 - 65535	-
Limit 4	0 - 65535	-
Limit 5	0 - 65535	-
Limit 6	0 - 65535	-

Note

Password protection

It is only possible to change these parameters if password protection is not active. Only then can you choose the parameter to be modified with the "OK" button.

Proceed as follows to change a parameter:

- Choose menu item "Parameters" from the main menu
- Then choose the parameter to be changed in the relevant submenu
- Click OK to confirm the selection

You can now change the value with the ▲ and ▼ buttons. The longer you hold these buttons for, the larger the step by which the value changes.

8.3.3.10 Adapt display settings

The default settings configured in the basic unit can be modified via the display settings. However, changes made in this way do not result in a change to the configured defaults. In addition to selecting the language and adjusting the contrast or illumination, it is also possible to select the profiles here that are relevant for adjusting the main display. In the factory settings menu item, the changes made to the display settings can be reset to the values configured in the basic unit.

These are the most important menus by way of example:

Languages

English (default), German, French, Polish, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Finnish

or alternatively

English, Chinese, Russian, Korean.

Contrast

0 % to 100 % (default: 50 %)

Illumination

Specifies how long the backlit display will remain on on the operator panel with display after the last keystroke and enables permanent activation or deactivation of the backlit display. Off, 3 s, 10 s (default), 1 min, 5 min

Profiles

Enables selection of the display profiles for the main display. If a defined profile is no longer supported by SIMOCODE pro, for example, due to a changed hardware configuration, the start display will be shown instead of the default main display:

- IL1, IL2, IL3 [A] (default)
- Imax [A]
- IL1, IL2, IL3 [%]
- Imax [%]
- Imax, Cos phi
- Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi, S
- Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi, S
- Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi, P
- Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi, P
- In1/output AM1 [mA] (only if analog module 1 is present and configured)
- In2/output AM1 [mA] (only if analog module 1 is present and configured)
- In1/output AM2 [mA] (only if analog module 2 is present and configured)
- In2/output AM2 [mA] (only if analog module 2 is present and configured)
- Inputs AM 1 / inputs AM2 [mA]
- Max. temp. °C/°F TM1 (only if temperature module 1 is present and configured)
- Temperatures °C/°F TM1 (only if temperature module 1 is present and configured)
- Max. temp. °C/°F TM2 (only if temperature module 2 is present and configured)
- Temperatures °C/°F TM2 (only if temperature module 2 is present and configured)
- UL1-N, UL2-N, UL3-N
- UL1-L2, UL2-L3, UL3-L1
- Imax, UL1-N, Cos phi
- Imax, UL1-L2, Cos phi
- Imax, UL1-N °C/°F (temperature display TM1! [1])
- Imax, UL1-L2, °C/°F [1] (temperature display TM1! [1])
- Calculator 1
- Calculator 2
- Energy consumed [kWh] (only if a current / voltage measuring module is configured).

See Section Read and adapt main display (Page 97).

NOTICE
1) Temperatures
The temperature from temperature module 1 is always shown in this display profile.
The temperature from temperature module 2 is not shown in this profile.

Voltage display

Switch voltage display: Defines whether "phase voltages" or "line-to-line voltages" will be displayed (available only with an OPD as from product version *E04* and a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit up to product version *E06*). Configuration is performed in the basic unit as from SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit, product version *E07*.

Warnings

Determines whether, in the case of a pending general warning, the display is switched over to the menu item "Warnings" so that details are displayed (not activated per default): Do not display (default) - Display

Faults

Determines whether, in the case of a pending general fault, the display is switched over to the menu item "Faults" so that details are displayed (switched on per default, higher priority than pending warnings): Do not display - Display (default)

Return to main display

Determines whether and when to return from the current menu to the main display:

Manual, 3 s, 10 s (default), 1 min, 5 min

8.3.3.11 Resetting, testing and parameterizing via commands

The "Commands" menu item contains all commands relating to SIMOCODE pro, e.g. for testing the feeder, resetting after tripping and/or transferring parameters into the memory module or into SIMOCODE pro. By safeguarding the device-internal parameterization against external access, e.g. via a password stipulated in SIMOCODE pro, individual commands and/or even the entire "Commands" menu item can be blocked.

Program memory module

Parameters are transferred to memory module The memory module must be plugged into the system interface for this purpose.

Clear memory module

Parameters in memory module are reset. The memory module must be plugged into the system interface for this purpose.

Read memory module

Acceptance of the parameters from the memory module into the basic unit. The memory module must be plugged into the system interface for this purpose.

Memory module write protection on

All contents of the memory module are write-protected. This prevents any inadvertent changes to the contents of the memory module and any parameter changes to the connected SIMOCODE pro V basic unit.

An inadvertent change of parameters for a motor feeder is prevented.

SIMOCODE pro signals the successful execution of the command with the event "Memory module write-protected".

Memory module write protection off

With this command you can cancel the write protection of the memory module.

Restart

Initialization of SIMOCODE pro. New start.

Factory settings

All parameters have their factory setting again, except for the password. Only possible if password protection is not active or the password is known.

Set time (= PC time)

If no NTP server address has been configured or no server has been found in the network, you can set the time of day here, that is, the real-time clock of SIMOCODE pro is set to the system time of the computer.

Test

Execute the test function. Same function as "TEST/RESET" button on the basic unit and operator panel

Reset

Execute a reset operation. Same function at "TEST/RESET" button on the basic unit and operator panel.

8.3.3.12 Displaying all pending messages

This menu item provides an overview of all pending status information. A precise description of the pending status information messages can be found in Chapter Alarms, faults, and system events - error handling (Page 268).

8.3.3.13 Displaying all pending warnings

This menu item provides an overview of all pending warnings. In the displays settings, it is possible to set that the display will automatically switch to this menu item when a new general warning occurs so that the exact cause of the general warning can be displayed. A precise description of the pending warnings can be found in Chapter Alarms, faults, and system events - error handling (Page 268).

8.3.3.14 Displaying all pending faults

This menu item provides an overview of all pending faults. In the display settings, it is possible to set that the display will automatically switch to this menu item when a new general fault occurs so that the exact cause of the general fault can be displayed. A precise description of the pending faults can be found in Chapter Alarms, faults, and system events - error handling (Page 268).

8.3.3.15 Reading the device's internal error buffer

The "Error buffer" menu item enables access to the SIMOCODE pro's internal error buffer. The time and cause of the last 21 faults are displayed here. See also Chapter Error buffer (Page 265). A precise description of the faults can be found in Chapter Alarms, faults, and system events - error handling (Page 268).

8.3.3.16 Reading the device's internal event memory

The "Event memory" menu item enables access to the SIMOCODE pro's internal event memory. The two most recent events "DM-F enabling circuit closed" and "DM-F enabling circuit open" are displayed, together with the time, for both digital modules "DM-F Local" and "DM-F PROFIsafe".

Event memory

The event memory is displayed.

Last event "Enabling circuit closed," DM-F Local

The entry contains the last event "DM-F enabling circuit closed," the time and the related DIP switch configuration.

Note

Requirements

Possible only if digital module 1 is used as a DM-F Local module.

Last event "Enabling circuit closed," DM-F PROFIsafe

The entry contains the last event "DM-F enabling circuit closed," the time and the related PROFIsafe address.

Note

Requirements

Possible only if digital module 1 is used as a DM-F PROFIsafe module.

Last event "Enabling circuit open"

The entry contains the last event "DM-F enabling circuit open" and the corresponding time.

Note

Requirements

Possible only if digital module 1 is used as a DM-F Local or DM-F PROFIsafe module.

8.3.3.17 Identification of the motor feeder and the SIMOCODE pro components

In the "Identification" menu item, you will find detailed information about the used SIMOCODE pro hardware components, e.g. hardware and firmware versions. This dialog box also enables identification of the motor feeder via a plant identifier stored in SIMOCODE pro, as well as a request for the location designation and display of the device's internal comment.
The essential menus are described by way of an example below:

Identification

- Plant identifier
- Location designation
- Date installed
- Description

Basic unit

- Order number
- Short code
- Vendor
- Device subfamily
- Device class
- System
- Ident. no.
- Hardware version
- Firmware version
- Time stamp

Display

- Order number
- Hardware version
- Firmware version

8.4 Current measuring modules (IM) for the SIMOCODE pro C, SIMOCODE pro S, and SIMOCODE pro V device series

Current measuring modules can be used together with all device series.
The current measuring module must be selected according to the current setting to be monitored for each feeder (rated operating current of the motor). The current measuring modules cover current ranges between 0.3 A and 630 A, with interposing transformers up to 820 A.
Current measuring modules are available for the following current ranges (see figure below):

- 0.3 to 3 A with through-hole connection
- 2.4 to 25 A with through-hole connection
- 10 to 100 A with through-hole connection
- 20 to 200 A with through-hole technology or bus connection system
- 63 to 630 A with bus connection system

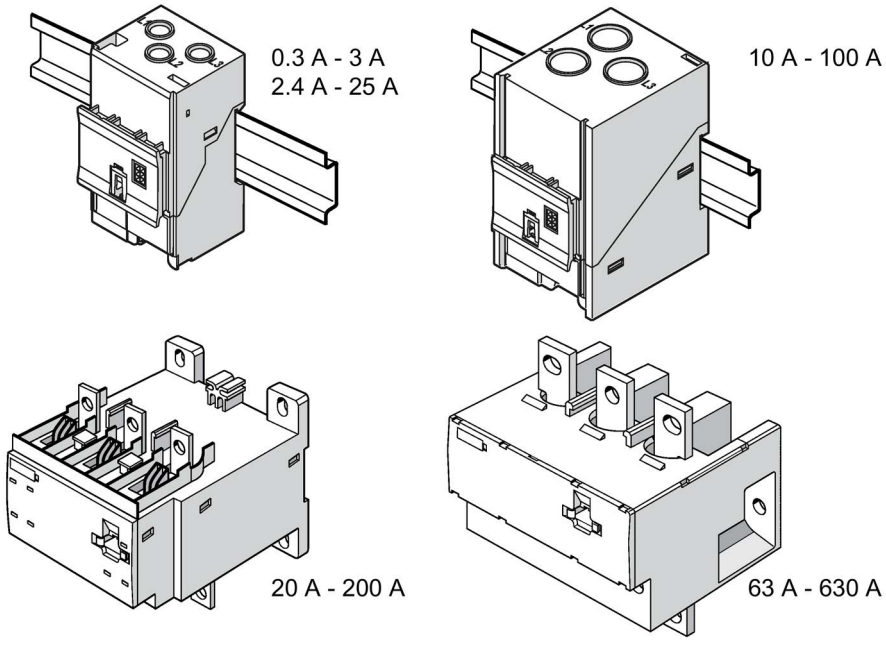


Figure 8-30 Types of current measuring modules

The current measuring module is connected to the basic unit via a connecting cable, which also supplies the power. Current measuring modules up to 100 A are suitable for standard rail mounting or can be fixed directly to the mounting plate using additional push-in lugs. Basic units can be snapped directly onto the current measuring modules. Current measuring modules up to 200 A can also be mounted on the standard mounting rail or, optionally, they can be fixed directly to the mounting plate with the screw attachments that are integrated in the enclosure. The current measuring module up to 630 A can only be mounted using the integrated screw attachments.

Note

Current measuring modules with a current setting of up to 100 A can be connected to the basic unit mechanically and be installed as a unit (behind one another). Larger current measuring modules can only be mounted separately.

8.5 Current / voltage measuring modules (UM, UM+) for the SIMOCODE pro V device series

Variants

Two device generations of the current / voltage measuring modules are available:

1st generation: UM, MLFB ending in 000 (e.g. 3UF71101AA000).

A decoupling module may be required when using these current / voltage measuring modules. See Chapter Decoupling module (DCM) for 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules (e.g. 3UF711.1AA000) (Page 125).

2nd generation: UM+, MLFB ending in 010 (e.g. 3UF71101AA010).

These current / voltage measuring modules do not require a decoupling module.

Function

The SIMOCODE pro V device series allows use of a current / voltage measuring module instead of a current measuring module. In addition to measuring the motor current, current / voltage measuring modules also enable:

- Monitoring voltages up to 690 V (UM, UM+)
- Calculation and monitoring of power and cos phi (UM, UM+)
- Determining the frequency (UM+)
- Monitoring the phase sequence (UM, UM+)

With SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal), you can define under "Parameters → Device configuration → Display voltage" whether the phase voltage or line-to-line voltage is to be used system-wide (when using a SIMOCODE pro V basic unit from firmware version V3.0).

Current / voltage measuring modules are available for the following current ranges:

	Current range	Through-hole connection	Through-hole technology or bus connection system	Bus connection system
UM	0.3 to 3 A	✓	—	—
	2.4 to 25 A	✓	—	—
	10 to 100 A	✓	—	—
	20 to 200 A	—	✓	—
	63 to 630 A	—	—	✓
UM+	0.3 to 4 A	✓	—	—
	3 to 40 A	✓	—	—
	10 to 115 A	✓	—	—
	20 to 200 A	—	✓	—
	63 to 630 A	—	—	✓

The diagram below shows the various current / voltage measuring modules:

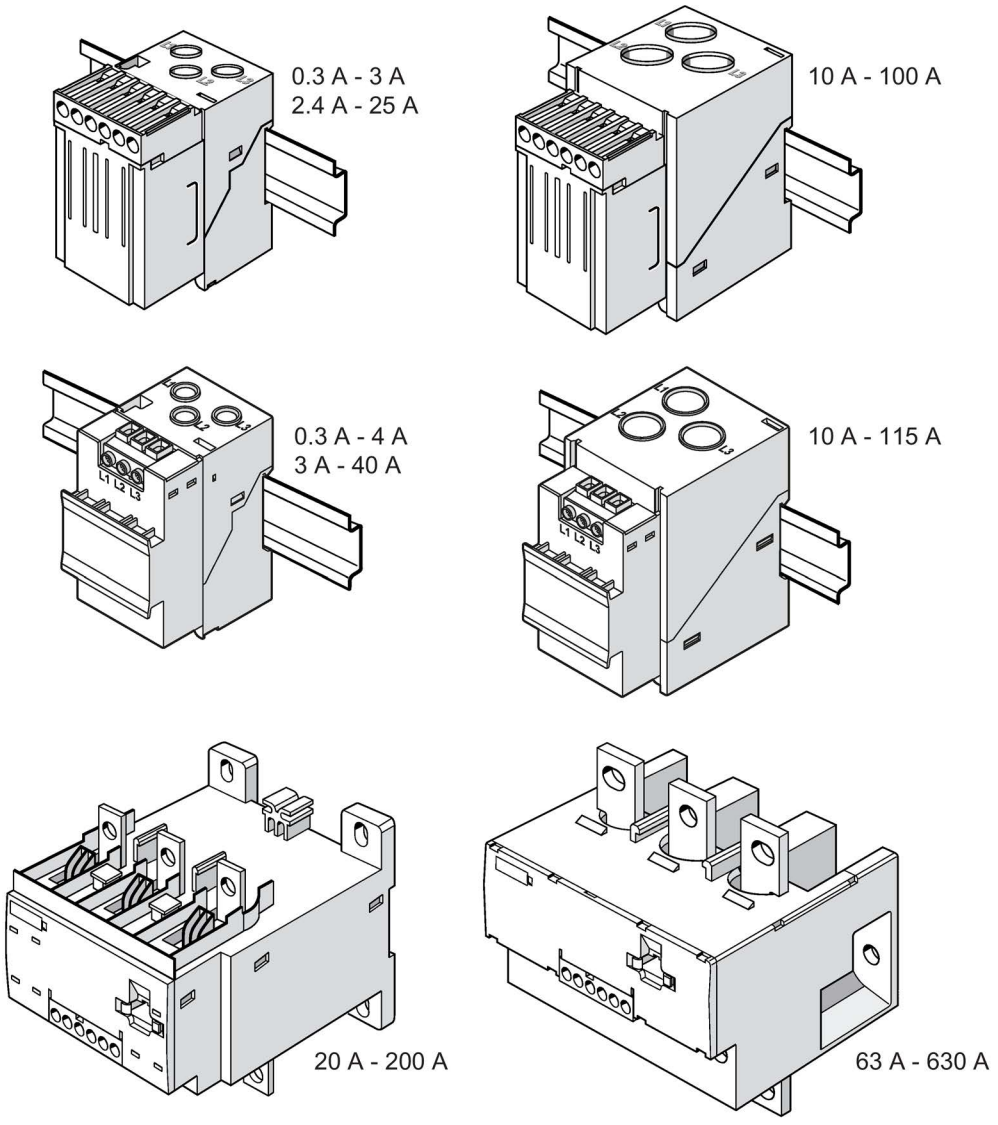


Figure 8-31 Variants of current / voltage measuring modules

Wiring:

The current / voltage measuring modules are connected to the basic unit via a connecting cable, which also supplies the power.

For the purpose of calculating or monitoring power-related measured values, current / voltage measuring modules are equipped with additional, removable terminals to which the voltages of all three phases of the main circuit are connected. An additional 3-core cable can be used, for example, to connect the main circuit directly from the bus connections of the current / voltage measuring module with the connection terminals of the voltage measuring module.

Mounting:

The current / voltage measuring modules UM / UM+ with a current setting of up to 115 A are suitable for standard rail mounting or can be fixed directly to the mounting plate using additional push-in lugs. These can be connected to the basic unit mechanically and installed as a unit (behind one another). For current / voltage measuring modules UM+ with a current setting of up to 115 A it is possible to mount the basic unit on the current / voltage measuring module.

Current / voltage measuring modules with a setting current up to 200 A can also be mounted on the standard mounting rail or, optionally, they can be fixed directly to the mounting plate with the screw attachments that are integrated in the enclosure.

The current / voltage measuring module with a current setting of up to 630 A can only be mounted using the integrated screw attachments. In this case, basic units can only be installed separately next to the current / voltage measuring modules.

Application notes when using a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module

Note

MLFB

The MLFBs of 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules end in 010 (e.g. 3UF71101AA010)

Measured variables and measurement accuracies

The following new measured quantities are available:

- Frequency f of the supply voltage [1)]
- Average phase current - mean value (I1/I2/I3) I_avg:

Thanks to the internally determined ground-fault current, it is possible to monitor it by means of a warning and tripping threshold (up to max. 6x I_o). The relevant settings are made via the "Internal ground fault" function block. See Chapter "Ground fault monitoring" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

The accuracy of measured values has been improved. The following measuring accuracies are possible in the rated ranges:

- Current I: 1.5%
- Voltage U: 1.5%
- Power factor cos phi: 1.5%
- Active power P: 5%
- Active energy E: 5%
- Frequency f of the supply voltage: 1.5%
- Average phase current - mean value (I1/I2/I3) I_avg: 1.5%
- Ground-fault detection according to IEC 60947-1:
  - in the range 30% - 120% I_e: ± 10% (Class CI-A)
  - in the range 15% - 30% I_e: ± 25% (Class CI-B)

The measurement ranges of the current / voltage measuring modules have been adjusted to the current ranges of SIRIUS Innovations contactors and load feeders. This results in increases to the following measuring ranges: 0.3 to 4 A; 3 to 40 A and 10 to 115 A.

The measured values with the accuracy figures mentioned can be found in data record 94 - Measured values (from byte position 132) and in data record 95 - Statistics data in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

1)

Note

Frequency measurement

For a correct frequency measurement, the voltage measurement must be connected.

Measurement performance

The rate of measured value acquisition has been improved, and so updating of all measured values within 200 ms can be assumed.

Tripping characteristic

The overload tripping characteristic, which is calculated in the measuring modules, has been revised in the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules. By means of diverse analyses, the characteristic curve has been adjusted further to the actual requirements for overload release.

The tripping characteristic fulfills all basic points defined for overload protection in IEC 60947-4-1. In particular in the range of the 2-fold motor rated current, the characteristic curve was approximated to the practical conditions. Thus, the characteristic curve has steepened slightly, which produces slower tripping in the range between 1.15-fold and 6-fold motor rated current, and faster tripping in the range above 6-fold motor rated current.

The tripping characteristics can be found in Chapter "Overload protection" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

The trip classes have been extended with trip class 7. Thus, if required, finer coordination of the trip classes can be chosen in the lower range (if, for example, there is a wish to approximate to the characteristic curve of the class 10 current measuring modules).

Interaction with the SIMOCODE basic units

The 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules operate with the new functions together with the basic units as from the following product versions:

- SIMOCODE pro V PB: From E15
- SIMOCODE pro V MBR: From E03
- SIMOCODE pro V PN: From E10
- SIMOCODE pro V EIP: From E01.

NOTICE

Connecting current / voltage measuring modules to the basic unit

The 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules must be connected directly to the basic unit in order to achieve the full performance capability.

NOTICE

Compatibility/compatibility mode

- The 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules also function with older SIMOCODE basic units. In this case, they behave compatibly with the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules and can replace them in an application (compatibility mode). The prerequisite is that the current setting must lie within the permitted range of the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module. Example: A 1st generation current / voltage measuring module 3UF7111-1AA00-0 (2.4 - 25 A) is to be replaced. If the current setting lies within the range of 2.4 to 3.0 A, a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module 3UF7110-1AA01-0 (0.3 - 4 A) must be used.
- If both the SIMOCODE pro basic unit and also the current / voltage measuring module are replaced and the hardware parameterization is unchanged (the SIMOCODE ES parameterization still contains a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module), the compatibility mode of the current / voltage measuring module is also active.
- In the event that a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module is replaced by a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module, an existing decoupling module must be removed to ensure fault-free operation.

Specifically, this means:

- The tripping characteristic remains as in the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules.
- The measurement accuracy figures and measured values correspond to those of the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules.
- The new measured values stored as float in the data records are not entered (see manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960) → Tables, data records - definitions").

The following restrictions still have to be observed:

NOTICE
Maximum configuration of the SIMOCODE system with older basic units SIMOCODE pro V PB (≤ E14) or pro V MB RTU (E01) and a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module • When using BU / UM+: max. 4 expansion modules • When using BU / UM+ / OP: – max. 4 expansion modules – max. 3 expansion modules when using AM, TM and EM • when using BU / UM+ / OPD: Max. 3 expansion modules, of which one AM, TM or EM or max. 2 expansion modules from AM, TM and EM when using a BU 24 V DC • when using BU / UM+ / OPD: Max. 2 expansion modules, of which one AM, TM or EM when using a BU 110-240 V AC/DC In this case, the installation guidelines for configuration with the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules must be observed.

See also Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit (Page 136) for more information.

NOTICE
Rated motor current is in the range from 2.4 - 2.99 A and a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module with the 2.4 - 25 A measuring range is used In this case, the 0.3 - 4 A measuring range must be used for the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules. This requires a change of the parameterization to the smaller measuring range (0.3 - 4 A). Attention must be paid to this with regard to code conversion of the MLFB numbers. The installation width of the two measuring ranges is identical.

8.6 Decoupling module (DCM) for 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules (e.g. 3UF711.1AA000)

Function of the decoupling module

When measuring voltage and power with SIMOCODE pro in ungrounded networks, each current / voltage measuring module must have a decoupling module connected upstream in series at the system interface. Where voltage or power is measured with SIMOCODE pro in systems with additional insulation measurement or insulation monitoring, a decoupling module must be connected between the basic unit and each current / voltage measuring module. If using the 3UF710 current measuring module in these networks, it is imperative that an additional decoupling module is not used.

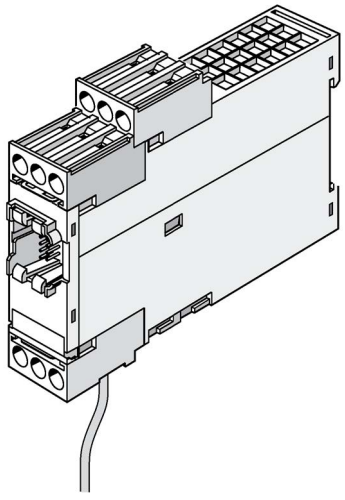


Figure 8-32 Decoupling module, SIMOCODE pro V device series

Note

Connectable expansion modules

When using a decoupling module, note that the type and number of expansion modules that can be connected to a basic unit are limited! See Chapter Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit (Page 136).

Note

Using the decoupling module

Do not use the decoupling module with the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules.

In the event that a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module is replaced by a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module, remove the decoupling module.

Using the decoupling module in different networks

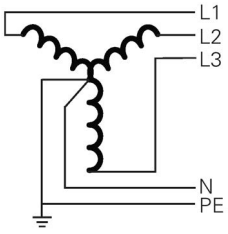
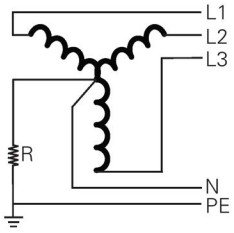
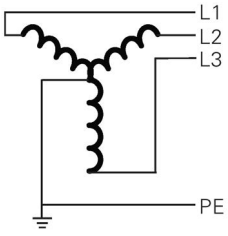
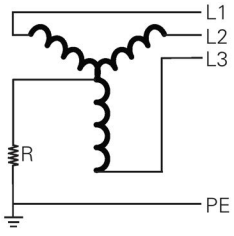
A decoupling module may be required when using a voltage measuring module, especially for the following networks:

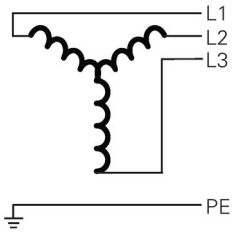
- Isolated systems
- High-impedance grounded systems
- Asymmetrically grounded systems
- Single-phase systems

The tables below show decoupling module requirements for different grounding systems and system configurations (star systems, delta systems, and single-phase systems):

Star networks:

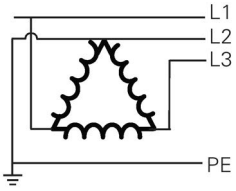
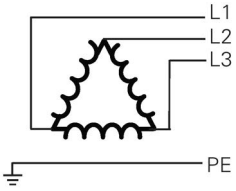
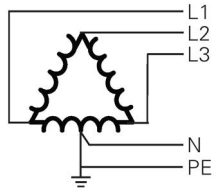
Table 8- 1 Decoupling module requirements for star networks

Star configuration	Network configuration	Decoupling module required?	Note
4-wire, star, grounded with low impedance		No	"TN-S system" according to IEC 60364
4-wire, star, grounded with high impedance		Yes	—
3-wire, star, grounded with low impedance		No	"TN-C system" according to IEC 60364
3-wire, star, grounded with high impedance		Yes	—

Star configuration	Network configuration	Decoupling module required?	Note
3-wire, star, with isolated neutral		Yes	"IT system" according to IEC 60364

Delta configurations

Table 8- 2 Decoupling module requirements for delta networks

Delta network[1)]	Network configuration	Decoupling module required?	Note
3-wire, delta, one phase grounded		Yes	Parameter "Voltage display → phase voltages" must be active.
3-wire, delta, with isolated ground		Yes	Parameter "Voltage display → phase voltages" must be active.
Center tap grounded		Yes	Parameter "Voltage display → phase voltages" must be active.
1) Mainly encountered in North America			

Single-phase systems

Table 8- 3 Decoupling module requirements for single-phase networks

Single-phase network	Network configuration	Decoupling module required?	Note
		Yes	Parameter "Voltage display → Phase voltages" must be active. The voltage applied is calculated from U_L1N + U_I2N

8.7 Spectrum of the expansion modules

Expansion modules are provided as optional additions for the SIMOCODE pro S and pro V device series. The following expansion modules are available:

- Digital modules (DM) (Page 129)
- Fail-safe digital module Local (DM-F Local) (Page 130)
- PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module (DM-F PROFIsafe) (Page 130)
- Analog module (AM) (Page 132)
- Ground-fault module (EM) (Page 133)
- Temperature module (TM) (Page 134)
- Multifunction module (Page 135) (for the SIMOCODE pro S device series)

All expansion modules have an enclosure width of 22.5 mm or 45 mm. They are equipped with 2 system interfaces (incoming/outgoing) and removable terminals on the front panel. The expansion module is connected, for example, to the system interface of the basic unit via the first system interface using a connecting cable. For example, further expansion modules can be connected via the second system interface or the operator panel.

All expansion modules are suitable for DIN rail mounting or can be fastened directly to a mounting plate using additional push-in lugs.

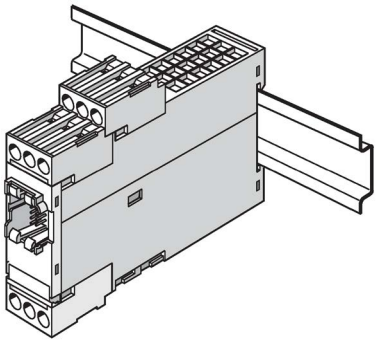


Figure 8-33 Expansion module

Note

When an operator panel with display and/or a decoupling module is used, more restrictions on the number of expansion modules connectable per basic unit must be observed.

See Chapters Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit (Page 136) and Configuration notes for use of a SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU and SIMOCODE pro V EIP basic unit (Page 139)

8.8 Digital module (DM)

Digital modules offer the option of further increasing the types and number of binary inputs and relay outputs available at the SIMOCODE pro basic unit.

The following digital modules are available for the SIMOCODE pro V basic unit:

Table 8- 4 Versions of digital modules

Inputs	Power supply	Outputs
4 inputs	External 24 V DC	2 monostable relay outputs
4 inputs	External 110 V to 240 V AC/DC	2 monostable relay outputs
4 inputs	External 24 V DC	2 bistable relay outputs
4 inputs	External 110 V to 240 V AC/DC	2 bistable relay outputs

Up to 2 digital modules can be connected to one SIMOCODE pro basic unit. 4 additional binary inputs and 2 additional binary outputs are thus provided by each module. All types can be combined with each other. SIMOCODE pro can therefore be expanded to provide a maximum of 12 binary inputs and 7 relay outputs.

With the monostable version, the relay outputs open after disconnection/failure/interruption of the supply voltage. With the bistable version, the switching state of the relay outputs is maintained even after disconnection/failure/interruption of the supply voltage.

You can set a debouncing time for the digital module inputs if required
(see Chapter "Digital module inputs" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958)).

Power supply to the inputs: See Chapter Wiring basic units, expansion modules and the decoupling module (Page 175).

Note

To implement some motor control functions, a further digital module is required in addition to the relay outputs on the basic unit.

Note

If 2 digital modules are being used, the digital module connected the closest to the basic unit via the system interface will be identified as digital module 1. The digital module connected next in line will be identified as digital module 2. If one digital module is connected to the front and another to the lower system interface of the basic unit, the digital module on the front system interface of the basic unit will always be identified as digital module 1.

8.9 Fail-safe digital module (DM-F)

Requirements and safety-related functions of the DM-F fail-safe digital modules

The fail-safe digital module DM-F extends the SIMOCODE pro motor management system with fail-safe functions for switching off motors:

- DM-F Local fail-safe digital module
- DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module

These modules conform to the general requirements for emergency stop devices or safety circuits described in EN 418 and EN 60204-1 (06.2006).

With appropriate external circuitry, the following performance levels / safety integrity levels can be achieved:

- PL e with Category 4 according to ISO 13849-1 or
- SIL 3 according to IEC 61508 / 62061.

Safety engineering and safety-related functions:

- These are exclusively restricted to the fail-safe digital modules.
- They therefore have no direct impact on existing SIMOCODE pro components and concepts.

LEDs for DM-F device diagnostics

See Chapter Technical data (Page 291) and / or Manual SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

"TEST/RESET" DM-F button

See Manual SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

Setting the DM-F DIP switches

See Manual SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

DM-F system interfaces

See Manual SIMOCODE pro Safety fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

Documentation for safety-related functions and fail-safe digital modules

Safety-related functions and additional information on fail-safe digital modules can be found in the following documentation:

- System Manual "SIMOCODE pro Safety Fail-Safe Digital Modules"
- Operating Instructions "Fail-safe Digital Module DM-F Local"
- Operating Instructions "Fail-safe Digital Module DM-F PROFIsafe"

You will find the System Manuals and Operating Instructions at Manuals/operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

The fail-safe **digital module DM-F Local** provides safety-related tripping of a motor feeder via a hardware signal that is detected and evaluated by the module.
From a non-safety-related perspective, the DMF comprises:

Table 8- 5 Inputs, outputs and voltage supply to the digital module Fail-safe Local (DM-F Local)

Inputs	Power supply	Outputs
4 non-safety-related digital inputs: • Input 1: Sensor circuit • Input 2: Start input • Input 3: Feedback circuit • Input 4: Cascading input	24 V DC	2 non-safety-related monostable relay outputs

The fail-safe **DM-F PROFIsafe digital module** provides safety-related tripping of a motor feeder by a fail-safe control (F-CPU) via PROFIBUS with the fail-safe PROFIsafe profile.

From a non-safety-related perspective, the DM-PROFIsafe module comprises:

Table 8- 6 Inputs, outputs and voltage supply to the digital module Fail-safe PROFIsafe (DM-F PROFIsafe)

Inputs	Power supply	Outputs
4 non-safety-related digital inputs	24 V DC	2 non-safety-related monostable relay outputs

WARNING

Hazardous voltage

For the 24 V DC power supply, always use an SELV or PELV power supply unit!

Surge suppressors are required for inductive loads!

8.10 Analog module (AM)

By means of the analog module, the SIMOCODE pro V basic units can be optionally expanded by analog inputs and outputs (0/4 mA to 20 mA). This makes it possible to detect and monitor any process variables that can be mapped onto a 0/4 to 20 mA signal.

Typical applications are, for example, fill-level monitoring for protecting pumps from dry operation, or the monitoring of pollution in a filter using a differential pressure transducer. The automation system has free access to the measured process variables. The analog output can, for example, be used for the visualization of any process variables on a pointer instrument. The automation system can also freely access the output via the communication bus.

- 1 analog module can be connected to the SIMOCODE pro V PB and pro V MB RTU basic units
- 2 analog modules can be connected to the SIMOCODE pro V PN and pro V EIP basic units
- For each analog module, 2 analog inputs (passive) for detecting 0/4 mA to 20 mA signals. Both inputs are set either to 0 mA to 20 mA or to 4 mA to 20 mA.
- For each analog module, 1 output for issuing a 0/4 mA to 20 mA signal.

Note

The inputs of the analog module are passive inputs that have to be supplied in each case by an external, isolated current source (e.g. isolating transformer). If the output of the analog module is not being utilized, it can be used as current source for an input.

Note

Requirements for using an analog module with SIMOCODE pro V PB

Use of an analog module requires a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit, at least version *E02* or later (from 04/2005).

8.11 Ground-fault module (EM)

The 3UF7 500-1AA00-0 and 3UF7 510-1AA00-0 ground-fault modules are suitable for use with the SIMOCODE pro V basic units. 1 ground-fault module can be connected to 1 basic unit.

NOTICE
Use of residual current transformers The 3UF7 500-1AA00-0 ground-fault module requires the 3UL22 residual current transformer. The 3UF7 510-1AA00-0 ground-fault module requires the 3UL23 residual current transformer.

Requirements for use of ground-fault modules in combination with SIMOCODE pro V basic unit:

Note

Requirements for use of a 3UF7 500-1AA00-0 ground-fault module with SIMOCODE pro V PB

Use of a ground-fault module requires a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit, at least version *E02* or later (from 04/2005).

Note

Requirements for use of a 3UF7 510-1AA00-0 ground-fault module with SIMOCODE pro V PB

Use of this ground-fault module requires a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit, with at least product version *E10* (from 09/2013).

Detailed information on ground-fault monitoring: See Chapter "Monitoring functions" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

8.12 Temperature module (TM)

The temperature module offers the option of expanding the SIMOCODE pro V device series by an analog temperature monitoring system. In addition to the thermistor monitoring system for the basic units, up to 3 analog sensor measuring circuits (in two or three-wire systems) can be connected, the temperatures in the 3 sensor measuring circuits can be measured, and the highest temperature in all sensor measuring circuits can be determined. The temperatures recorded can be fully integrated and monitored in the process and can also be transferred to a higher-level automation system via the communication bus.

You can, for example, implement analog temperature monitoring of the motor windings, bearings, coolant or gearbox oil.

Various sensor types (NTC, KTY83/84, PT100/PT1000) for use with solid, liquid, or gaseous media are supported.

Note

The same sensor type must be used in all sensor measuring circuits.

- 1 temperature module can be connected to the SIMOCODE pro V PB and pro V MB RTU basic units
- 2 temperature modules can be connected to the SIMOCODE pro V PN and pro V EIP basic units
- 3 sensor measuring circuits in 2 or 3-wire systems.

Note

Requirements for using a temperature module with SIMOCODE pro V PB

Use of a temperature module requires a SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit, at least version *E02* or later (from 04/2005).

8.13 Multifunction module

The multifunction module is the expansion module of the SIMOCODE pro S device series with the following functions:

- Digital module function with four digital inputs and two monostable relay outputs
- Ground-fault module function with one input for connecting a 3UL23 residual current transformer
- Temperature module function with an input for connecting a PT100, PT1000, KTY83, KTY84, or NTC analog temperature sensor

No more than one multifunction module can be connected to one SIMOCODE pro S basic unit.

Note

Use of expansion modules of SIMOCODE pro V with the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

One of the following expansion modules of SIMOCODE pro V can be used with the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit (3UF7020-1AB01-0 or 3UF7020-1AU01-0) instead of the 3UF76* multifunction module:

- 24 V DC digital module with monostable relay outputs (3UF7300-1AB00-0) or 110 ... 240 V AC/DC digital module (3UF7300-1AU00-0)
- Ground-fault module (3UF7510-1AA0-0)
- Temperature module (3UF7700-1AA00-0), limited to use of one sensor input only

8.14 Configuration information for SIMOCODE pro V when using an older basic unit

Note

Restrictions for the SIMOCODE pro V device series

The restrictions mentioned apply to the SIMOCODE pro V device series with the following product versions:

- SIMOCODE pro V PB: Before E15
- SIMOCODE pro V PN: Before E10
- SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU: Before E03

Devices with the stated product versions or later can be used without restriction with an operator panel with display and 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules.

Use of a decoupling module and/or an operator panel with display

If you want to use an operator panel with display and/or a decoupling module in the SIMOCODE pro V system, then the following configuration instructions concerning the type and number of connectable expansion modules must be observed.

The following table shows the maximum possible configuration with expansion modules for the various combinations (✓ = possible, - = not possible):

Maximum configuration with expansion modules

Table 8- 7 Maximum configuration with expansion modules when using an operator panel / operator panel with display, a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module and a decoupling module for SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units (3UF7010-1Ax00-0) with a 24 V DC or 110 V - 240 V AC/DC supply

			SIMOCODE pro basic unit U_s = 24 V DC					**SIMOCODE pro basic unit U_s = 110-240 V AC/DC**				
OP	Measurement	Decoupling module	DM-F/ DM	DM	AM	TM	EM	DM-F/ DM	DM	AM	TM	EM
None/ OP	I	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	U/I	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	U/I [4]	✓	✓ [1]	✓ [1]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
								✓ [1]	✓ [1]	✓	✓	-
								✓	-	✓	✓	-
								✓	-	✓	-	✓
OPD	I	-	Max. 4 modules					Max. 4 modules				
	U/I	-	Max. 4 modules					Max. 3 modules [5]				
								-	-	✓	✓	-
	U/I [4]	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓ [2]	-	✓	✓	✓
			✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
								✓ [1]	✓ [1]	✓ [3]	-	-
								✓	-	-	✓	✓

1) No bistable relay outputs and no more than 5 of 7 relay outputs active simultaneously (> 3 s)

2) No bistable relay outputs and no more than 3 of 5 relay outputs active simultaneously (> 3 s)

3) Analog module output is not used.

4) 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules; MLFB ending in 000 (e.g. 3UF7110-1AA00-0)

5) AM and TM cannot be used at the same time

Table 8- 8 Maximum configuration with expansion modules when using an operator panel / operator panel with display, a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module and a SIMOCODE pro V-PB basic unit with a product version earlier than E15 / SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit with product version E01

		SIMOCODE pro basic unit U_s = 24 V DC					SIMOCODE pro basic unit U_s = 110-240 V AC/DC				
OP	Measurement	DM-F/DM	DM	AM	TM	EM	DM-F/DM	DM	AM	TM	EM
None/UI		Max. 4 modules									
OP	U/I	Max. 4 modules [1]									
		-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	✓	✓	✓
OPD	U/I	Max. 3 modules [1]					Max. 2 modules [1]				
		-	-	✓	✓	-					
		-	-	✓	-	✓					
		-	-	-	✓	✓					

1) Max. 1 AM, TM, EM module

Note

Decoupling module

A decoupling module is **not** necessary for 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules.

Configuration instructions for the use of fail-safe expansion modules

In conjunction with DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital modules, the expansion modules can be used as follows:

Fail-safe digital module	Number of expansion modules	Digital module 2	Analog module	Temperature module	Ground-fault module
DM-F Local	max. 4	✓	✓	✓	✓
DM-F PROFIsafe	max. 3	✓	✓	✓	—

8.15 Configuration notes for use of a SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU and SIMOCODE pro V EIP basic unit

The following expansion modules are not supported:

- DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module (3UF7330-..)
- Ground-fault module (3UF7500-..).

Compartment identification

9

9.1 Applications and advantages of compartment identification

The compartment identification described in this chapter is mainly used in application in which SIMOCODE pro is used in a withdrawable motor control center (MCC).

In withdrawable motor control centers, all components belonging to the motor feeder are grouped together as one unit in a switchboard-specific enclosure. In this way, a complete withdrawable module can be replaced very quickly and without isolating the MCC if a component is defective.

This principle is very often used in the various branches of the process industry. That is why a SIMOCODE pro with such a design is used in very many of its applications.

With the compartment identification mechanism, programming a SIMOCODE pro S/pro V device when a withdrawable module is replaced is completely automated.

The initialization module (3UF7 902-0AA00-0) permanently installed in the switchboard contains a copy of the SIMOCODE device parameters and the device addressing, which are taken over completely automatically by the new SIMOCODE pro device after replacement of the withdrawable module.

No special knowledge of SIMOCODE is necessary any longer to replace withdrawable modules and at the same time the risk of incorrect parameterization in the SIMOCODE device is reduced.

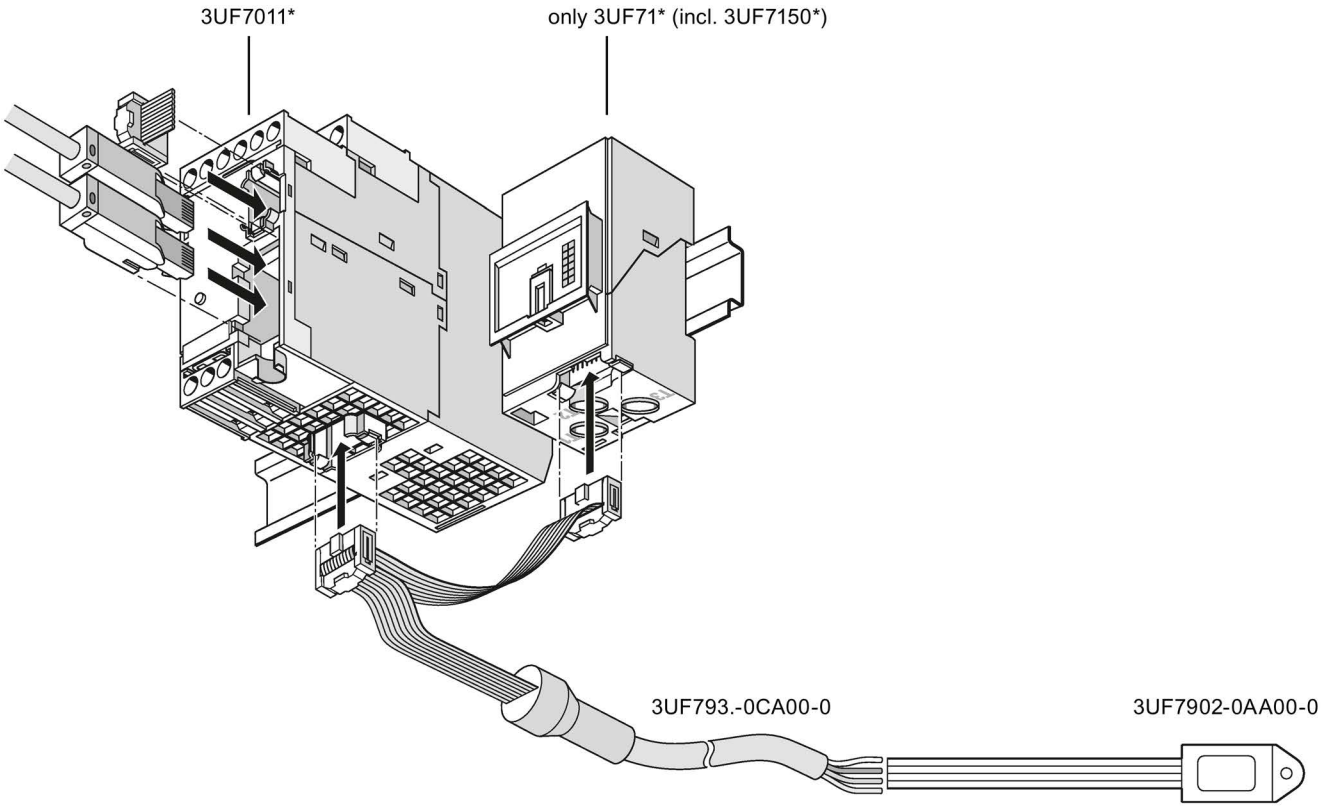


Figure 9-1 Compartment identification

CAUTION

Basic units SIMOCODE pro C (3UF7000*) and basic units SIMOCODE pro V (3UF7010*) to E08, V3.0

These basic units do not support the initialization module and start with the internal parameters.

A configuration such as the one shown above ensures

- that the parameters, device addressing, and I&M data of the initialization module are downloaded to the SIMOCODE basic unit during device start-up of SIMOCODE pro
- the parameters, device addressing, and I&M data are additionally written to the initialization module when parameterizing SIMOCODE pro

This makes it simple for a user to change a withdrawable module without having to deal with further details of parameterization or address assignment.

The advantages of operation with a permanently installed initialization module in the switchboard:

- Device parameters and device addressing are automatically stored in the initialization module in the motor control center and loaded form this initialization module (initialized).
- It is possible to replace an MCC motor feeder without special knowledge of SIMOCODE pro.
- Manual addressing and parameterization are no longer necessary. The simplifies operation of the switchboard.

9.2 Hardware and software requirements for compartment identification

Basic unit versions

The compartment identification function is supported by the following basic units:

- SIMOCODE pro S basic units
- SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units as from product version E09, firmware version V3.1
- SIMOCODE pro V MB RTU basic units
- SIMOCODE pro V PN basic units
- SIMOCODE pro V EIP basic units.

NOTICE
Basic units SIMOCODE pro C (3UF7000*) and basic units SIMOCODE pro V (3UF7010*) to E08, V3.0 These basic units do not support the initialization module and start with the internal parameters.

NOTICE
Current measuring module required To operate SIMOCODE pro with an initialization module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module must be connected to the basic unit.

Version of the operator panel with display

The compartment identification function is supported by operator panels with display as from product version *E07*.

9.3 Operating compartment identification

Safety guidelines

Note

Startup with an initialization module

During device startup with an initialization module, there must be no memory module in the system interface of the SIMOCODE basic unit.

If there is a memory module in the system interface of the SIMOCODE pro basic unit,

- the "Fault - parameterization" fault message will be output
- the "Gen.Fault" LED will flash red.

Note

Contacting of the initialization module

The initialization module must be contacted before or together with the voltage supply of the basic unit.

Loading parameters from the initialization module

As soon as contact has been established with the initialization module and the voltage has been switched on, the parameters of the initialization module are loaded into the basic unit. The previous parameterization is overwritten and the compartment identification is activated (see the following topic "Autoactivation of compartment identification").

You can also track successful read-in of the parameters from the initialization module with the "initialization module read in" event in the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) online functions.

Note

Loading parameters from the initialization module into the SIMOCODE pro V basic units with an earlier product version

Basic units SIMOCODE pro C (3UF7000*) and SIMOCODE pro V (3UF7010*) to E08, V3.0 do not detect the initialization module and ignore its parameters!

Note

Connecting a SIMOCODE pro S basic unit or a SIMOCODE pro V basic unit

Because a basic unit in these device series does not find any valid parameters on start-up with an empty initialization module, "Trip - Parameterization" is signaled. The "general fault" LED of the basic unit flashes red.

Reparameterization of the device, e.g. with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal), writes valid parameters to the basic unit and the initialization module again.

You can then acknowledge the fault message.

Saving parameters onto the initialization module

If an initialization module is connected to a SIMOCODE pro basic unit, all parameters that are saved to the SIMOCODE basic unit, e.g. SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal), are automatically copied into the initialization module.

You can also track successful writing of the parameters into the initialization module with the "initialization module programmed" event in the SIMOCODE ES online functions.

Parameter settings in the "SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)" software

From a technical point of view, the initialization module is treated like an expansion module of SIMOCODE pro.

To use the mechanism of compartment identification, choose the "initialization module" option in the "Parameter → Device configuration" dialog box in the "SIMOCODE ES" software.

Autoactivation of compartment identification

If a SIMOCODE pro S or SIMOCODE pro V basic unit detects a connected initialization module during device startup, it will automatically load the parameters stored in it and will start with these parameters.

At the same time, the "Initialization module" parameter of the device configuration in the SIMOCODE pro basic unit is activated so that, on each new device startup, an initialization module is expected.

Note

Device startup when the "initialization module" parameter is activated

If no initialization module is detected during device start-up, SIMOCODE pro will signal "Trip - Configuration fault." The "General Fault" LED of the basic unit flashes.

The basic unit can only be reset when the configuration error has been remedied by connecting an initialization module or when a configuration has been loaded into the device without the "initialization module" option.

Deactivation of the compartment identification

To prevent SIMOCODE pro V from expecting an initialization module during device startup, you clear the "Initialization module" check mark in the "Parameter → Device configuration" dialog box. In this case, no initialization module must be connected to the SIMOCODE basic unit while this configuration is being downloaded.

A further way of deactivating the compartment identification is to reset the SIMOCODE pro basic unit to the factory settings. Resetting is performed in the "Commands" dialog box. In this case, too, no initialization module must be connected to the SIMOCODE pro basic unit. The parameter settings can then also be reloaded into the SIMOCODE pro basic unit.

Commands

"Initialization module write protection on" command

All contents of the initialization module are write-protected. This prevents any inadvertent changes to the contents of the initialization module and any parameter changes to the connected SIMOCODE pro basic unit. An inadvertent change of parameters for a motor feeder is prevented. SIMOCODE pro signals successful execution of the command with the "initialization module write-protected" event.

"Initialization module write protection off" command

With this command, you can remove the write protection of the initialization module.

"Initialization module write protection identification data on" command

The device addressing stored in the initialization module and the I&M data (identification & maintenance) are write-protected. With this command, you can

- prevent inadvertent changes to the addressing and I&M data for the motor feeder.
- continue to make parameter changes in the initialization module as well as in the SIMOCODE pro basic unit if the address data and I&M data are identical to the data already contained in the device when parameters are downloaded.

SIMOCODE pro signals the successful execution of the command with the "initialization module identification data write-protected" event.

"Initialization module write protection identification data off" command

With this command, you can remove the write protection of the identification data of the initialization module.

"Clear initialization module data" command:

With this command

- all contents of the initialization module are erased
- The initialization module is reset to the as-delivered state.

SIMOCODE pro signals the successful deletion with the "Initialization module cleared" event.

On startup with an empty initialization module, the basic unit signals "Fault - parameterization." The "general fault" LED of the basic unit flashes red.

Reparameterization of the device, e.g. with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal), writes valid parameters to the basic unit and the initialization module again. You can then acknowledge the fault message

Messages

You can check the states of the initialization module by the following events (in the ""Commissioning → Faults, warnings, event" dialog box of the "SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)" software:

- Initialization module write-protected
- Initialization module write-protected, parameter changes not allowed
- Initialization module identification data write-protected
- Initialization module read in
- Initialization module programmed
- Initialization module cleared.

See Alarm, fault, and system events for compartment identification (Page 152).

9.4 Mounting, wiring, interfaces, compartment identification

Mounting the initialization module in the switchboard

Mounting the initialization module with the mounting lugs in the switchboard

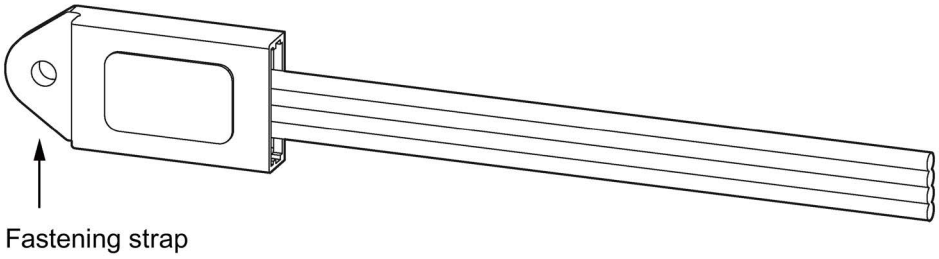


Figure 9-2 Mounting the initialization module

Wiring the initialization module

Unlike the other expansion components of the system, the initialization module does not have a connector. It is intended for installation in the fixed part of the switchboard. Connect the initialization module to a motor control center's control connector toward the switchboard using the four connecting wires.

On the mating side, there is a withdrawable module to whose control connectors the corresponding four connecting wires of the Y connecting cable are connected (see figure).

Connect each of the wires that are of the same color on the initialization module and the Y connecting cable.

NOTICE
Note the correct colors! Incorrect wiring can destroy the initialization module.

Note

Cable routing

When wiring the initialization module make sure the individual conductors are routed as close together as possible (ribbon cable).

NOTICE
Maximum length of the connecting cable The total length of all cables must not exceed 3 m on either of the system interfaces of the basic unit!

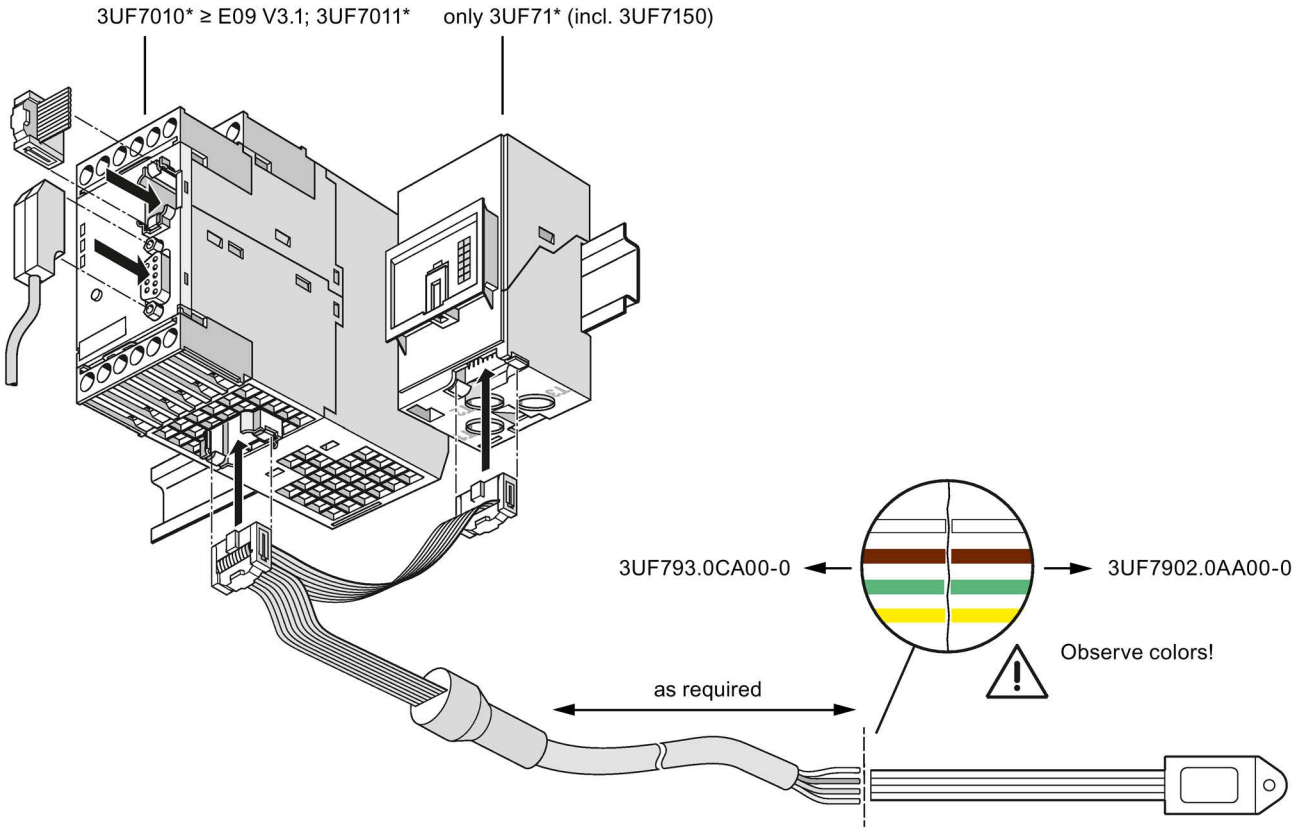


Figure 9-3 Wiring the initialization module

CAUTION

SIMOCODE pro basic units with an earlier product version

SIMOCODE pro C basic units (3UF7000*) and SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units (3UF7010*) up to E08, V3.0 do not support the initialization module and start with the internal parameters.

Connecting the Y connecting cable to the basic unit and to the current measuring module or to the current / voltage measuring module

- Connect the connector in the middle of the Y connecting cable (1) on the basic unit
- Connect the connector at the end of the Y connecting cable (2) to a current measuring module or current / voltage measuring module
- If you are using a decoupling module:
  - Connect the connector at the end of the initialization cable (2) on the decoupling module.
  - Connect the decoupling module with a system interface connecting cable to the current / voltage measuring module.

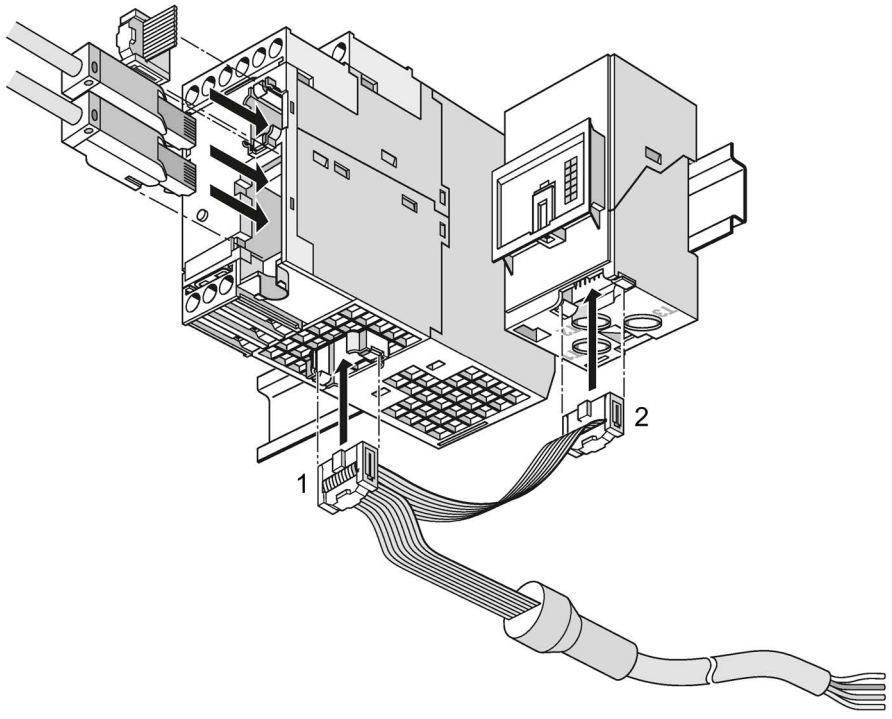


Figure 9-4 Connecting the Y connecting cable to the basic unit and to the current measuring module or to the current / voltage measuring module

9.5 Commissioning and service compartment identification

General safety information

Note

Operating Instructions

During commissioning and service work, also heed the relevant "Initialization Module" Operating Instructions!

You will find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro at Manuals/operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

Commissioning the initialization module

Sequence for initial startup of a new SIMOCODE pro basic unit and a new initialization module

Step	Description
1	Connect the SIMOCODE pro basic unit to the planned expansion modules and to the initialization module.
2	Switch on the power supply. The following LED states result: • The "DEVICE" LED lights up green • The "BUS" LED lights up or flashes green when the bus is connected • The "GEN.FAULT" LED flashes red At the same time, the "Fault - parameterization" fault message is output.
3	Parameterize SIMOCODE pro with a PC with the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software installed. For this, connect the PC/PG to the system interface with the PC cable (see the figure below) or to the basic unit via the communication bus.
4	Acknowledge the pending fault either locally on the device or via the SIMOCODE ES software by means of the "TEST/RESET button".

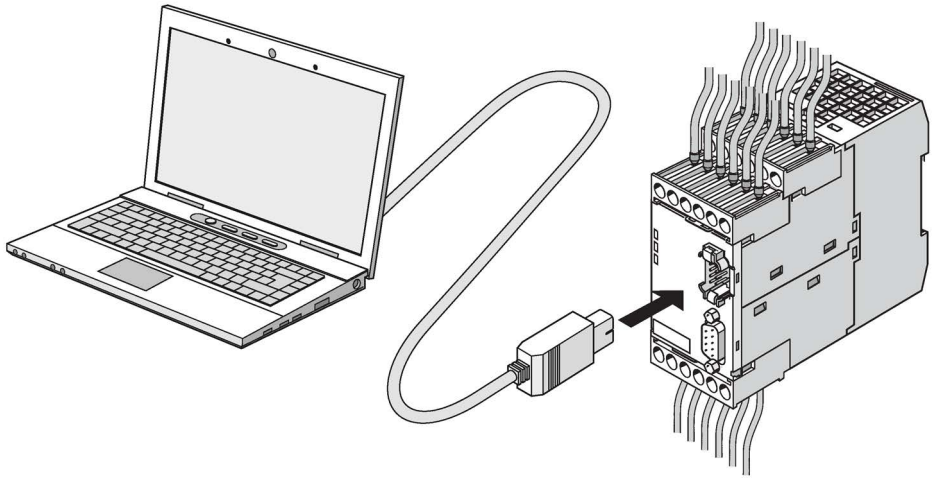


Figure 9-5 Connecting a PC to a SIMOCODE pro basic unit

9.6 Alarm, fault, and system events for compartment identification

Messages

Table 9- 1 Alarm, fault, and system events

Message	Description	Troubleshooting
Initialization module write-protected	The initialization module is completely write-protected.	Deactivate write protection of the initialization module.
Initialization module write-protected, parameter changes not allowed	The initialization module is completely or partially write-protected. Reparameterization of SIMOCODE pro is denied because the initialization module is write-protected.	Deactivate write protection of the initialization module.
Initialization module identification data write-protected	The device addressing and the I&M data in the initialization module are write-protected. Parameterization will only be accepted by SIMOCODE if the new parameter set is identical to the data stored in the initialization module at that time.	• Select a parameterization with identical addressing and I&M data • Deactivate the partial write protection of the initialization module.
Initialization module read in	The parameters of the initialization module were read into SIMOCODE.	-
Initialization module programmed	The reparameterization was accepted in the initialization module.	-
Initialization module cleared	The initialization module has been cleared and is now back in the as-delivered condition.	-

9.7 Compartment identification dimension drawings

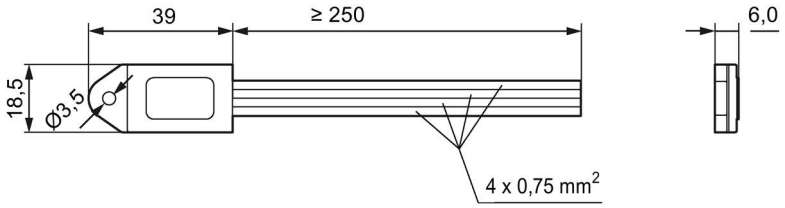


Figure 9-6 Dimension drawing initialization module

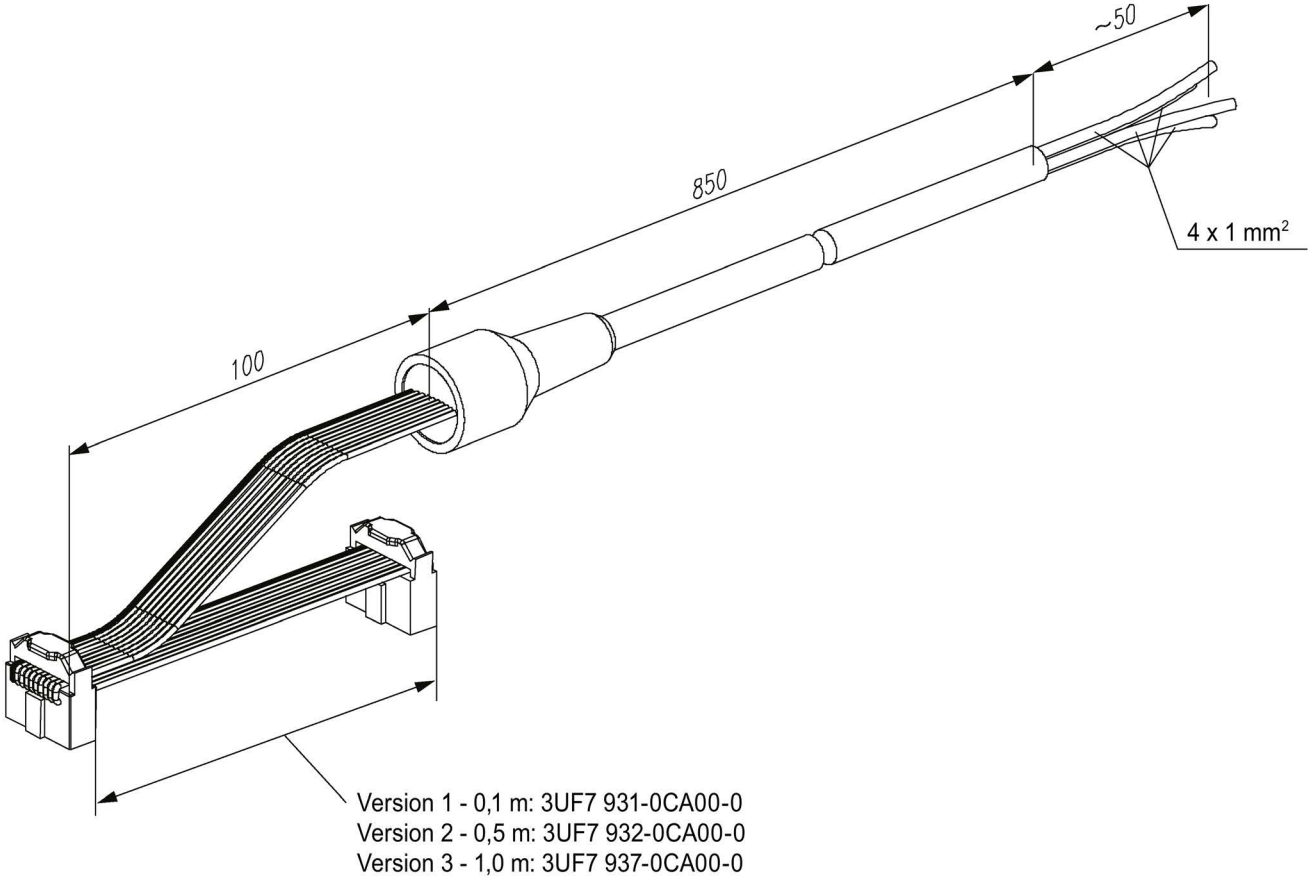


Figure 9-7 Dimension drawing Y connecting cable

9.8 Technical data compartment identification

Technical data initialization module

- Order number (MLFB): 3UF7 902-0AA00-0
- Ambient temperature: -25 ... +80 °C
- Rated insulation voltage: 300 V
- Rated operating voltage: 24 V.

Technical data Y connecting cable

- Order numbers (MLFB):
  - Version 1 - 0.1 m: 3UF7 931-0CA00-0
  - Version 2 - 0.5 m: 3UF7 932-0CA00-0
  - Version 3 - 1.0 m: 3UF7 937-0CA00-0.
- Ambient temperature: -25 ... +60 °C
- Rated insulation voltage: 300 V
- Rated operating voltage: 24 V.

Accessories

10

Accessories overview

The following figure shows selected accessories:

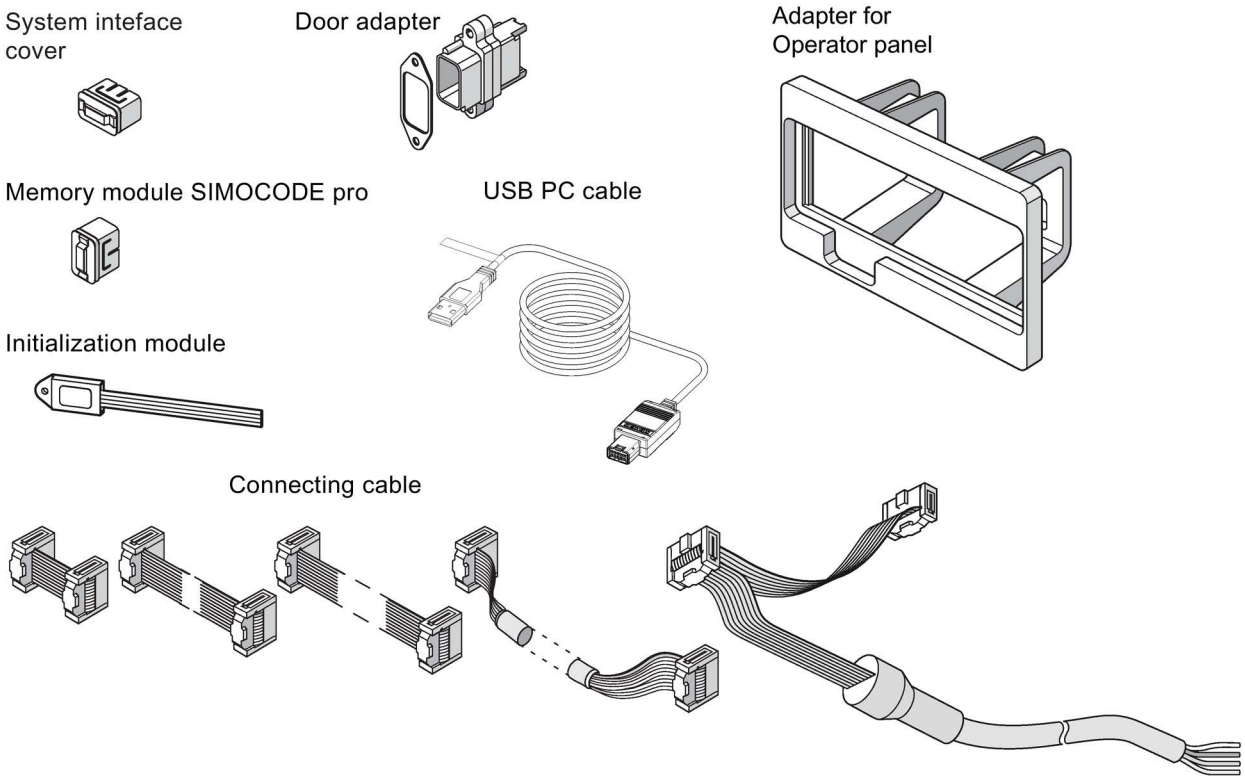


Figure 10-1 Accessories

USB PC cable

For device parameterization, for connecting a PC via its USB interface or serial interface to the system interface of a basic unit.

Note

PC cable variant

For SIMOCODE pro V PN, a serial PC cable 3UF7940-0AA00-0 as from product version *E02* or a USB PC cable USB 3UF7941-0AA00-0 can be used.

USB-to-serial adapter

For connecting an RS -232 PC cable to the USB interface of a PC.

Memory module

Enable all system parameter settings to be backed up and transferred to a new system without the need for additional resources or specialist expertise, for example, if the device is replaced (see also Chapter Replacing SIMOCODE pro components (Page 257)).

Note

Memory module type

- The SIMOCODE pro C and SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units up to product version *E08* only support the 3UF7900-0AA00-0 memory module.
- The SIMOCODE pro S, SIMOCODE pro V MBR and SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units support all memory modules as from product version *E09*.
- A 3UF7901* memory module is required for the SIMOCODE pro V PN and SIMOCODE pro V EIP basic units. The 3UF7900-0AA00-0 memory module is not supported.

Initialization module

The initialization module enables all system parameter settings to be backed up and transferred to a new system without the need for additional resources or specialist expertise, for example, if the device is replaced. It can be installed permanently in the switchboard.

Note

Basic unit support

The SIMOCODE pro S and SIMOCODE pro V PB basic units (as from product version *E09*) support the initialization module.

Further information: See Chapter Compartment identification (Page 141).

Addressing plug

For "hardware" assignment of the PROFIBUS DP address without PC/PG on SIMOCODE pro via the system interface. Setting the PROFIBUS DP address with the addressing plug: See Chapter Setting the PROFIBUS DP address (Page 236).

Connecting cable

Different types and lengths of connecting cable are available. It is required to connect the basic unit to its current measuring module and, if applicable, to its expansion modules or the operator panel.

Note

The total length of all cables must not exceed 3 m on either of the system interfaces of the basic unit!

Door adapter

The door adapter is used to facilitate access to the SIMOCODE pro system interface, for example via the front panel, to ensure fast parameterization.

System interface cover

The system interface cover helps to protect and/or seal the system interfaces against the ingress of dirt. In normal operation, unused system interfaces must be closed.

Operator panel adapter

The operator panel adapter enables use of the 3UF720 operator panel of SIMOCODE pro in a front panel cutout, in which a 3UF52 operator panel of SIMOCODE DP (IP54 degree of protection) has previously been used, e.g. after system replacement.

3UF50 compatibility mode

11

11.1 Application, Win-SIMOCODE-DP converter

Application of 3UF50 compatibility mode

3UF50 compatibility mode is used whenever a SIMOCODE-DP device is to be replaced with a SIMOCODE pro V PB device without modification of the configuration.

In 3UF50 compatibility mode, you can operate a SIMOCODE pro V basic unit with a 3UF50 configuration. In this case, from the point of view of the PLC (master class 1) communication with SIMOCODE pro is the same as communication with SIMOCODE DP.

SIMOCODE-DP supports cyclic communication (basic types 1-3), diagnosis, as well as DPV1 data sets (DS 130, DS 131, DS 133).

Win SIMOCODE DP converter

In order for the technical functions (parameterization) of SIMOCODE-DP to be integrated into the technical functions of SIMOCODE pro V PB, the device parameters must be adjusted accordingly. The "Win SIMOCODE DP Converter" software supports you in this process. This software enables you to convert the parameter files (smc files) created with Win SIMOCODE DP into SIMOCODE ES parameter files (sdp files).

Safety guidelines

Note

Communication with a DP master (class 2 master), e.g. with the Win-SIMOCODE-DP Professional software via PROFIBUS DP, is not covered by the 3UF50 compatibility mode.

Note

In the 3UF50 compatibility mode, the startup parameter block is always set, i.e. the transmission of the device parameters created using the SIMOCODE DP GSD or the SIMOCODE DP Object Manager cannot be integrated into SIMOCODE pro V PB.

Note

The 3UF50 compatibility mode supports SIMOCODE DP projects in which SIMOCODE DP is integrated via GSD SIEM8031.gs?, SIEM8069.gs? or via the SIMOCODE DP Object Manager (OM).

11.2 Diagram of send and receive data

The following table shows the send and receive data in compatibility mode:

Table 11- 1 "Receive" configuration

Receive								
	Basic type 1, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 1, SIMOCODE pro V		Basic type 2, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 2, SIMOCODE pro V		Basic type 3, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 3, SIMOCODE pro V
0	Receive data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7	0	Receive data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7	0	Receive data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7
1			1			1		
2		Not supported	2		Not supported	2		Not supported
3			3			3		

Table 11- 2 "Send" configuration

Send								
	Basic type 1, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 1, SIMOCODE pro V		Basic type 2, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 2, SIMOCODE pro V		Basic type 3, SIMOCODE DP	Basic type 3, SIMOCODE pro V
0	Send data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7	0	Send data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7	0	Send data	Cyclic receive bit 0 to 1.7
1			1			1		
2	Motor current	Specified: max. current I_{max}	2	Motor current	Specified: max. current I_{max}	2		Acycl. Send Bit 0 to 1.7
3			3			3		
4	Number of starts	Specified: Number of starts (Byte 0)						
5								
6								
7	Counter 1 value	Specified: Counter 1 - Actual value						
8								
9	Counter 2 value	Specified: Counter 2 - Actual value						
10								
11	Sensor value	Specified: TM - Max. temperature						

Note

The send data bytes 2 - 11 are always permanently assigned in compatibility mode (see Table "'Send' configuration").

11.3 Diagram of diagnostics data

The following table shows the diagnostics data in the 3UF50 compatibility mode:

Table 11- 3 Diagram of the diagnostics data in the 3UF50 compatibility mode

Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DP standard SIMOCODE DP	Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DPV1 SIMOCODE DP	Equivalent in SIMOCODE pro V
		6	0x0B	Same as 3UF-50 diagnostics
		7	0x81	
		8	0x04	
6	0x0E	9	0x00	
7.0	Free	10.0	Free	
7.1	Event: DP block	10.1	Event: DP block	Event - Startup parameter block active
7.2	Event: Emergency start	10.2	Event: Emergency start	Status - Emergency start executed
7.3	Event: HW test OK	10.3	Event: HW test OK	• No fault - HW fault basic unit • No fault - Module fault • No fault - temporary components
7.4	Free	10.4	Free	—
7.5	Event: Ext. event 1	10.5	Event: Ext. event 1	Event - Ext. fault 5
7.6	Event: Ext. event 2	10.6	Event: Ext. event 2	Event - Ext. fault 6
7.7	Event: Ext. event 3	10.7	Event: Ext. event 3	—
8.0	Warning: Ext. warning	11.0	Warning: Ext. warning	Warning: Ext. fault 3
8.1	Warning: Unbalance > 40 %	11.1	Warning: Unbalance > 40 %	Warning - Unbalance
8.2	Event: Failure PLC-CPU	11.2	Event: Failure PLC-CPU	Status - PLC / PCS (intervened)
8.3	Warning: Sensor short circuit	11.3	Warning: Sensor short circuit	Warning - Thermistor short circuit
8.4	Event: Cooling down period active	11.4	Event: Cooling down period active	Status - Cooling down period active
8.5	Status: TPF	11.5	Status: TPF	Status - Test position (TPF)
8.6	Free	11.6	Free	—
8.7	Free	11.7	Free	—
9.0	Warning: Ground fault	12.0	Warning: Ground fault	• Warning internal ground fault or • Warning external ground fault
9.1	Warning: Overload	12.1	Warning: Overload	Warning - Overload
9.2	Warning: Overload + unbalance	12.2	Warning: Overload + unbalance	Warning - Overload + unbalance

Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DP standard SIMOCODE DP	Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DPV1 SIMOCODE DP	Equivalent in SIMOCODE pro V
9.3	Warning: I1 response level overshot	12.3	Warning: I1 response level overshot	Warning - Warning level I >
9.4	Warning: I1 response level undershot	12.4	Warning: I1 response level undershot	Warning - Warning level I <
9.5	Warning: I2 response level overshot	12.5	Warning: I2 response level overshot	—
9.6	Warning: I2 response level undershot	12.6	Warning: I2 response level undershot	—
9.7	Warning: Thermistor	12.7	Warning: Thermistor	• Warning - Thermistor overload • Warning - Thermistor open circuit • Warning - TM warning T > • Warning - TM sensor fault • Warning - TM out of range
10.0	Trip: Ground fault	13.0	Trip: Ground fault	• Fault - internal ground fault or • Fault - ext. ground fault
10.1	Trip: Overload	13.1	Trip: Overload	Fault - overload
10.2	Trip: Overload + unbalance	13.2	Trip: Overload + unbalance	Fault - overload + phase failure
10.3	Trip: I1 response level overshot	13.3	Trip: I1 response level overshot	Fault - trip level I >
10.4	Trip: I1 response level undershot	13.4	Trip: I1 response level undershot	Fault - trip level I <
10.5	Trip: I2 response level overshot	13.5	Trip: I2 response level overshot	—
10.6	Trip: I2 response level undershot	13.6	Trip: I2 response level undershot	—
10.7	Trip: Thermistor	13.7	Trip: Thermistor	• Fault - thermistor overload • Fault - thermistor short circuit • Fault - thermistor open circuit • Fault - TM trip T > • Fault - TM sensor fault • Fault - TM out of range
11.0	Trip: FB ON	14.0	Trip: FB ON	Fault - feedback (FB) ON

Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DP standard SIMOCODE DP	Byte.Bit	Setup 3UF50 - Device-specific diagnostics according to DPV1 SIMOCODE DP	Equivalent in SIMOCODE pro V
11.1	Trip: FB OFF	14.1	Trip: FB OFF	Fault - feedback (FB) OFF
11.2	Trip: Stalled rotor	14.2	Trip: Stalled rotor	Fault - stalled rotor
11.3	Trip: Stalled positioner	14.3	Trip: Stalled positioner	Fault - stalled positioner
11.4	Trip: Double 0	14.4	Trip: Double 0	Fault - double 0
11.5	Trip: Double 1	14.5	Trip: Double 1	Fault - double 1
11.6	Trip: End position	14.6	Trip: End position	Fault - end position
11.7	Trip: Antivalence	14.7	Trip: Antivalence	Fault - antivalence
12.0	Trip: ESB	15.0	Trip: ESB	Fault - ext. fault 4
12.1	Trip: OPO	15.1	Trip: OPO	Fault - Operational Protection Off (OPO)
12.2	Trip: UVO	15.2	Trip: UVO	Fault - power failure (UVO)
12.3	Trip: Ext. fault 1	15.3	Trip: Ext. fault 1	Fault - ext. fault 1
12.4	Trip: Ext. fault 2	15.4	Trip: Ext. fault 2	Fault - ext. fault 2
12.5	Trip: TPF fault	15.5	Trip: TPF fault	Fault - Test Position Feedback (TPF)
12.6	Trip: Runtime ON	15.6	Trip: Runtime ON	Fault - execution ON command
12.7	Trip: Runtime OFF	15.7	Trip: Runtime OFF	Fault - execution STOP command
13.0	Trip: Parameter fault 0	16.0	Trip: Parameter fault 0	Fault - parameterization
13.1	Trip: Parameter fault 1	16.1	Trip: Parameter fault 1	—
13.2	Trip: Parameter fault 2	16.2	Trip: Parameter fault 2	—
13.3	Trip: Parameter fault 3	16.3	Trip: Parameter fault 3	—
13.4	Trip: Parameter fault 4	16.4	Trip: Parameter fault 4	Fault - configuration error
13.5	Trip: Parameter fault 5	16.5	Trip: Parameter fault 5	
13.6	Trip: Parameter fault 6	16.6	Trip: Parameter fault 6	
13.7	Trip: Parameter fault 7	16.7	Trip: Parameter fault 7	Fault - hardware fault basic unit
14 - 15	Number of overload trips			Number of overload trips
16 - 17	I of the overload trip [% / IE)]			Last trip current
18 - 19	Operating hours [10 h]			Motor operating hours

Mounting, wiring, connecting, system interfaces, configuration guidelines

12

12.1 Mounting

12.1.1 Mounting basic units, expansion modules, and the decoupling module

You can attach these system components as follows:

- Snap-on mounting onto a 35 mm standard mounting rail, without tools
- Snap-on mounting of basic units (no tools required) onto current measuring modules of 45 mm and 55 mm in width (up to 100 A or 115 A (UM+))) with integrated standard mounting rail
- Screw fixing with fixing lugs (article number: 3RP1903 or 3ZY1311-0AA00 for SIMOCODE pro S) and screws on a flat surface. These fixing lugs are only suitable for basic units, expansion modules and the decoupling module!

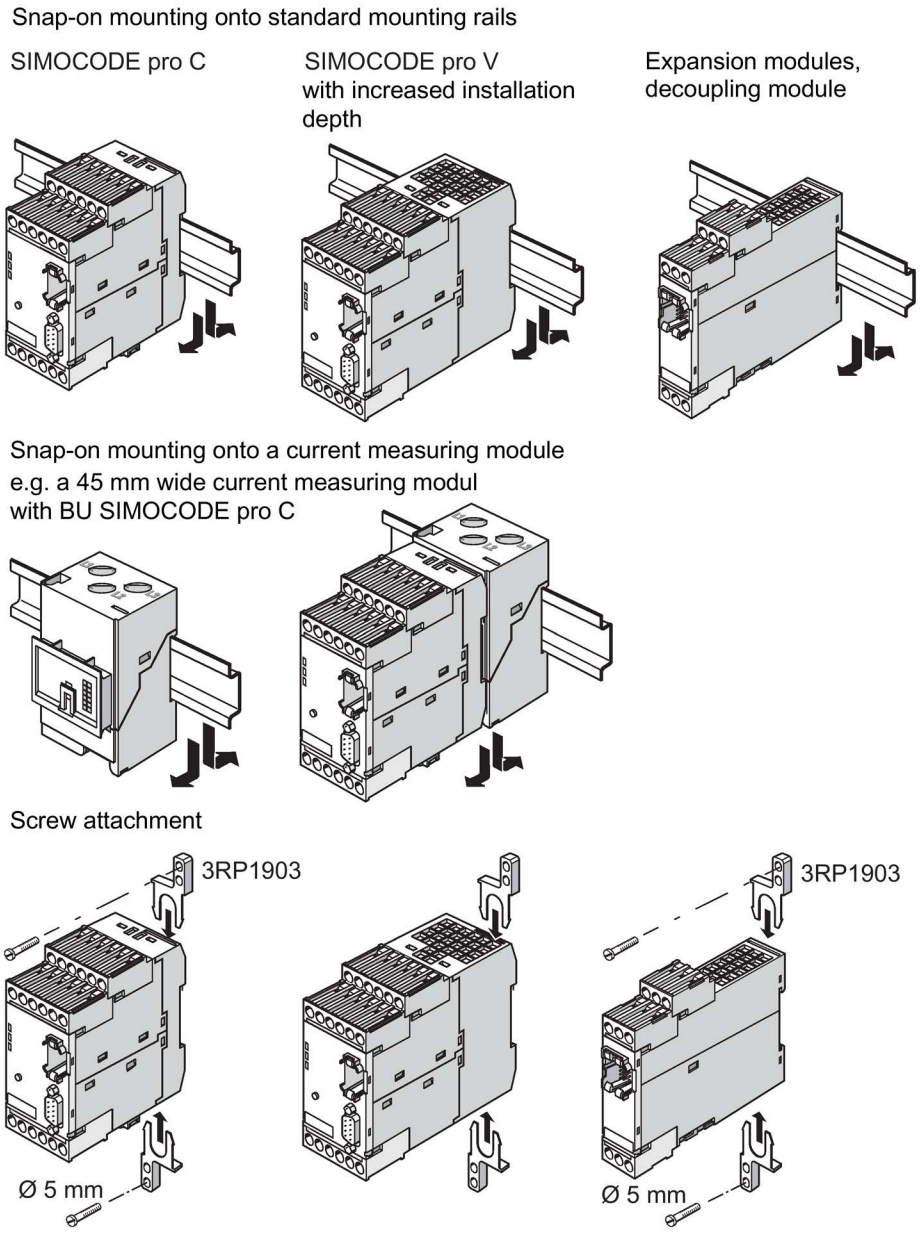


Figure 12-1 Mounting basic unit, expansion modules or the decoupling module, SIMOCODE pro C/V

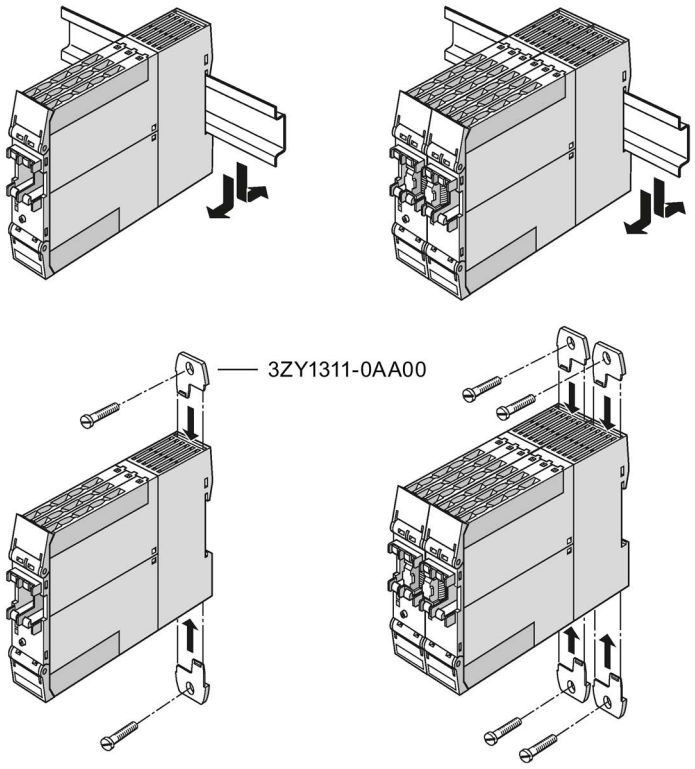


Figure 12-2 Mounting of basic unit and multifunction module, SIMOCODE pro S

12.1.2 Mounting the bus terminal

Sequence for mounting the bus terminal on the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 1 Mounting the bus terminal on the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

Step	Description
1	Screw the two PROFIBUS cables to the bus terminal as shown
2	Attach the bus terminal to the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit as shown.

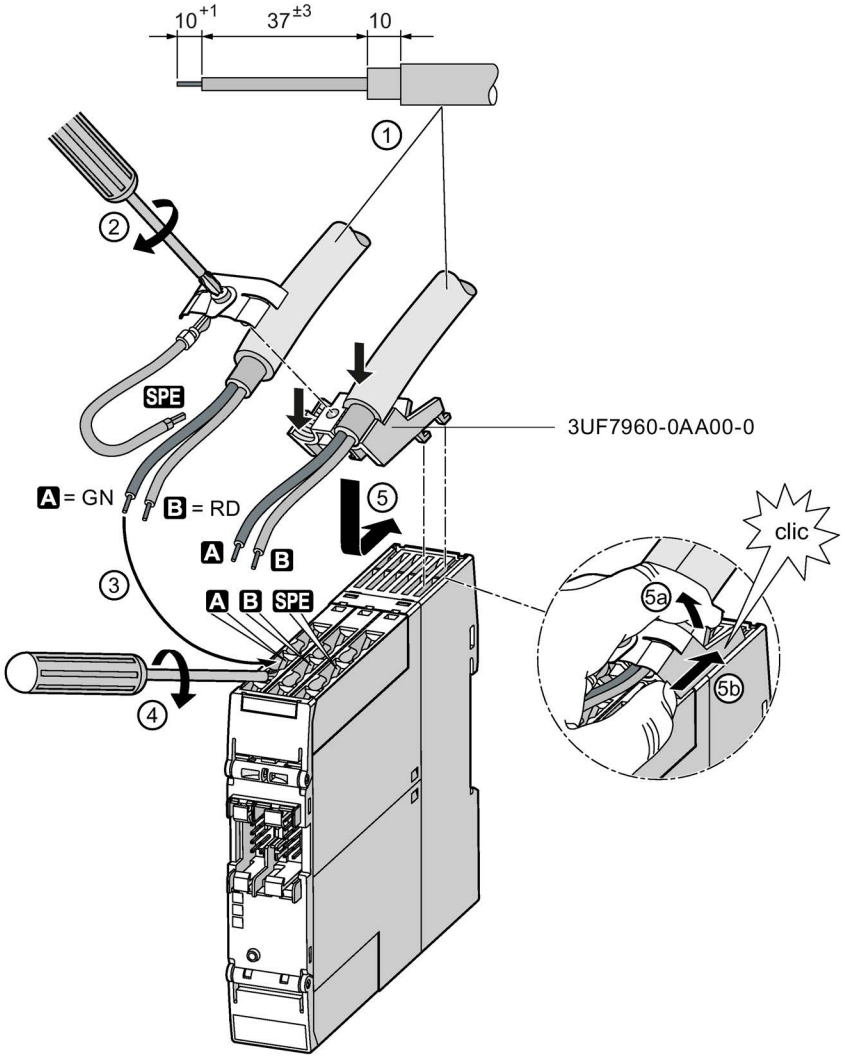


Figure 12-3 Mounting the bus terminal on the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

12.1.3 Mounting of digital modules DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe

See Manual SIMOCODE pro fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852), Chapter "Mounting and connection."

12.1.4 Mounting of current measuring modules

You can attach these system components as follows:

- Current measuring modules up to 100 A: Standard mounting rail mounting or screw attachment with mounting lugs (Order No: 3RV2928-0B) and screws for mounting on a level surface. These mounting lugs are suitable only for current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules! For current measuring modules up to 25 A you will require an additional 25 mm spacer.
- Current measuring modules up to 200 A: Rail-mounting or screw attachment
- Current measuring modules up to 630 A: Screw mounting.

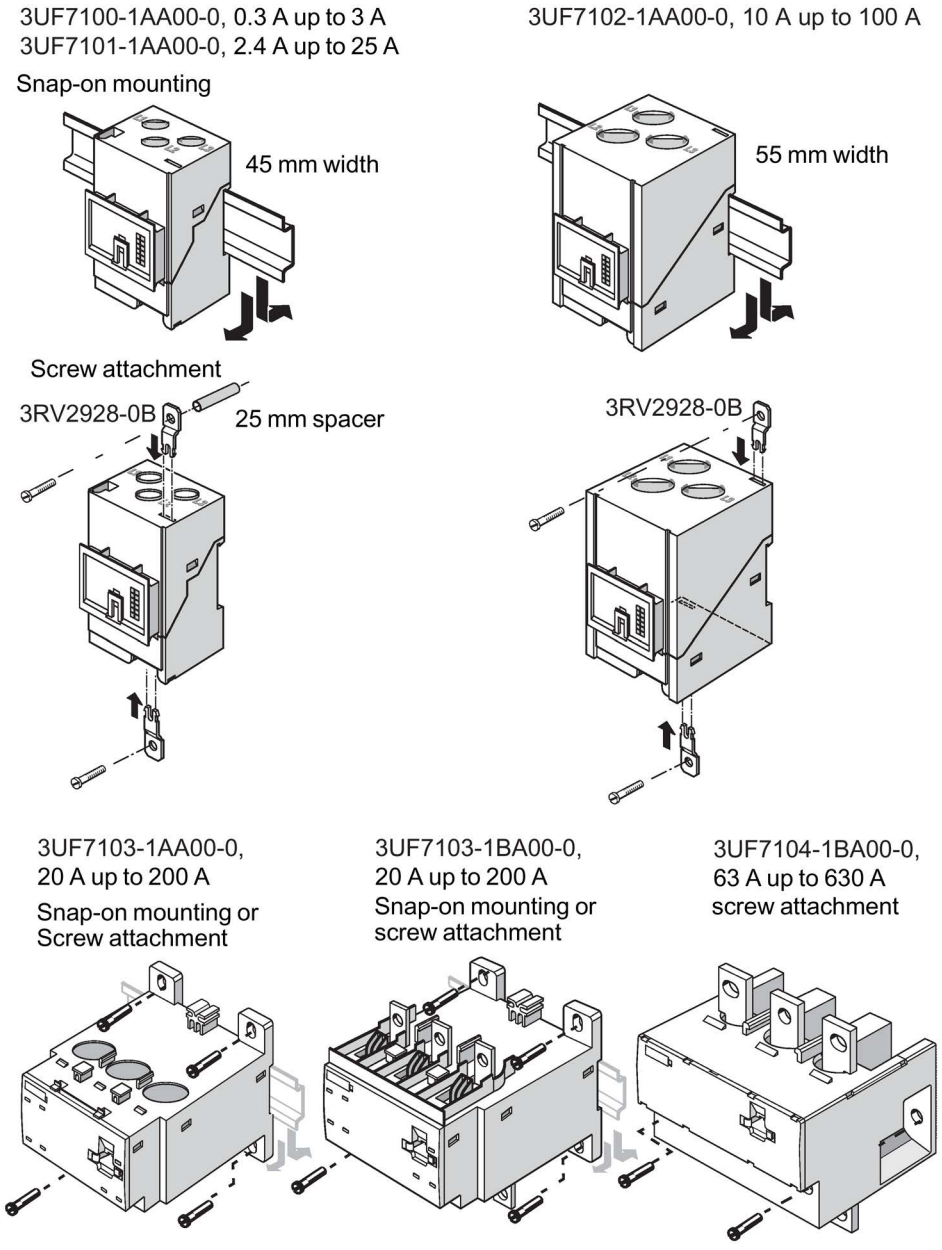


Figure 12-4 Mounting the current measuring modules

12.1.5 Mounting the current / voltage measuring modules

You can attach these system components as follows:

- Current / voltage measuring modules up to 115 A: Standard mounting rail mounting or screw attachment with mounting lugs (article number: 3RV2928-0B) and screws for mounting on a level surface. These mounting lugs are suitable only for current / voltage measuring modules (and current measuring modules)! For current / voltage measuring modules up to 25 A you will require an additional spacer, 25 mm in length.
- Current / voltage measuring modules up to 200 A: Standard mounting rail or screw attachment.
- Current / voltage measuring modules up to 630 A: Screw mounting

Note

Current / voltage measuring modules with a current setting of up to 115 A can be connected to the basic unit mechanically and installed as a unit (behind one another).

Larger current / voltage measuring modules can only be mounted separately.

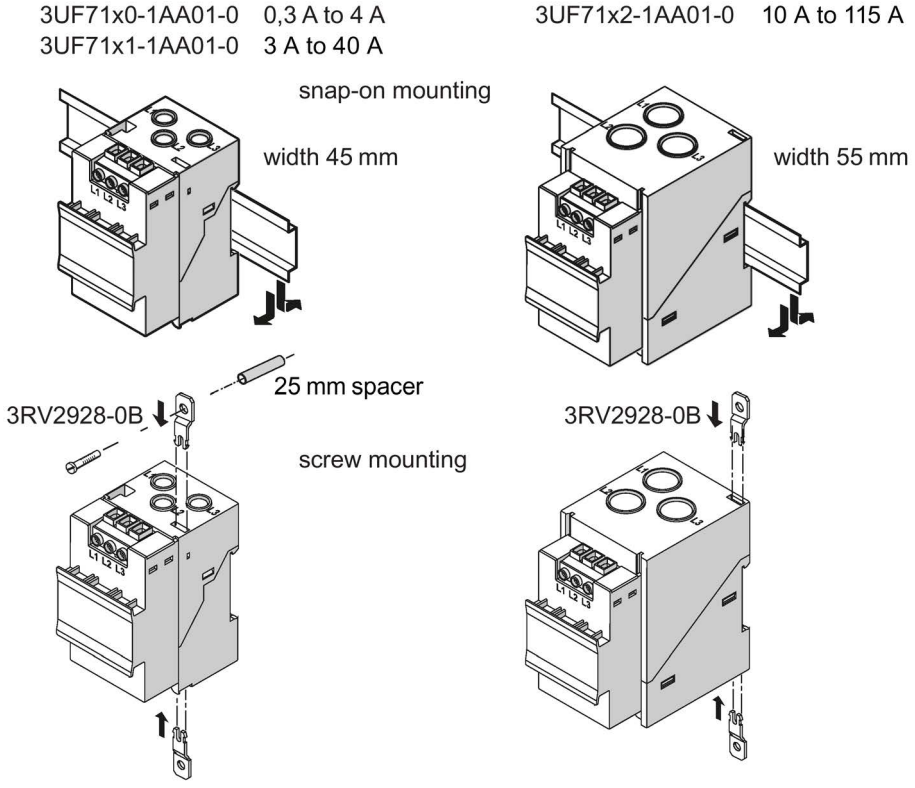


Figure 12-5 Mounting the current / voltage measuring modules UM+ with through-hole technology

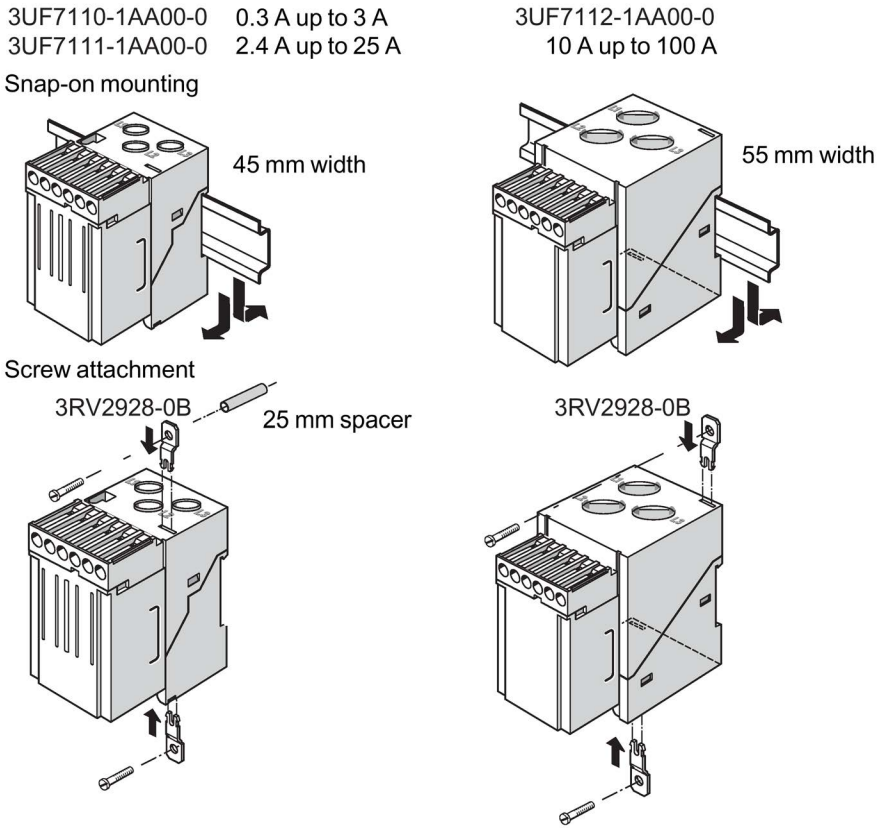


Figure 12-6 Mounting the current / voltage measuring modules UM with through-hole technology

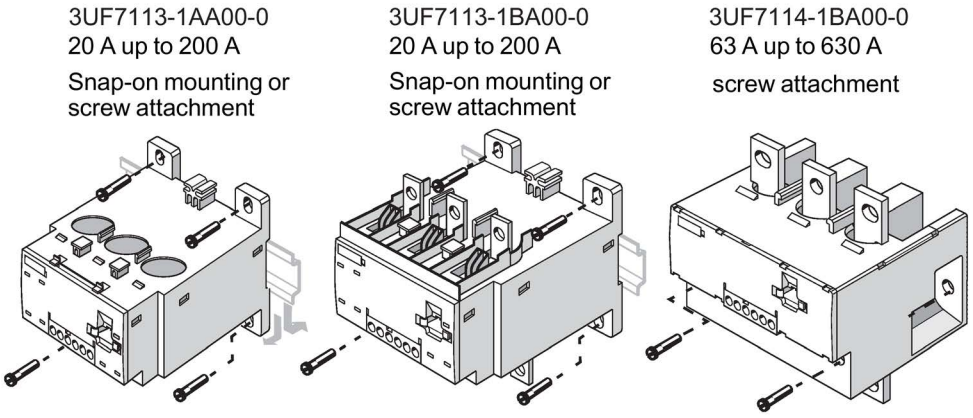


Figure 12-7 Mounting the current / voltage measuring modules UM with bus connection system

12.1.6 Mounting of the operator panel and operator panel with display

The operator panels are designed for installation in the front panels of motor control centers, for example, or in control cabinet doors.

To install, proceed as follows:

Table 12- 2 Sequence for installing the operator panel / operator panel with display

Step	Description
1	Make a cutout, e.g. in the front panel or switchgear cabinet door. Dimensions (see figure "Mounting the operator panel" or figure "Mounting the operator panel with display").
2	Position the operator panel or the operator panel with display in the cutout.
3	Snap the four mounting brackets onto the operator panel.
4	Lock the operator panel in position by tightening the four screws on the securing brackets.

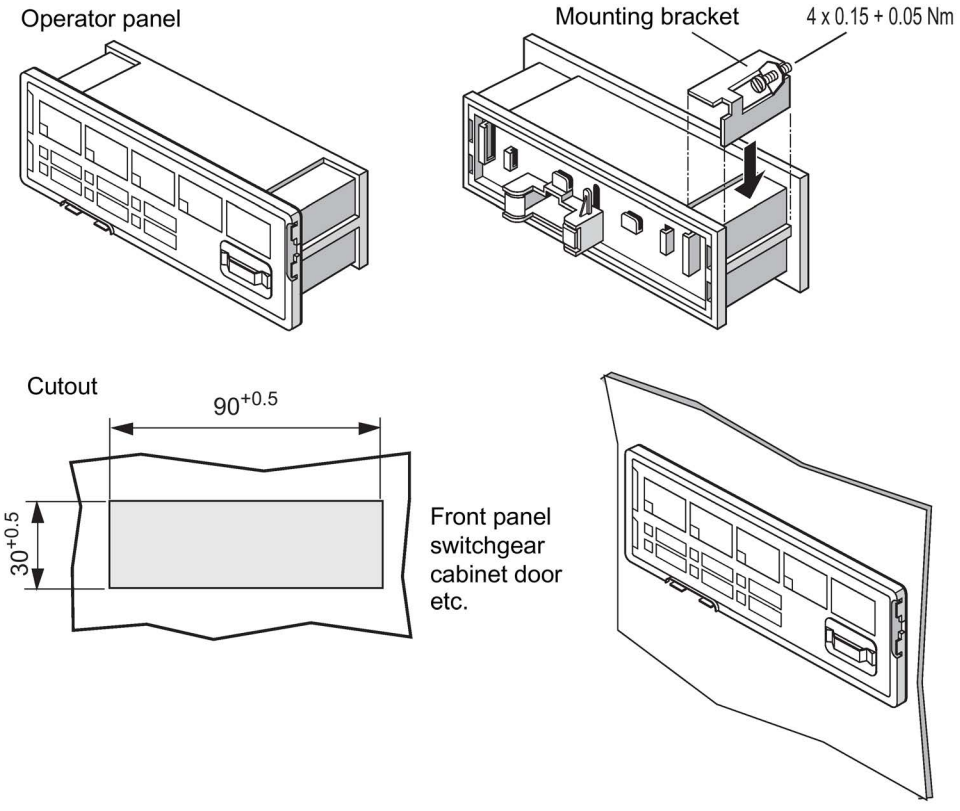


Figure 12-8 Mounting the operator panel

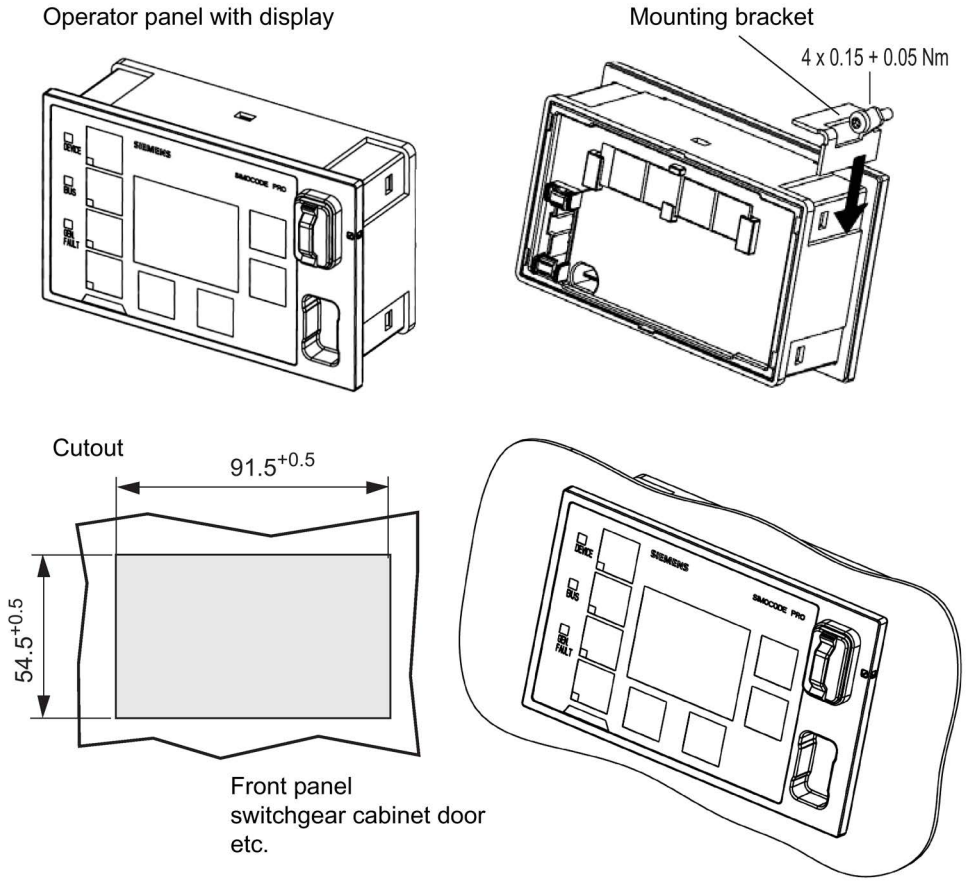


Figure 12-9 Mounting the operator panel with display

WARNING

Tightening torque of the screws

To ensure that the panel will function correctly and is sealed to comply with IP54, the tightening torque of the screws provided must not be set too high when mounting and the seal must be properly fitted.

Note

Only one connecting cable is required for connecting the operator panel with display to SIMOCODE pro (see Chapter An overview of system components (Page 55)). Additional wiring for the power supply or ground is not required.

12.2 Wiring, connecting

12.2.1 Wiring basic units, expansion modules and the decoupling module

Removable terminals

Basic units, expansion modules and the decoupling module have removable terminals. You do not have to detach the wiring to exchange these devices!

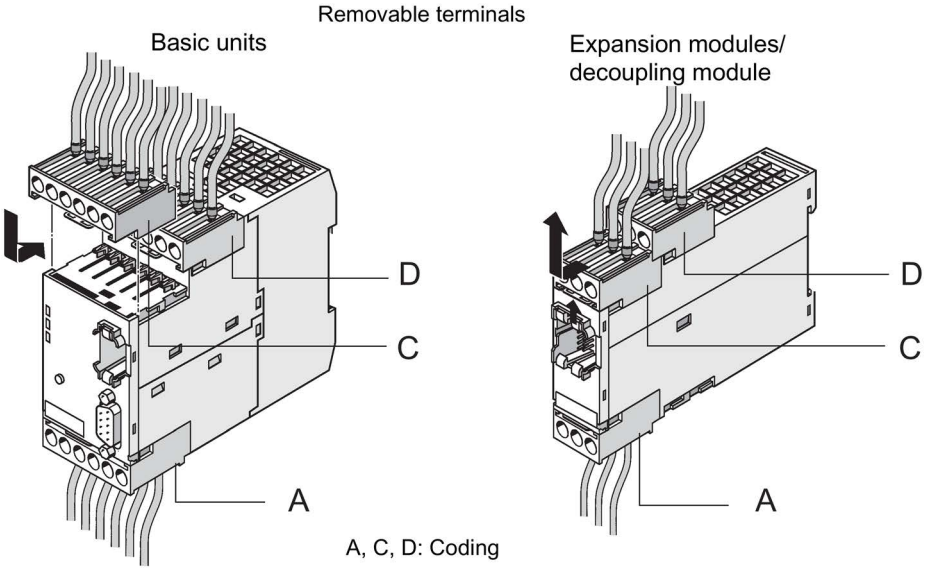


Figure 12-10 Removable terminals for basic units, expansion modules, or the decoupling module, SIMOCODE pro C/V

Note

The removable terminals are mechanically coded and will only fit in a certain position!

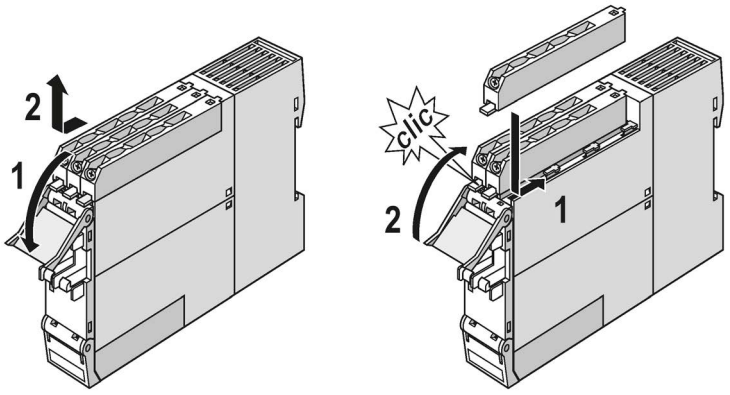


Figure 12-11 Removable terminals for basic unit and multifunction module, SIMOCODE pro S

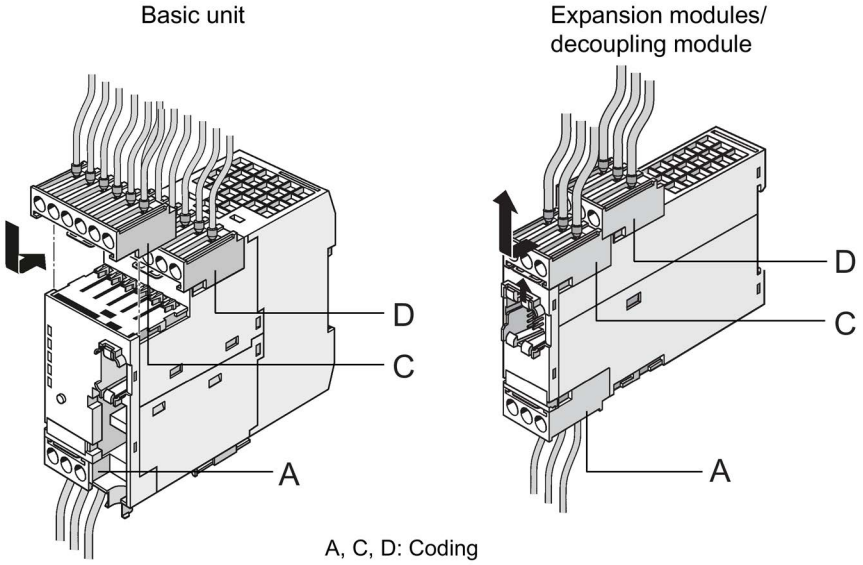


Figure 12-12 Removable terminals for SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units, expansion modules and decoupling module

Cables

The following table shows conductor cross sections, stripped lengths, and tightening torques of the cables for the removable terminals:

The conductor cross sections are the same for all devices. The following table shows conductor cross sections, stripped lengths, and tightening torques of the cables for the removable terminals:

Table 12- 3 Conductor cross sections, stripped lengths, and tightening torques of the cables for the basic units SIMOCODE pro C and pro V

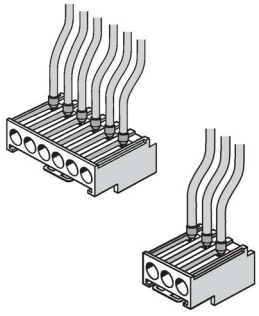
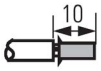
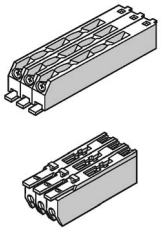
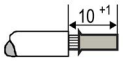
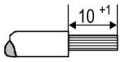
Removable terminals	Screwdriver		Tightening torque
		PZ2 / Ø 5 to 6 m m	TORQUE: 7 to 10.3 lb.in 0.8 to 1.2 Nm
	Stripped lengths		**Conductor cross section**
		Solid	2x 0.5 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
		Finely stranded with / without end sleeve	2x 0.5 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

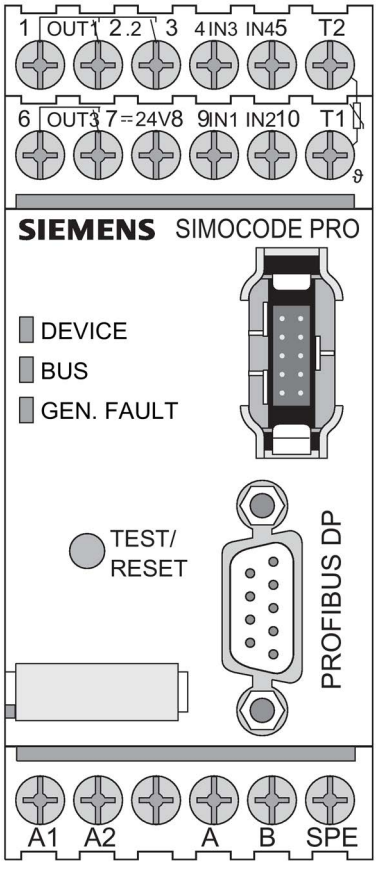
Table 12- 4 Conductor cross sections, stripped lengths, and tightening torques of the cables for the basic unit SIMOCODE pro S

Removable terminals	Screwdriver		Tightening torque
		PZ1 / Ø 4.5 mm	TORQUE: 5.2 to 7.0 lb.in 0.6 to 0.8 Nm
	Stripped lengths		**Conductor cross section**
		Solid	2x 0.5 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14
		Finely stranded with end sleeve	2x 0.5 to 1.0 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 to 2.5 mm^2
		Finely stranded without end sleeve	-
	PROFIBUS		2x 0.34 mm^2 / 1x 0.34 mm^2

Pin assignment for SIMOCODE pro C/V PB basic units

The following table shows the pin assignment of the removable terminals of the SIMOCODE pro C/V PB basic units:

Table 12- 5 Assignment of the removal terminals, SIMOCODE pro C/V PB basic units

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
1	Common potential for relay outputs 1 and 2	
2	Relay output OUT1	
3	Relay output OUT2	
4	Digital input IN3	
5	Digital input IN4	
T2	Thermistor connection (binary PTC)	
6	Relay output OUT3	
7	Relay output OUT3	
8	24 V DC only for IN1 to IN4	
9	Digital input IN1	
10	Digital input IN2	
T1	Thermistor connection (binary PTC)	
Lower terminals		
A1	Supply voltage terminal 1	
A2	Supply voltage terminal 2	
A	PROFIBUS DP terminal A	
B	PROFIBUS DP terminal B	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

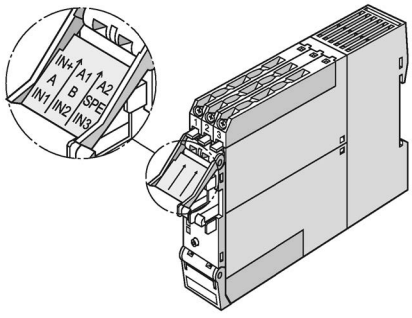
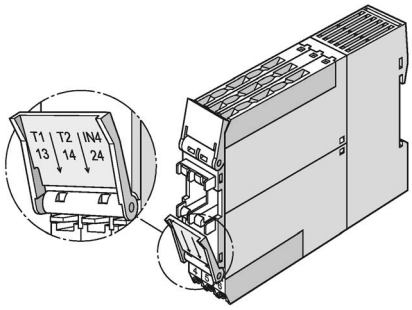
Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Assignment of the removable terminals, SIMOCODE pro S basic units

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals of the SIMOCODE pro S basic unit:

Table 12- 6 Assignment of the removable terminals, SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
IN+	24 V DC only for IN1 to IN4	
A1	Supply voltage terminal 1	
A2	Supply voltage terminal 2	
A	PROFIBUS DP terminal A	
B	PROFIBUS DP terminal B	
SPE [1]	System shielding	
IN1	Digital input IN1	
IN2	Digital input IN2	
IN3	Digital input IN3	
Lower terminals		
T1	Thermistor connection 1 (binary PTC)	
T2	Thermistor connection 2 (binary PTC)	
IN4	Digital input IN4	
13	Common potential for relay outputs 1 and 2	
14	Relay output OUT1	
24	Relay output OUT2	

1)

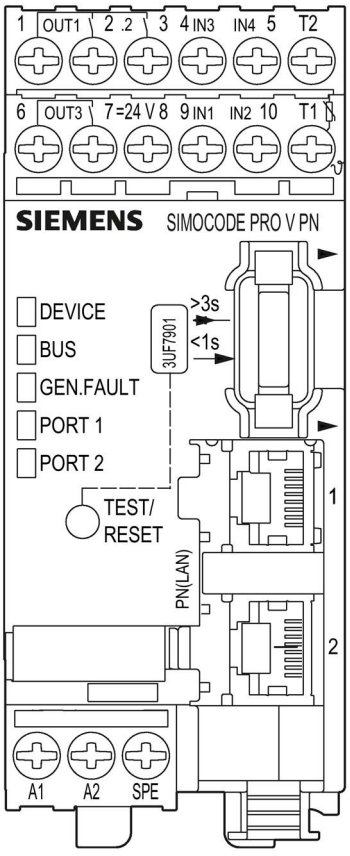
Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Pin assignment for SIMOCODE pro V PN / EIP basic units

The following table shows the pin assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 7 Pin assignments of the removable terminals of the basic unit

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
1	Common potential for relay outputs 1 and 2	
2	Relay output OUT1	
3	Relay output OUT2	
4	Digital input IN3	
5	Digital input IN4	
T2	Thermistor connection (binary PTC)	
6	Relay output OUT3	
7	Relay output OUT3	
8	24 V DC only for IN1 to IN4	
9	Digital input IN1	
10	Digital input IN2	
T1	Thermistor connection (binary PTC)	
Lower terminals		
A1	Supply voltage terminal 1	
A2	Supply voltage terminal 2	
PORT 1	PROFINET connection 1	
PORT 2	PROFINET connection 2	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Power supply to the inputs of the basic unit

There are three possibilities for powering the inputs:

a): 24 V DC internal

b): 24 V DC external. Input 3 is the reference potential, i.e. three inputs are available.

c): 24 V DC external. **Only possible for a basic unit with 24 V DC supply voltage!**

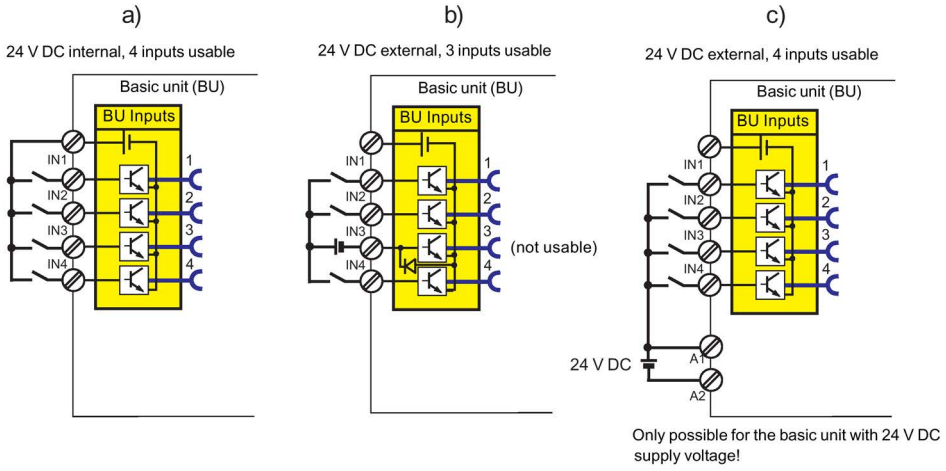


Figure 12-13 24 V DC for powering the inputs

All inputs work reaction-free, i.e. the signal statuses on neighboring inputs do not influence each other.

Wiring sequence of the removable terminal of the SIMOCODE pro C/V basic units

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 8 Wiring of the removable terminals of the SIMOCODE pro C/V basic units

Step	Description
1	Connect the cables to the upper and lower terminals.
2	If you wish to use the A/B terminals for PROFIBUS DP, connect the PROFIBUS DP cable shield to the SPE / PE terminal.
3	Connect the equipment shield to the SPE 1) terminal.

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Note

The A / B terminals are an alternative to the 9-way SUB-D connection! Baud rates of up to 1.5 Mbit / s 1) are possible.

Note

1) Baud rates > 1.5 Mbit / s

At baud rates > 1.5 Mbit / s, the "Bus" fault is generated and the "Bus" LED lights up.

Wiring sequence of the PROFIBUS cable for SIMOCODE pro S basic units

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 9 Wiring of the removable terminals on the basic units

Step	Description
1	Insulate the PROFIBUS cable as shown below.
2	Screw the SPE cable to the bus terminal as shown below.
3	Connect the PROFIBUS cables A and B and the SPE cable to terminals A, B, and SPE [1] as shown below.

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

CAUTION

SPE connection

Connect the SPE cable to the SPE terminal or alternatively to the bus connection terminal with a ring cable lug.

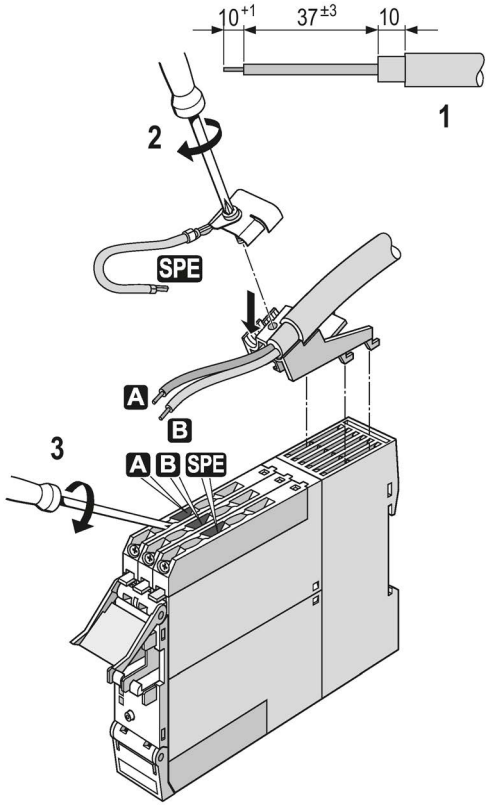


Figure 12-14 Wiring sequence of the PROFIBUS cable for SIMOCODE pro S basic units

Sequence for wiring the removable terminals for SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 10 Wiring the removable terminals of the basic unit

Step	Description
1	Connect the cables to the upper and lower terminals.
2	Connect the equipment shield to the SPE [1] terminal.

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Connection examples of SIMOCODE pro C/V/S basic units

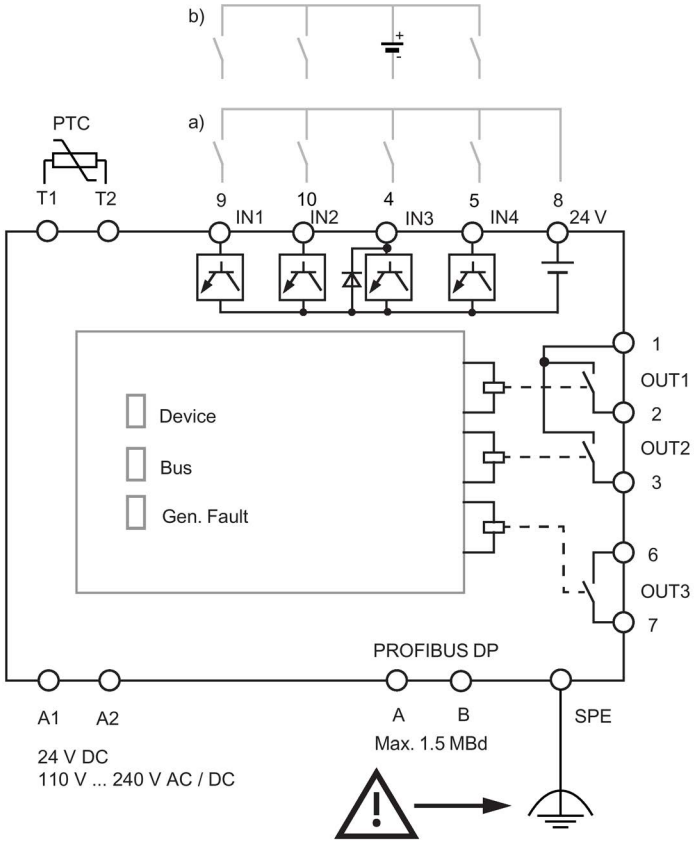


Figure 12-15 Connection example of SIMOCODE pro C/V basic units

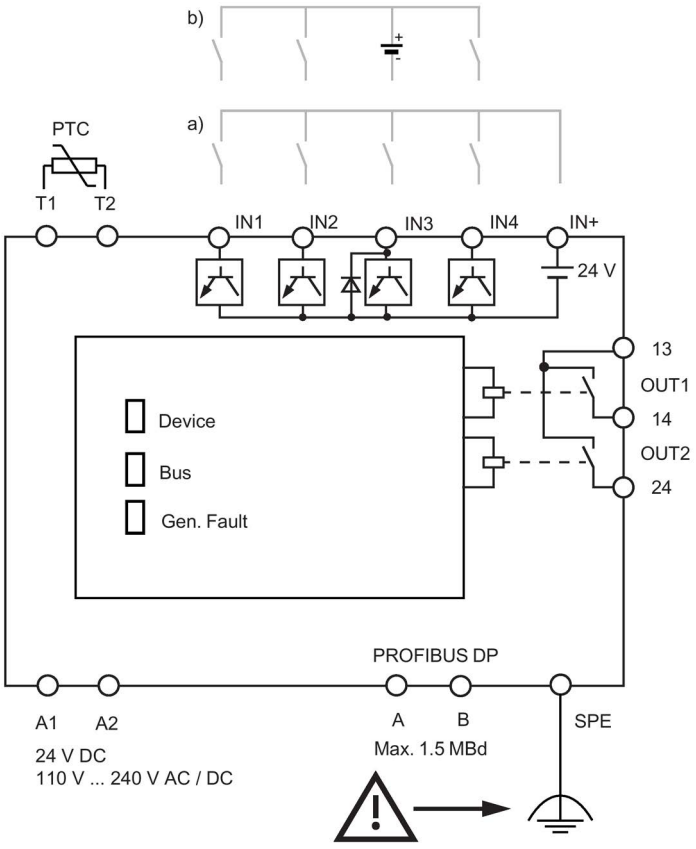


Figure 12-16 Connection example SIMOCODE pro S basic unit

Note

Only three inputs can be used

With an external 24 V DC supply, only three inputs can be used (see "Power supply to the inputs of the basic unit" above).

Note

Baud rates PROFIBUS DP

Baud rates up to 1.5 Mbits are possible via bus terminals A/B.

Connection examples for SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units

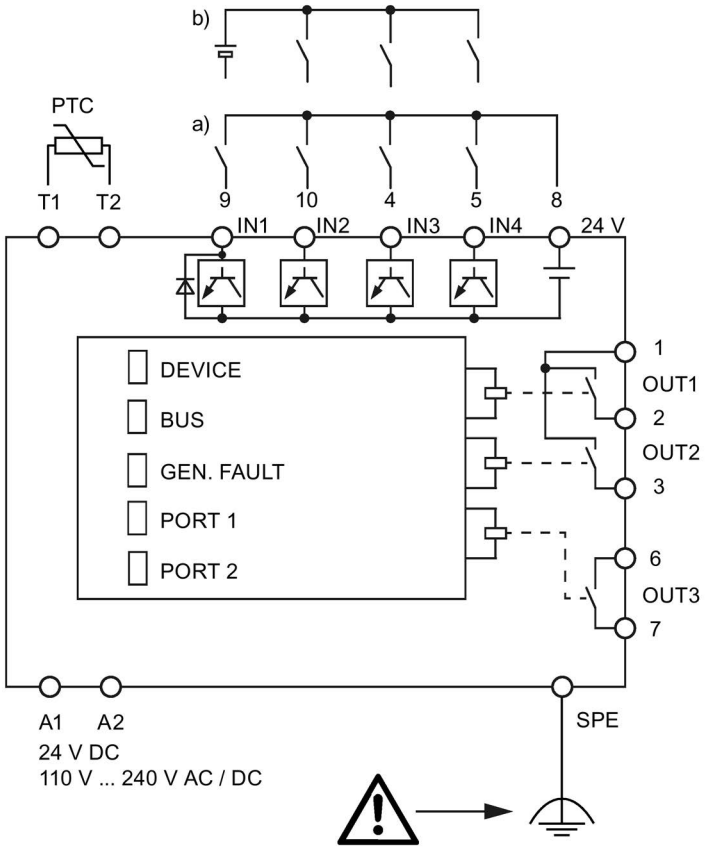
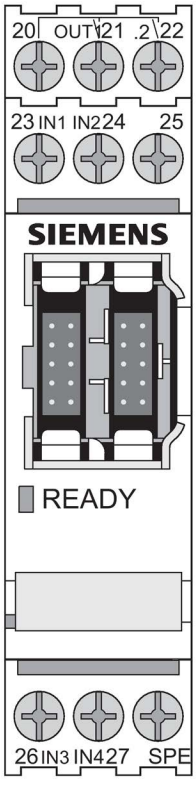


Figure 12-17 Connection examples for SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units

Terminal assignment of the digital module

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 11 Pin assignment of the removable terminals of the digital module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
20	Common potential for relay outputs 1 and 2	
21	Relay output OUT1	
22	Relay output OUT2	
23	Digital input IN1	
24	Digital input IN2	
25	N / M for IN1 to IN4	
Lower terminals		
26	Digital input IN3	
27	Digital input IN4	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Power supply to the digital module inputs

There are two possibilities for powering the inputs:

a) Digital module with 24 V DC input supply

b) Digital module with 110 to 240 V AC / DC input supply

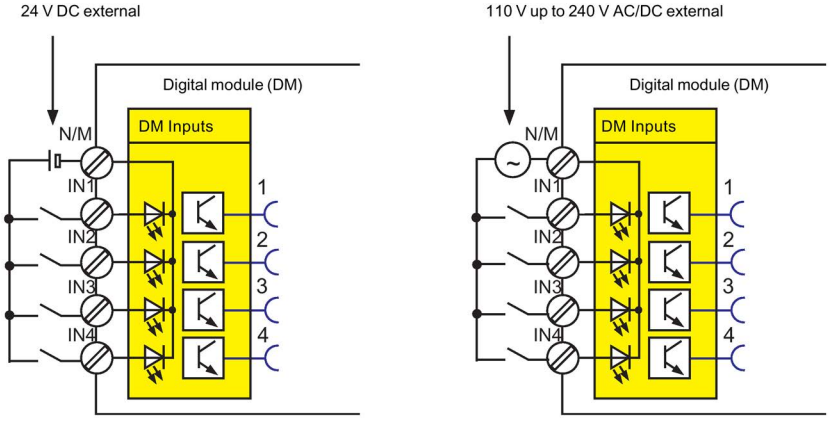


Figure 12-18 Power supply to the digital module inputs

Digital module connection example

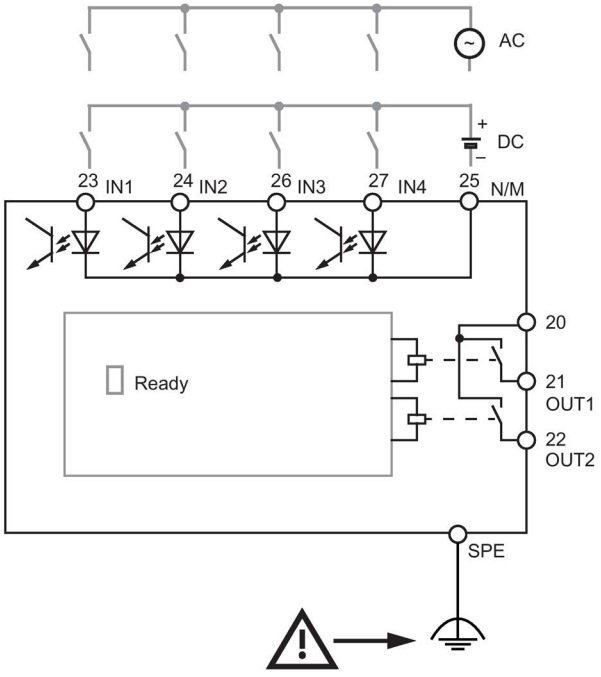
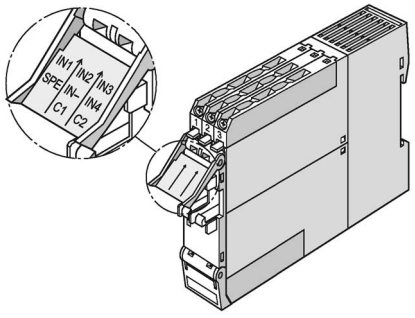
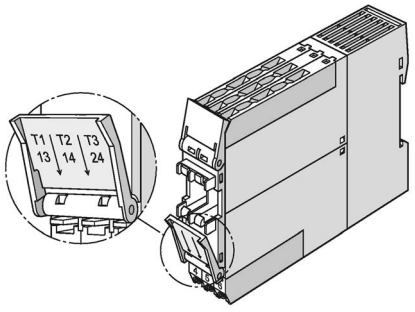


Figure 12-19 Digital module connection example

Terminal assignment of the multifunction module

Table 12- 12 Assignment of the removable terminals, multifunction module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
IN1	Digital input IN1	
IN2	Digital input IN2	
IN3	Digital input IN3	
SPE [1]	System shielding	
IN-	Ground for IN1 to IN4	
IN4	Digital input IN4	
C1	Terminal 1, 3UL23 residual current transformer	
C2	Terminal 2, 3UL23 residual current transformer	
Lower terminals		
T1	Input T1, temperature sensor	
T2	Input T2, temperature sensor	
T3	Input T3, temperature sensor	
13	Common potential for relay outputs 1 and 2	
14	Relay output OUT1	
24	Relay output OUT2	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Connection example for multifunction module

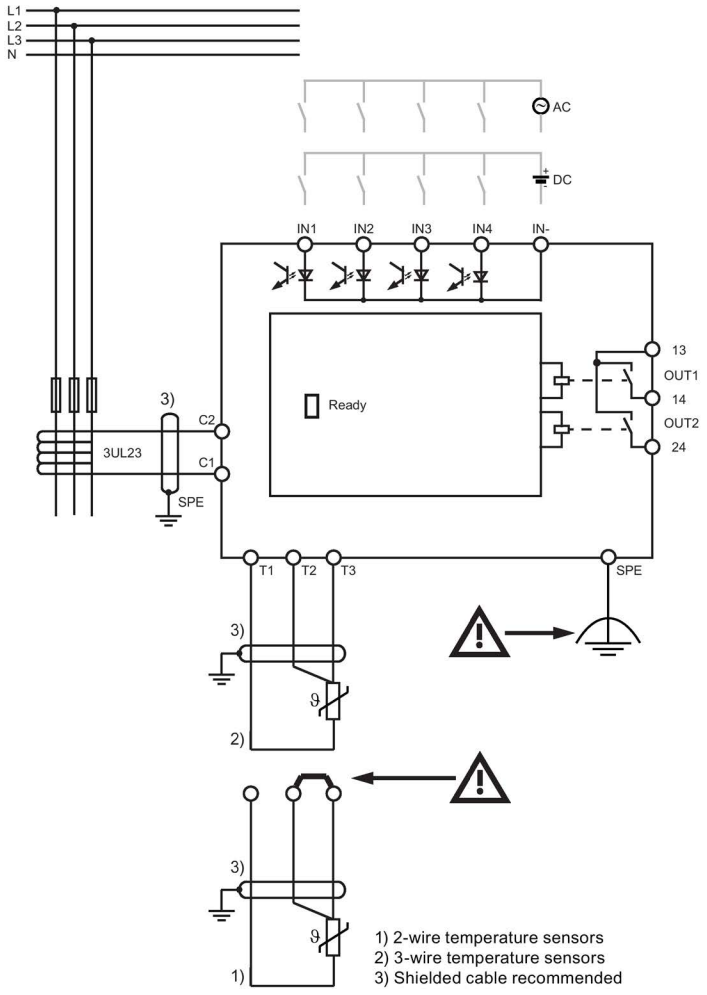


Figure 12-20 Connection example for multifunction module

Safety information on installing the 3UL23 residual current transformer:

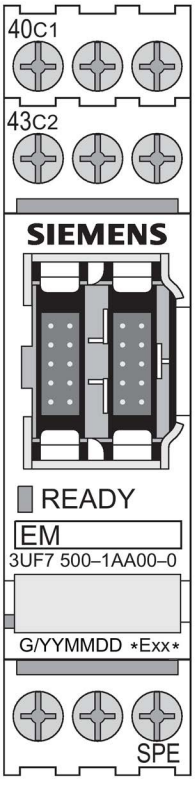
See Chapter 14.2.5 in the Manual 3UG4/3RR2 Monitoring Relay (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50426183/133300).

NOTICE
Routing the connecting cables / using shielded cables To avoid interference injection, which could result in incorrect measurements, route these connecting lines parallel and twisted, if possible, or use shielded cables.

Terminal assignment of the ground-fault module

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 13 Terminal assignment of the removable terminals of the ground-fault module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
40	Input C1 residual current transformer	
43	Input C2 residual current transformer	
Lower terminals		
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

NOTICE

Types of ground-fault module

The 3UF7 500-1AA00-0 ground-fault module requires the 3UL22 residual current transformer.

The 3UF7 510-1AA00-0 ground-fault module requires the 3UL23 residual current transformer.

Ground-fault module connection example

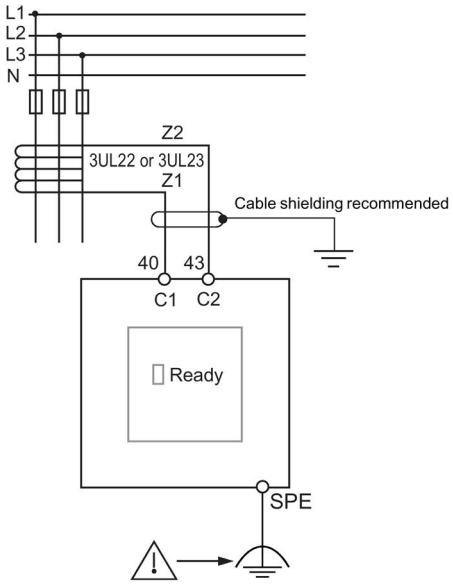


Figure 12-21 Ground-fault module connection example

The output signal of the transformers 3UL22/3UL23 is connected to terminals C1 and C2 of the corresponding ground-fault module.

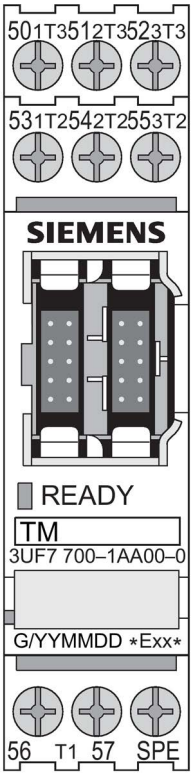
Information on installing the residual current transformer 3UL23: See Manual 3UG4/3RR2 Monitoring Relay (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50426183/133300), Chapter 13.2.5.

NOTICE
Routing the connecting cables / using shielded cables To avoid interference injection, which could result in incorrect measurements, route these connecting lines parallel and twisted, if possible, or use shielded cables.

Terminal assignment of the temperature module

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 14 Pin assignment of the removable terminals of the temperature module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
50	Input T3, temperature sensor 1	
51	Input T3, temperature sensor 2	
52	Input T3, temperature sensor 3	
53	Input T2, temperature sensor 1	
54	Input T2, temperature sensor 2	
55	Input T2, temperature sensor 3	
Lower terminals		
56	Input T1, temperature sensor 1 to 3	
57	Input T1, temperature sensor 1 to 3	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

You can connect up to three 2-wire or 3-wire temperature sensors.

- 2-wire temperature sensors: Connect a jumper between the T2 terminals and T3 terminals.
- 3-wire temperature sensors: Assign terminals 56 and 57 twice when three sensors are used.

Temperature module connection example

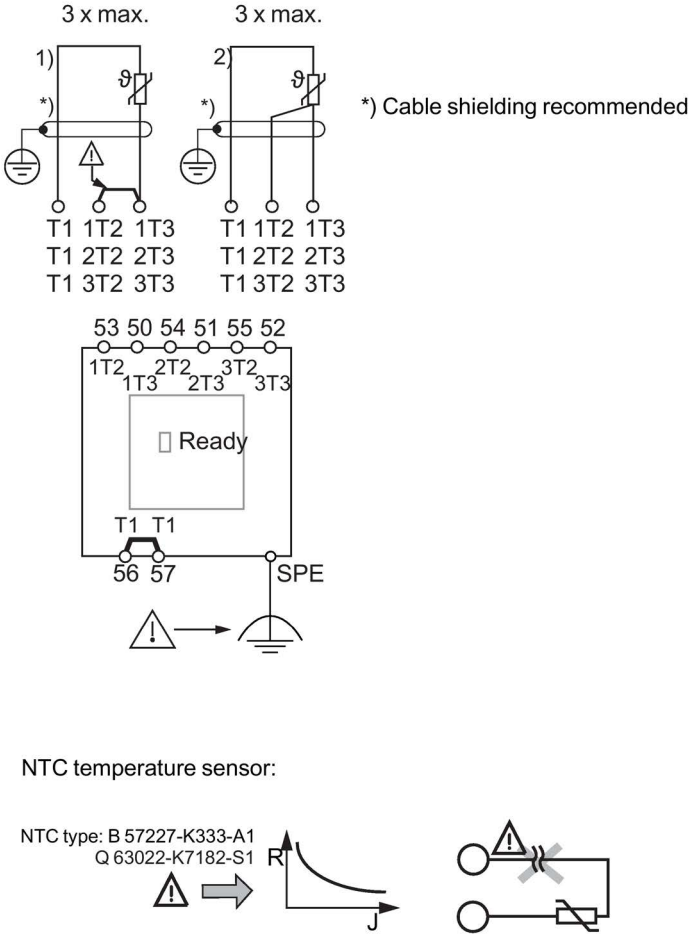
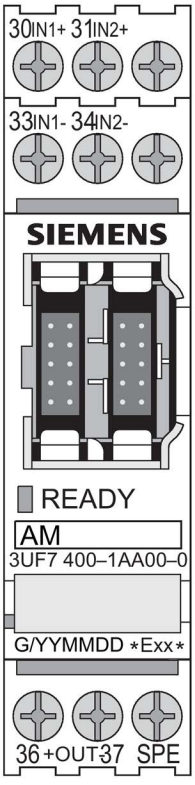


Figure 12-22 Temperature module connection example

Terminal assignment of the analog module

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 15 Pin assignment of the removable terminals of the analog module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
30	Analog input IN1+	
31	Analog input IN2+	
33	Analog input IN1+	
34	Analog input IN2+	
Lower terminals		
36	Analog output OUT+	
37	Analog output OUT+	
SPE [1]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Analog module connection example

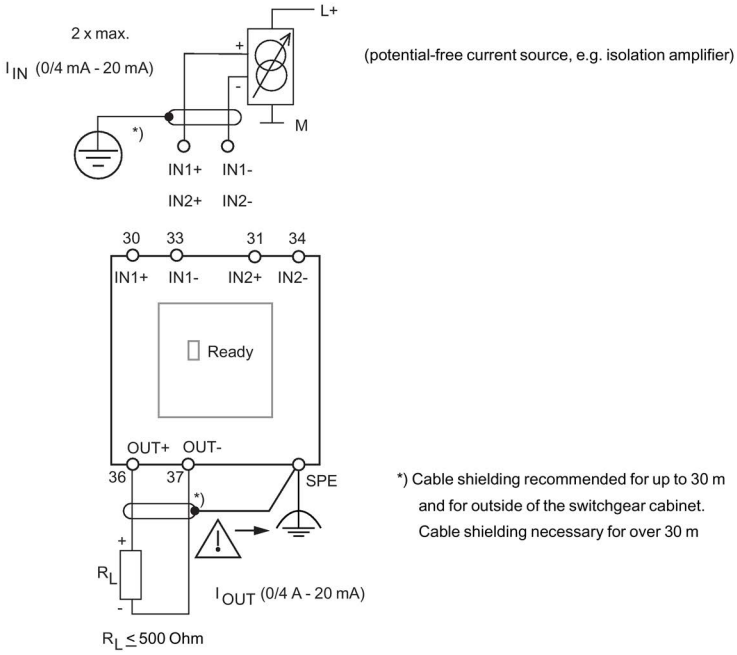
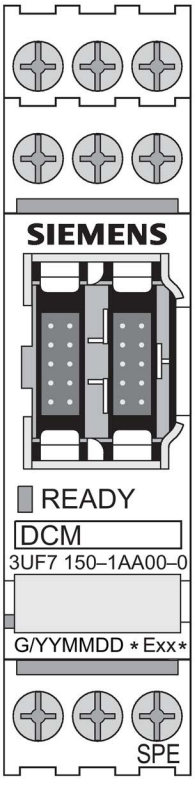


Figure 12-23 Analog module connection example

Terminal assignment of the decoupling module

The following table shows the assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 16 Pin assignment of the removable terminals of the decoupling module

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
—		
Lower terminals		
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Decoupling module connection example

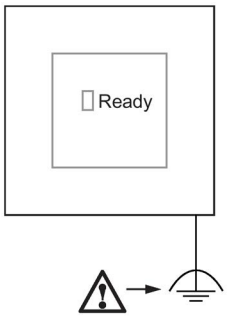


Figure 12-24 Decoupling module connection example

Wiring the removable terminals of the expansion modules and the decoupling module

Connect the equipment shield to the SPE terminal.

12.2.2 Wiring digital modules DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe

Safety guidelines

See Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro
(https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852),
Chapter "Mounting and connection."

WARNING

Loss of safety function is possible

For the 24 V DC power supply, always use an SELV or PELV power supply unit!

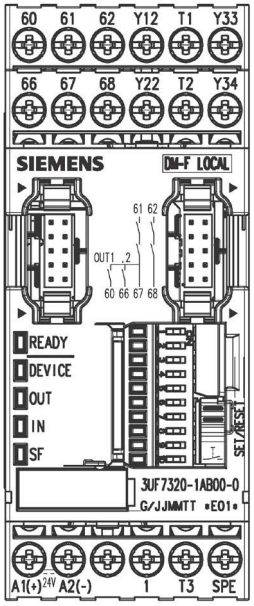
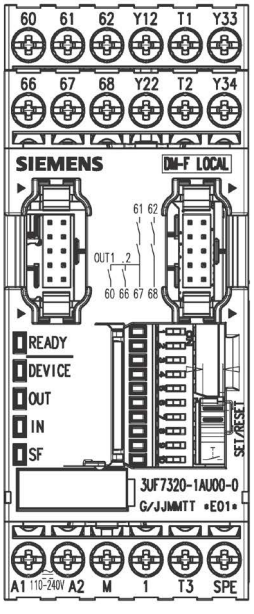
Note

Surge suppressors are required for inductive loads.

Terminal assignment for digital module DM-F Local

The following table shows the pin assignment of the removable terminals:

Table 12- 17 Terminal assignment of the removable terminals of the digital module DM-F Local, 24 V DC version and 110 to 240 V UC version.

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
60, 66	Digital module, relay outputs 1 (60) and 2 (66)	
61, 67	Relay enabling circuit 1, NO	
62, 68	Relay enabling circuit 2, NO	
Y12, Y22	Sensor input channel 1, channel 2	
T1, T2	Supply for sensor inputs (24 V DC, pulsed)	
Y33	Start button (start after rising and falling edge)	
Y34	Feedback circuit	
Lower terminals		
A1 (+)	Power supply connection 110 to 240 V AC/DC or +24 V DC	
A2 (-)	N or -24 V	
M	Ground (reference potential for sensor inputs, 3UF7320-1AU00-0 only)	
1	Cascading input	
T3	Supply for sensor inputs (24 V DC, static)	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

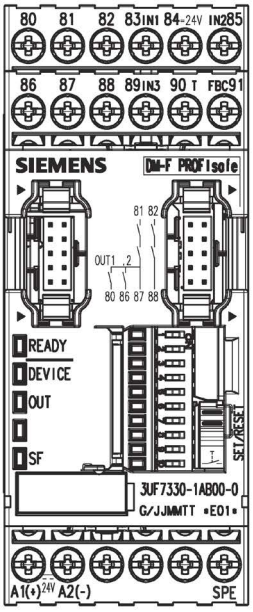
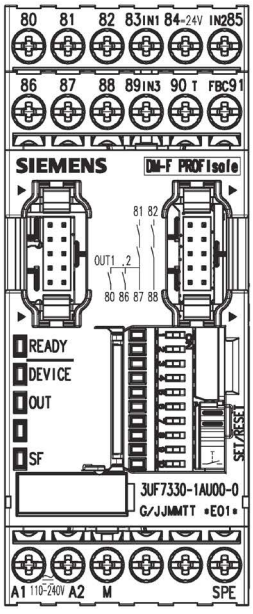
1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Terminal assignment for digital module DM-F PROFIsafe

Table 12- 18 Terminal assignment of the removable terminals of the digital module DM-F PROFIsafe, 24 V DC version and 110 to 240 V UC version.

Terminal	Assignment	
Upper terminals		
80, 86	Digital module, relay outputs 1 (80) and 2 (86)	
81, 87	Relay enabling circuit 1, NO	
82, 88	Relay enabling circuit 2, NO	
83 (IN1) 85 (IN2) 89 (IN3)	Digital module, inputs 1, 2, 3	
84	Power supply, diigital module, inputs 1 to 3, 24 V DC	
90 (T)	Feedback circuit supply (FBC) 24 V DC	
91 (FBC)	Feedback circuit	
Lower terminals		
A1 (+)	Power supply connection 110 to 240 V AC/DC or +24 V DC	
A2 (-)	N or -24 V	
M	Ground (reference potential inputs, only 3UF7320-1AU00-0)	
1	Cascading input	
T3	Supply for sensor inputs (24 V DC, static)	
SPE [1)]	System shielding	

1)

Note

Connect SIMOCODE pro via terminal SPE with the maximum possible cross-section and with as short a cable as possible to the functional ground of the control cabinet, e.g. to the grounded mounting plate of the control cabinet.

Digital module DM-F Local connection example

DM-F Local with cross-circuit detection, 2 NCs, 2 channels, monitored start

WARNING

Fuse protection required!

Always install the prescribed fuse protection.

This ensures safe tripping in the event of a fault.

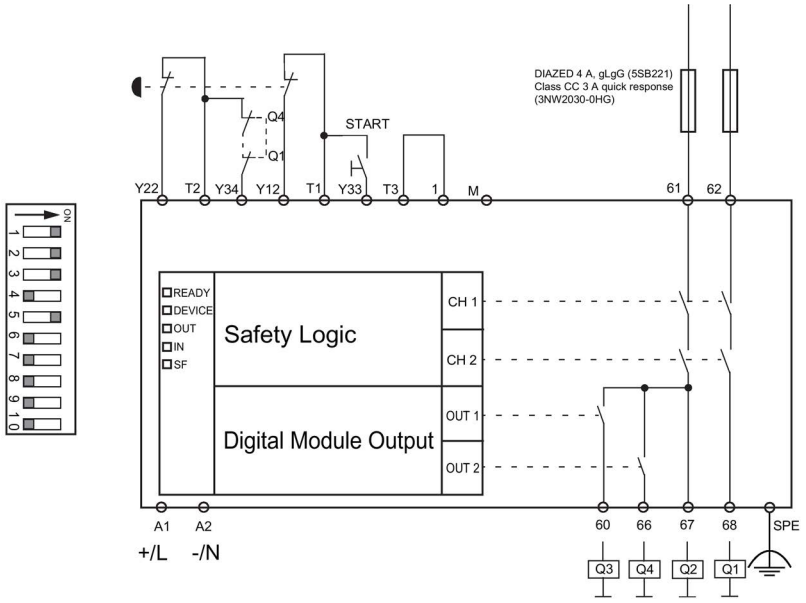


Figure 12-25 Connection example for "DM-F Local with cross-circuit detection, 2 NCs, 2 channels, monitored start"

For further connection examples: See Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

Digital module DM-F PROFIsafe connection example

WARNING

Fuse protection required!

Always install the prescribed fuse protection.

This ensures safe tripping in the event of a fault.

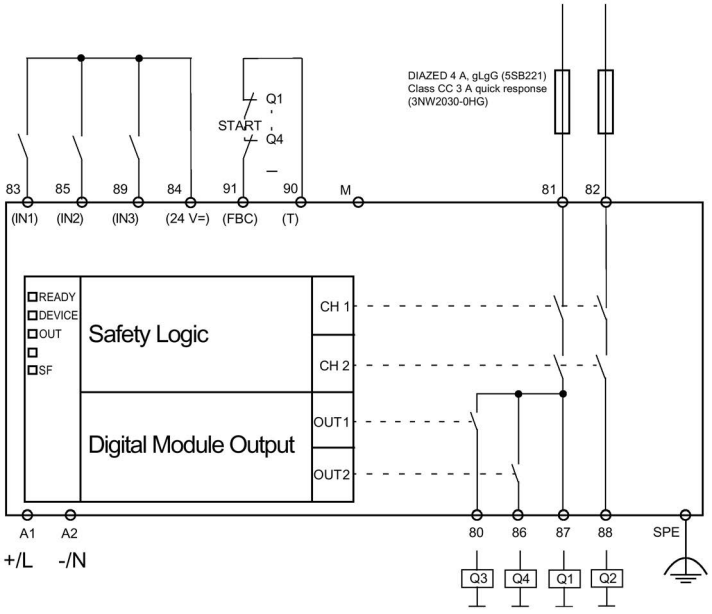


Figure 12-26 Block diagram of DM-F PROFIsafe

Connection examples fail-safe digital module DM-F

See Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

12.2.3 Wiring of current measuring modules

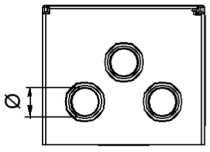
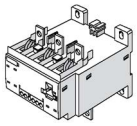
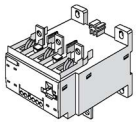
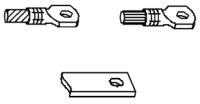
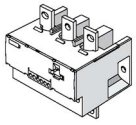
Selection

Select the appropriate current measuring module according to the motor current:

- Through-hole connection up to 200 A: The cables of the three phases are passed through the feed-through openings.
- Bus connection system from 20 A to 630 A, also for direct connection to Siemens contactors.

The following table shows the various current measuring modules:

Table 12- 19 Current measuring modules

Current measuring module		Version
3UF7100-1AA00-0; 0.3 to 3 A Ø feed-through openings: 7.5 mm		Through-hole connection 
3UF7101-1AA00-0; 2.4 to 25 A Ø feed-through openings: 7.5 mm		
3UF7102-1AA00-0; 10 - 100 A Ø feed-through openings: 14 mm		
3UF7103-1AA00-0; 20 to- 200 A Ø feed-through openings: 25 mm		
3UF7103-1BA00-0; 20 to 200 A Conductor cross section: 16 to 95 mm², AWG 5 to 3/0		Bus connection system 
3UF7104-1BA00-0; 63 to 630 A Conductor cross section: 50 to 240 mm², AWG 1/0 to 500 kcmil		

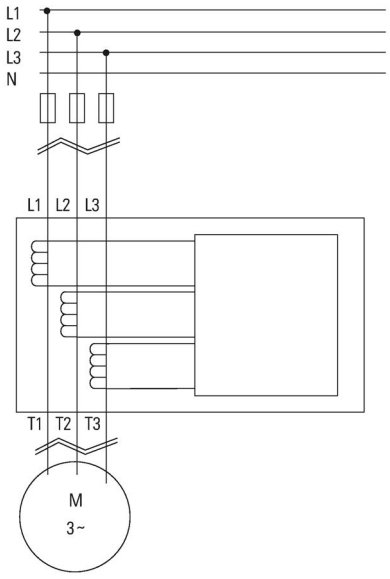


Figure 12-27 Main circuit connection

Note

When connecting or routing the cables of the individual phases of the main circuit, ensure correct assignment of the phases on the current measuring module and correct routing direction!

Please note the information in the Operating Instructions. You will also find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro at Operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

12.2.4 Wiring of current / voltage measuring modules

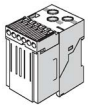
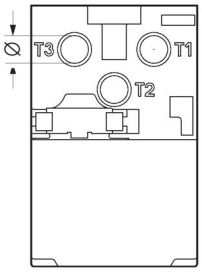
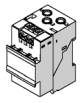
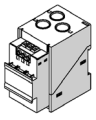
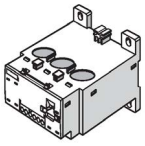
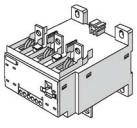
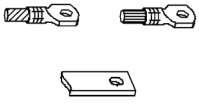
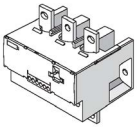
Selection

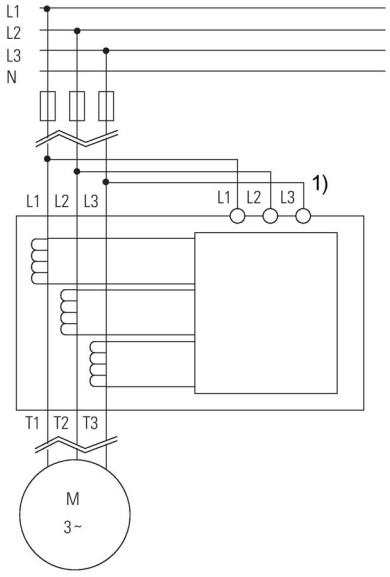
Select the appropriate current / voltage measuring module according to the motor current.

- Through-hole connection up to 200 A: The cables of the three phases are passed through the feed-through openings.
- Bus connection system from 20 A to 630 A, also for direct connection to Siemens contactors.

The following table shows the various current / voltage measuring modules:

Table 12- 20 Current / voltage measuring modules

1) Current / voltage measuring module UM **2) 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module UM+**		**Version**
1) 3UF7110-1AA00-0; 0.3 - 3 A 2) 3UF7110-1AA01-0; 0.3 - 4 A Ø feed-through openings: 7.5 mm		Through-hole connection 
1) 3UF7111-1AA00-0; 2.4 - 25 A 2) 3UF7111-1AA01-0; 3 - 40 A Ø feed-through openings: 7.5 mm		
1) 3UF7112-1AA00-0; 10 - 100 A 2) 3UF7112-1AA01-0; 10 - 115 A Ø feed-through openings: 14 mm	 	
1) 3UF7113-1AA00-0; 20 - 200 A 2) 3UF7113-1AA01-0; 20 - 200 A Ø feed-through openings: 25 mm		
1) 3UF7113-1BA00-0; 20 - 200 A 2) 3UF7113-1BA01-0; 20 - 200 A Conductor cross section: 16 to 95 mm², AWG 5 to 3/0		Bus connection system 
1) 3UF7114-1BA00-0; 63 - 630 A 2) 3UF7114-1BA01-0; 63 - 630 A Conductor cross section: 50 to 240 mm², AWG 1/0 to 500 kcmil		



Safety guidelines

WARNING

1) Short-circuit proof wiring or line protection recommended

Note

Acquisition of the line supply voltage

A voltage tap between the circuit breaker or fuse and the contactor is recommended for acquisition of the line supply voltage.

Thus, when the motor is shut down, its operable state can be derived from the presence of the supply voltage.

Note

Measurement of voltage or power-related variables

Connect the main circuit L1, L2, L3 of a current / voltage measuring module to the clamps (L1, L2, L3) of the removable terminal with a 3-core cable. The supply cables may require additional cable protection, for example via short-circuit proof cable or fuses.

Note

When connecting or routing the cables of the individual phases of the main circuit, ensure correct assignment of the phases on the current / voltage measuring module and correct routing direction!

Please note the information in the Operating Instructions. You will also find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro at Operating instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

Removable terminals

The following tables show conductor cross-sections, stripped lengths, tightening torques of conductors and pin assignments of the removable terminals of the current / voltage measuring modules:

Table 12- 21 Conductor cross-sections, stripped lengths, tightening torques of conductors of the 2nd generation 45 mm and 55 mm current / voltage measuring modules

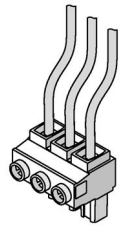
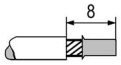
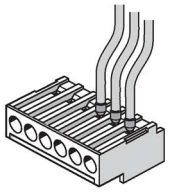
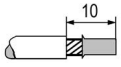
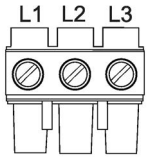
Removable terminals	Screwdriver		Tightening torque
		ISO 2380- A 0.6 x 3.5 (8WA2803)	TORQUE: 4.4 to 5.3 lb.in 0.5 to 0.6 Nm
	Stripped lengths		**Conductor cross section**
		Solid	1x 0.25 - 2.5 mm² / 1x AWG 24 to 14 2x 0.25 - 1 mm² / 2x AWG 24 to 18
		Finely stranded with end sleeve	

Table 12- 22 Conductor cross-sections, stripped lengths, tightening torques of conductors of the 2nd generation 120 mm and 145 mm current / voltage measuring modules

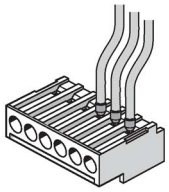
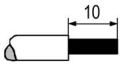
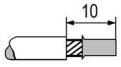
Removable terminals	Screwdriver		Tightening torque
		PZ 2 / ∅ 5 ... 6 mm	TORQUE: 7 to 10.3 lb.in 0.8 ... 1.2 Nm
	Stripped lengths		**Conductor cross section**
		Solid	1x 0.5 - 4 mm² / 1x AWG 20 to 12 2x 0.5 - 2.5 mm² / 2x AWG 20 to 14
		Finely stranded with end sleeve	1x 0.5 - 2.5 mm² / 1x AWG 20 to 14 2x 0.5 - 1.5 mm² / 2x AWG 20 to 16

Pin assignments of the removable terminals of the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules

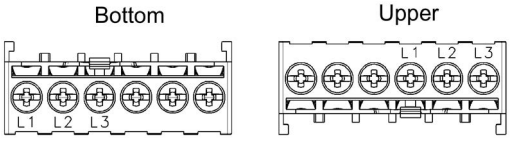


L1, L2, L3: Terminals for connecting the 3-wire cable of the main circuit

Table 12- 23 Conductor cross-sections, stripped lengths, tightening torques of conductors of the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules

Removable terminals	**Screwdriver**		**Tightening torque**
		PZ2 / Ø 5 to 6 mm	TORQUE: 7 to 10.3 lb.in 0.8 to 1.2 Nm
	Stripped lengths		**Conductor cross section**
		Solid	1x 0.5 - 4 mm² / 1x AWG 20 to 12 2x 0.5 - 2.5 mm² / 2x AWG 20 to 14
		Finely stranded with / without end sleeve	1x 0.5 - 2.5 mm² / 1x AWG 20 to 14 2x 0.5 - 1.5 mm² / 2x AWG 20 to 16

Pin assignments of the removable terminals of the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules



L1, L2, L3: Terminals for connecting the 3-wire cable of the main circuit

12.2.5 Measuring current with an external current transformer (interposing transformer)

Functional principle

SIMOCODE pro can be operated with external current transformers. The secondary cables of the current transformer are looped through the three feed-through openings of the current measuring module, and short-circuited. The secondary current of the external current transformer is the primary current of the SIMOCODE pro current measuring module.

Note

If the main circuit is using rated current, the secondary current of the current transformer must be within the setting range of the current measuring module used!

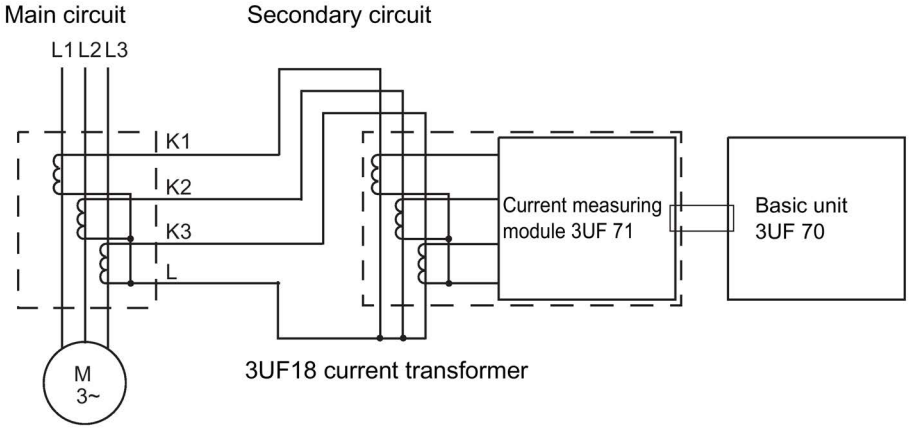


Figure 12-28 Measuring current with an external 3UF18 current transformer

Transformation ratio

The transformation ratio is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Transformation ratio} = \frac{\text{Primary current (external current transformer)}}{\underset{\text{(ext. current transformer)}}{\text{Secondary current}} \times \underset{\text{(current measuring module)}}{\text{number of loops n}}}$$

In the following examples, the displayed actual current flowing does not need to be converted, even when an interposing transformer is used, since SIMOCODE pro only outputs the proportional value, based upon the parameterized current setting I_s.

Technical data of the current transformer

- Secondary current: 1 A
- Frequency: 50 Hz/60 Hz
- Transformer rating: Recommended ≥ 2.5 VA, depending on the secondary current and cable length
- Overcurrent factor: 5P10 or 10P10
- Accuracy class: 1

Example 1

- 3UF1868-3GA00 current transformer:
  - Primary current: 820 A at nominal load
  - Secondary current: 1 A
- SIMOCODE pro with 3UF7100-1AA00-0 current measuring module, current setting 0.3 A to 3 A. This means:
  - The secondary current of the current transformer is 1 A at rated load and is, therefore, within the 0.3 to 3 A setting range of the current measuring module used
  - The current setting I_s to be parameterized in SIMOCODE pro is 1 A.

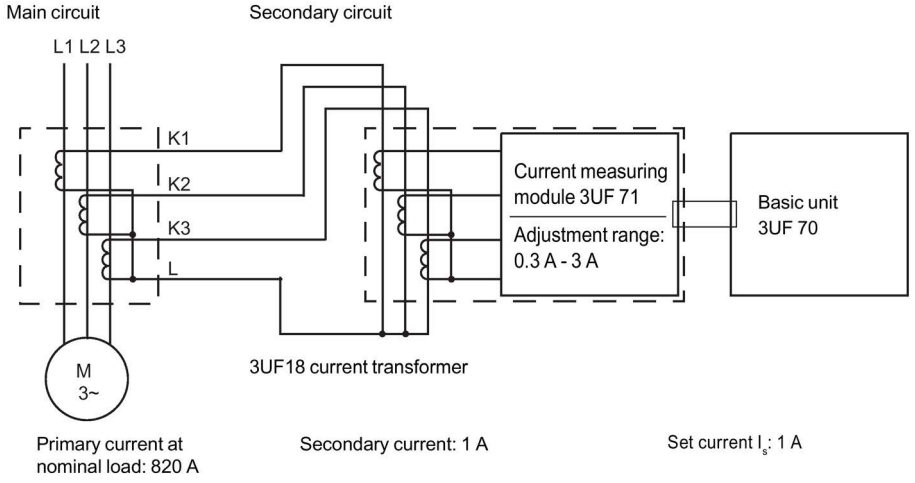


Figure 12-29 Example (1 of 2) for measuring current with an 3UF18 external current transformer

Example 2

- 3UF1868-3GA00 current transformer:
  - Primary current: 205 A at nominal load
  - Secondary current: 0.25 A
- SIMOCODE pro with 3UF7100-1AA00-0 current measuring module, current setting 0.3 to 3 A. This means:
  - The secondary current of the current transformer is 0.25 A at rated load and is, therefore, **not** within the 0.3 to 3 A setting range of the current measuring module used.
  - The secondary current must be boosted by multiple looping of the secondary cables through the feed-through openings of the current measuring module. Double-looping results in 2 x 0.25 A = 0.5 A.
  - The current setting I_s to be parameterized in SIMOCODE pro is 0.5 A.

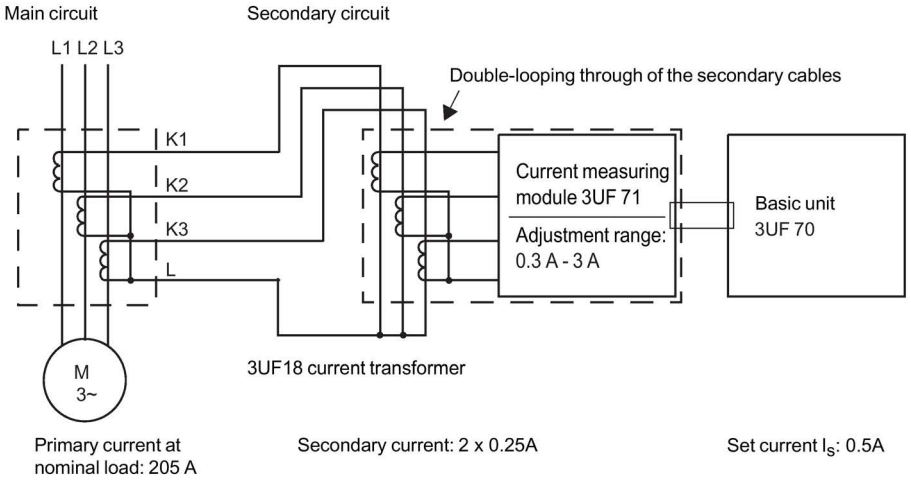


Figure 12-30 Example (2 of 2) for measuring current with an external 3UF18 current transformer

Note

If the SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit as from version *E03* is used, the current setting does not have to be converted but is the same as the nominal primary current.

By additionally entering the transformation ratio of the current transformer (interposing transformer), conversion will be performed automatically in the device.

12.3 System interfaces

12.3.1 Information about the system interfaces

Information about the system interfaces

- SIMOCODE pro system components are connected to each other via the system interfaces. The system interfaces are provided on the front and bottom of the devices.
- Connecting cables of different lengths are available for connecting the system components.
- The PC cables, addressing plugs, and memory modules can be plugged directly into the system interface.
- The system is always configured according to the basic unit. Basic units have two system interfaces:
  - Bottom/left: For outgoing connecting cable to the current or current / voltage measuring module.
  - Front side: For outgoing connecting cables leading to an expansion module or operator panel, or for PC cables, memory modules or addressing plugs.
- Current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules have one system interface:
  - Bottom or front: For incoming connecting cable from the basic unit.
- Expansion modules have two interfaces on the front:
  - Left: For incoming connecting cables from the upstream expansion module or SIMOCODE pro S/SIMOCODE pro V basic unit.
  - Right: For outgoing connecting cables leading to an expansion module or operator panel, and for PC cables, memory modules or addressing plugs.
- Decoupling modules have 2 interfaces on the front:
  - Left: For incoming connecting cable from the upstream expansion module or basic unit.
  - Right: Exclusively for the outgoing connecting cable to the current / voltage measuring module.
- Operator panels have two system interfaces:
  - Front side: For PC cables, memory modules and addressing plugs.
  - Rear side: For incoming connecting cable from the upstream expansion module or basic unit.
- System interfaces not in use are closed with the cover
  (see Closing the system interfaces with the system interface cover (Page 224)).

⚠ WARNING
Hazardous voltage
Connect the system interfaces only when they are fully de-energized!

12.3.2 System interfaces on basic units, expansion modules, decoupling module, current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules

Examples of connection of system components to the system interface and system structure

Close system interfaces not in use with the system interface cover
(see Closing the system interfaces with the system interface cover (Page 224).

WARNING

System interface on the operator panels (degree of protection IP54):

To ensure degree of protection IP 54

- press the cover into the socket as far as it will go when it is used for the first time!
- When fastening the operator panel with the screws supplied, do not apply an excessive tightening torque.

WARNING

Hazardous voltage

Connect the system interfaces only when they are fully de-energized!

The following figure shows an example for SIMOCODE pro C/V of connecting system components to the

system interfaces:

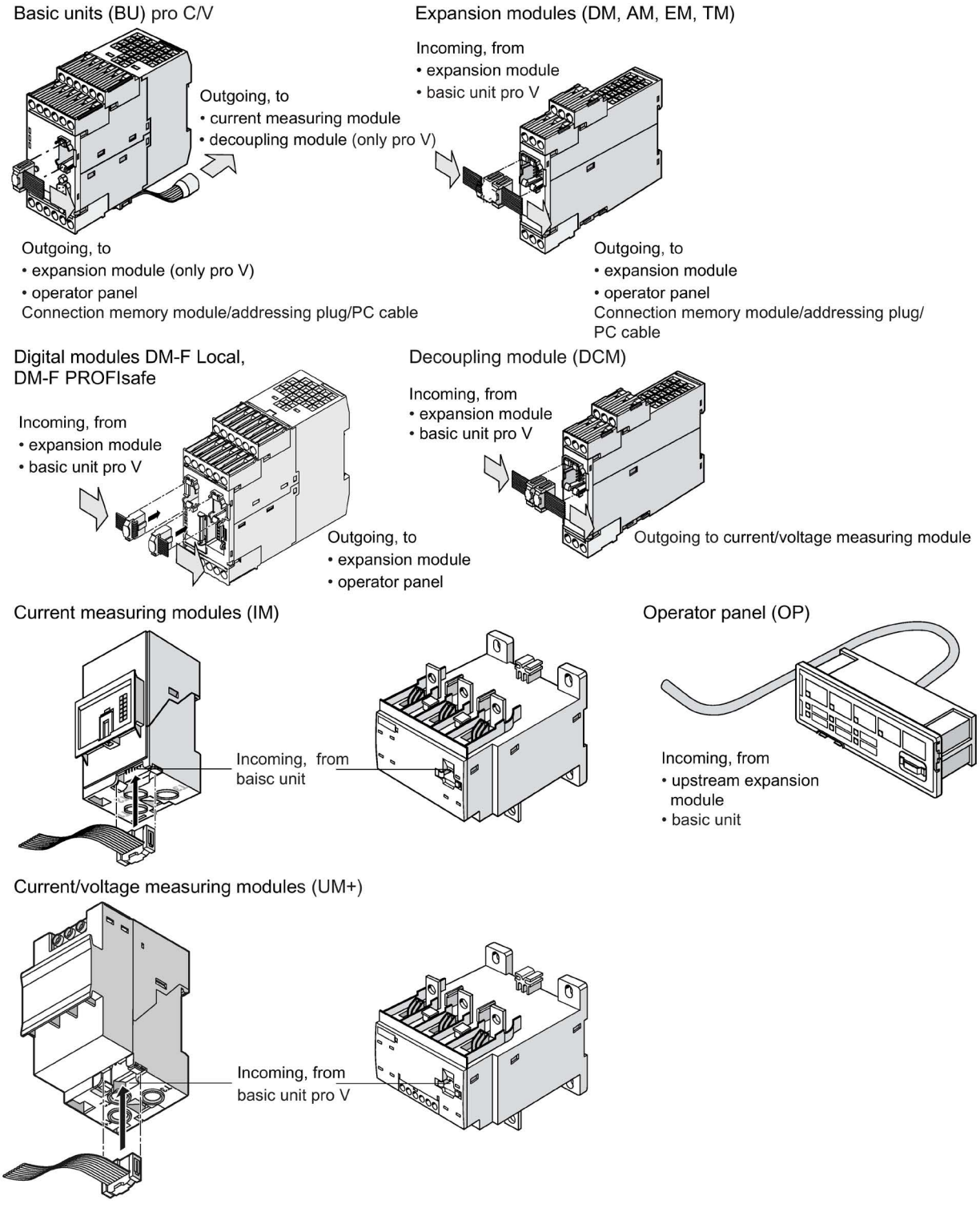


Figure 12-31 Example of system interfaces - SIMOCODE pro C/V with system component UM+

The following figure shows an example for SIMOCODE pro S of connecting system components to the system interfaces:

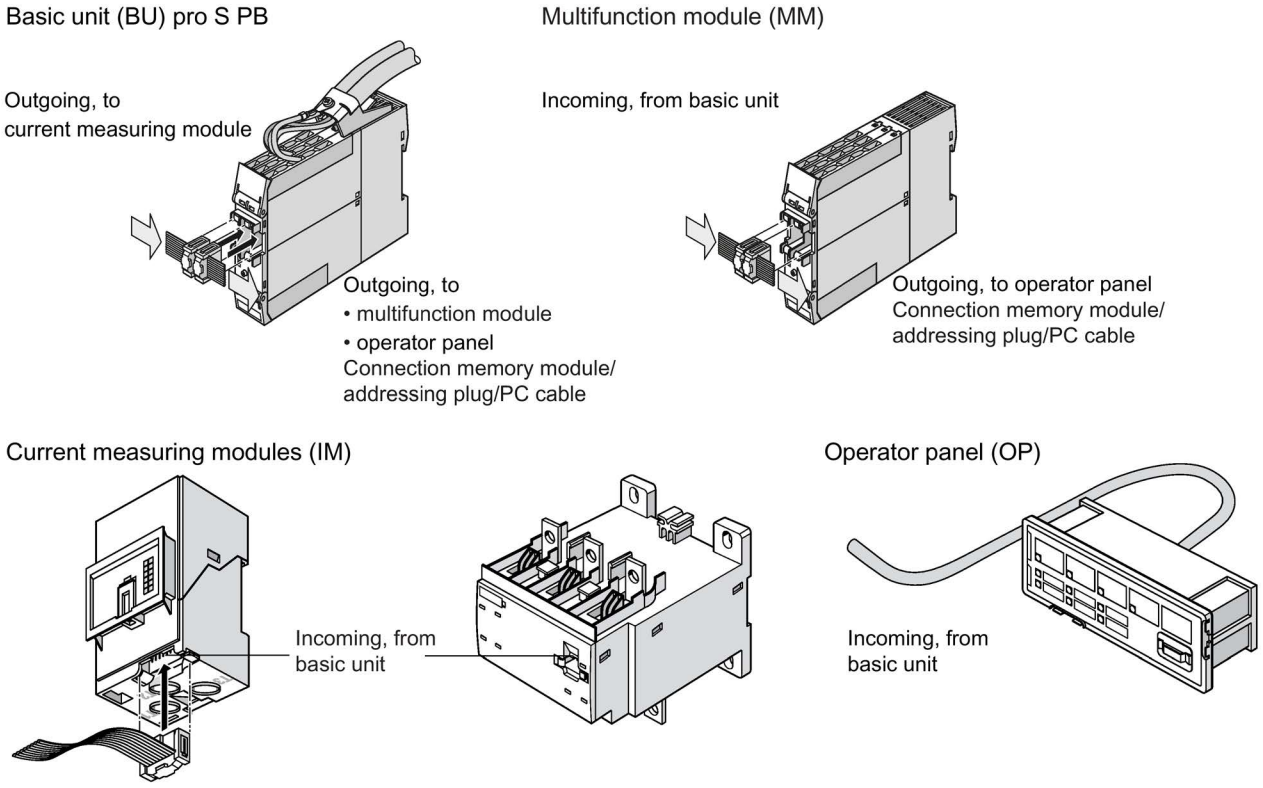


Figure 12-32 Example of system interface - SIMOCODE pro S

The following figure shows an example of a SIMOCODE pro V system installation:

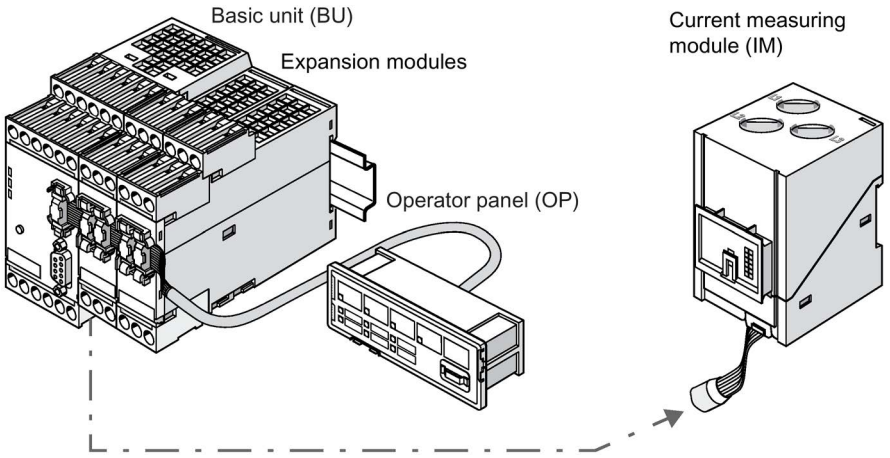


Figure 12-33 Example of SIMOCODE pro V installation

The following figure shows an example of a SIMOCODE pro S system installation:

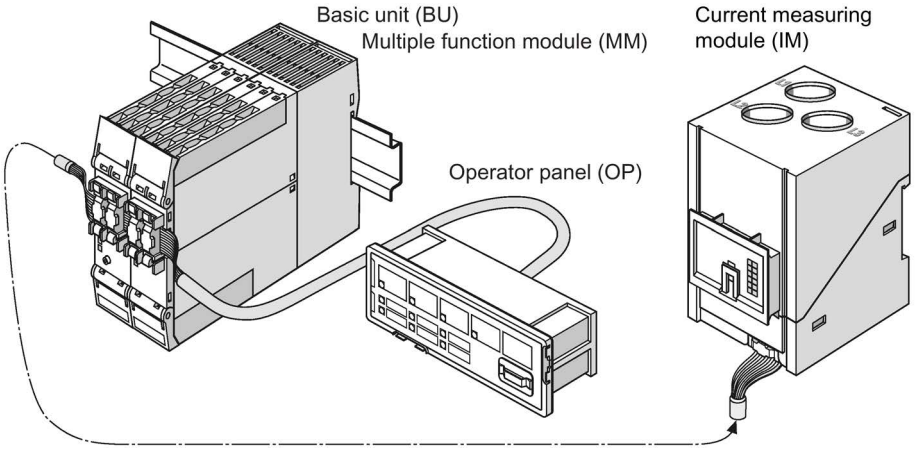


Figure 12-34 Example of SIMOCODE pro S installation

Sequence for connecting cables to the system interface

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 24 Connecting to the system interface

Step	Description
1	Place the plug in the plug shaft, keeping it is as straight as possible. Ensure the locking mechanisms of the connector slot audibly snap onto the connector enclosure.
2	System interfaces not in use can be closed using the system interface cover.

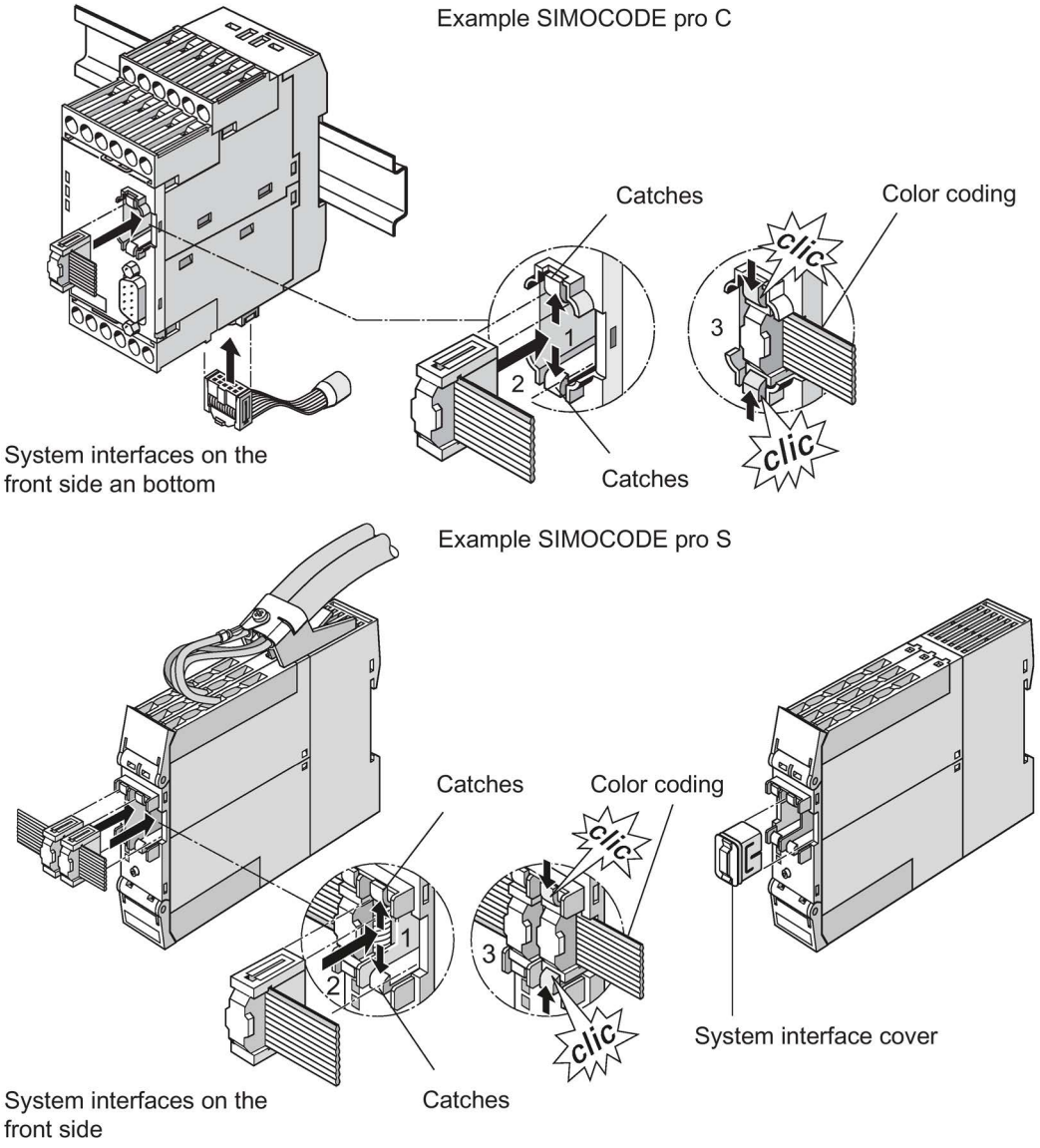


Figure 12-35 Sequence for connecting cables to the system interfaces

Safety guidelines

Note

With SIMOCODE pro C, the system interface on the bottom can only be used for the current measuring module!

Note

Only a current / voltage measuring module may be connected to the right-hand system interface of the decoupling module. Memory modules, addressing plugs or PC cables will not be recognized there.

Note

Observe the color coding of the connecting cable (see diagram)!

12.3.3 System interfaces on the digital modules DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe

See System Manual SIMOCODE pro fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852), Chapter "Mounting and connection."

12.3.4 System interfaces on the operator panel and the operator panel with display

Versions and safety notices

The operator panel has two system interfaces:

- Rear side system interface. This is not normally accessible on an integrated operator panel. The incoming cable from the basic unit or expansion module is always connected here.
- Front system interface. This is normally accessible on an integrated operator panel. Components are only connected directly when needed, and removed again after use. These can be:
  - Memory module
  - Addressing plug
  - PC cable for connecting a PC / PG
  - Cover (if the system interface is not in use).

WARNING

Hazardous voltage

Connect the system interfaces only when they are fully de-energized!

WARNING

System interface on the operator panels (degree of protection IP54):

To ensure degree of protection IP 54

- press the cover into the socket as far as it will go when it is used for the first time!
- When fastening the operator panel with the screws supplied, do not apply an excessive tightening torque.

Sequence for connecting cables to the system interface of the operator panel and the operator panel with display

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 25 Connecting system components to the system interface

Step	Description
1	Place the plug in the plug shaft, keeping it is as straight as possible. Ensure the locking mechanisms of the connector slot audibly snap onto the connector enclosure. The incoming connecting cable is connected on the rear.
2	System interfaces not in use can be closed using the system interface cover.

Note

Throughout connection, you can place the cover on one of the two "park positions" (see figure below).

Note

Observe the color coding of the connecting cable (see diagram)!

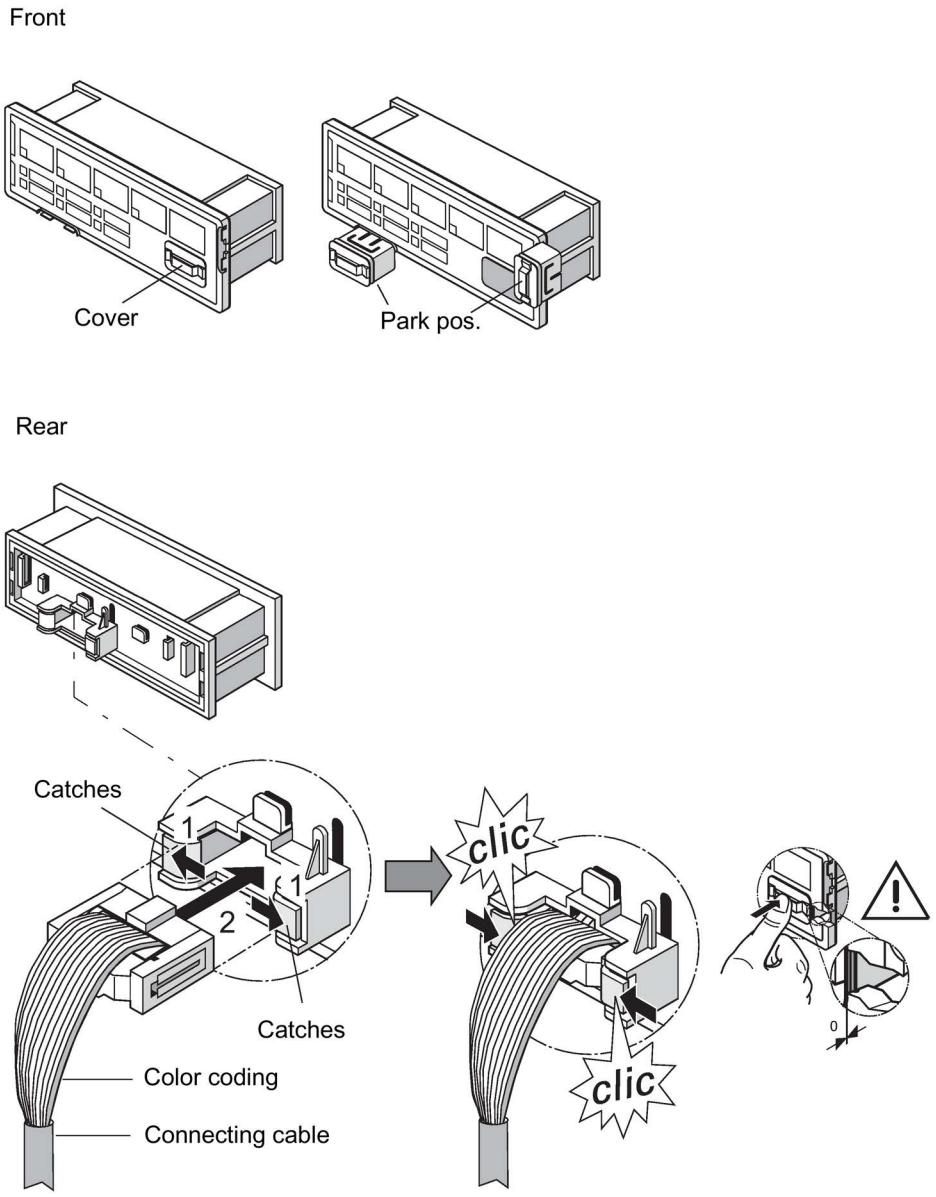
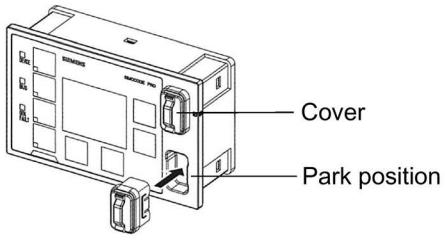


Figure 12-36 Sequence for connecting cables to the system interface of the operator panel

Front



Rear

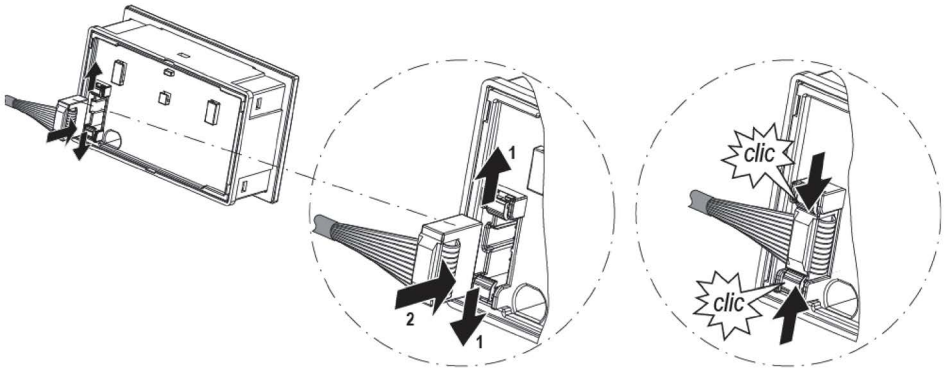


Figure 12-37 Sequence for connecting cables to the system interface of the operator panel with display

12.3.5 Closing the system interfaces with the system interface cover

Examples of closing the system interface with the system interface cover

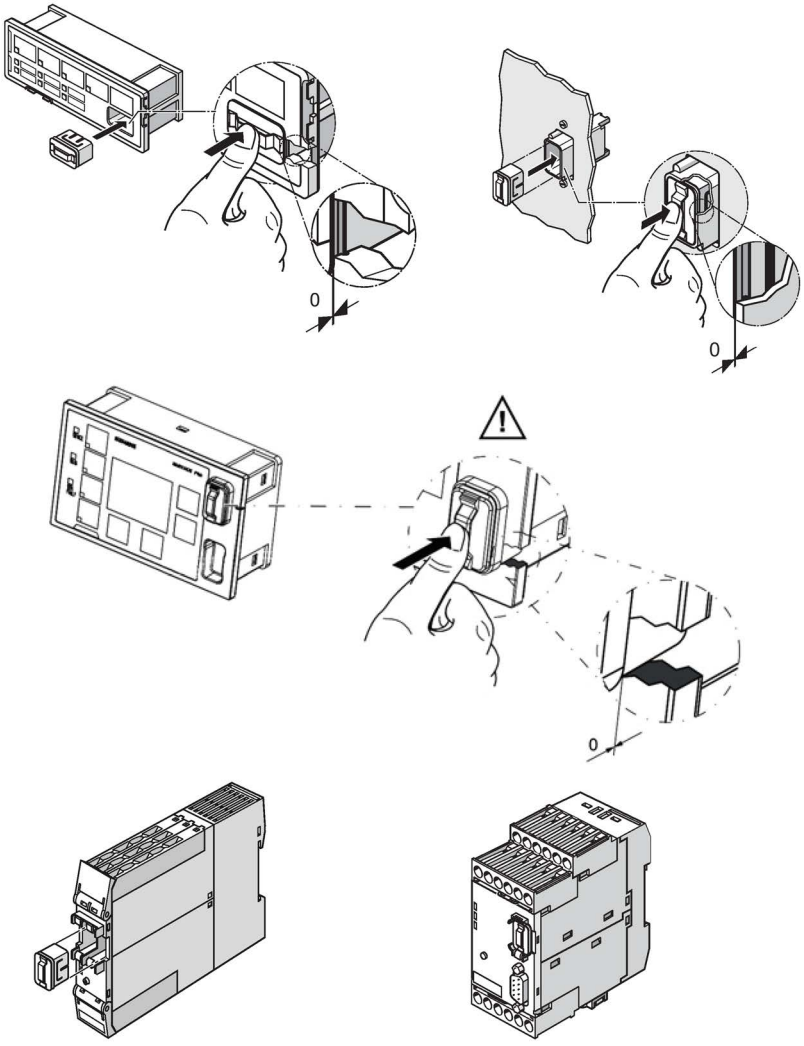


Figure 12-38 Examples of closing the system interface with the system interface cover

WARNING

System interface on the operator panels (degree of protection IP54):

To ensure degree of protection IP 54

- press the cover into the socket as far as it will go when it is used for the first time!
- When fastening the operator panel with the screws supplied, do not apply an excessive tightening torque.

12.3.6 PROFIBUS DP to a 9-pole SUB-D socket

PROFIBUS DP connection

The PROFIBUS DP can be connected to the basic unit.

System	PROFIBUS DP via Sub-D	PROFIBUS DP via terminals A/B
SIMOCODE pro C	12 Mbaud	1.5 Mbaud
SIMOCODE pro S	-	1.5 Mbaud
SIMOCODE pro V	12 Mbaud	1.5 Mbaud

Note

The 9-way SUB-D connection is an alternative to the A / B terminals!

Sequence for connecting PROFIBUS DP to the SIMOCODE pro C and SIMOCODE pro V basic units

Proceed as follows:

Table 12- 26 Sequence for connecting PROFIBUS DP to the basic unit

Step	Description
1	Connect the PROFIBUS DP cable with the 9-pole SUB-D plug to the PROFIBUS DP interface.

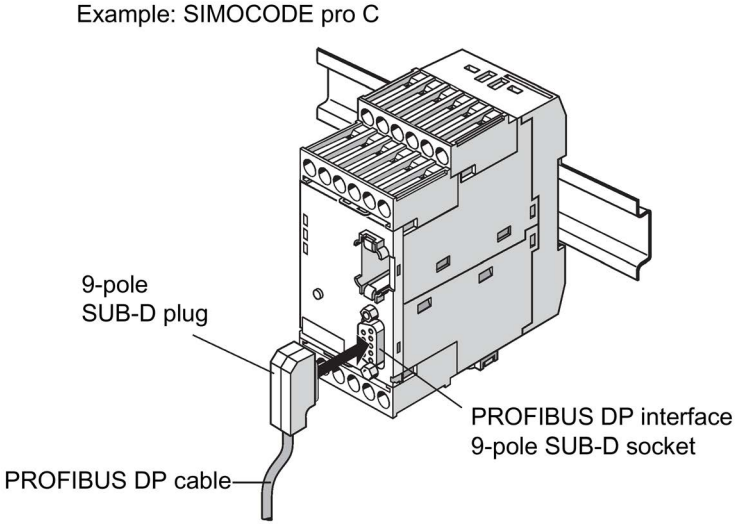


Figure 12-39 Connecting the PROFIBUS DP to the 9-way SUB-D socket

12.3.7 Ethernet cable to RJ45 socket (PROFINET and EtherNet/IP)

The ETHERNET cable is connected to the basic unit.

NOTICE
Ethernet connector Connect using only Industrial Ethernet connectors, e.g. • Siemens IE FC RJ45 PLUG 180 2x2, RJ45 connector (10/100MBIT/S) with robust metal housing and Fast Connect connection method, for IE FC Cable 2x2 180° cable outlet, order number 6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0 or • Siemens IE FC RJ45 PLUG 90 2x2, RJ45 connector (10/100MBIT/S) with robust metal housing and Fast Connect connection method, for IE FC Cable 2x2 90° cable outlet, order number 6GK1901-1BB20-2AA0.

Sequence for connecting ETHERNET to the basic unit

Table 12- 27 Connecting the ETHERNET cable to the basic unit pro V

Step	Description
1	Connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet interface 1 and/or Ethernet interface 2

The following connection options are available:

- with connector IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 on interface 1 and/or interface 2 (left)
- with connector IE FC RJ45 Plug 90 on interface 1 (right).

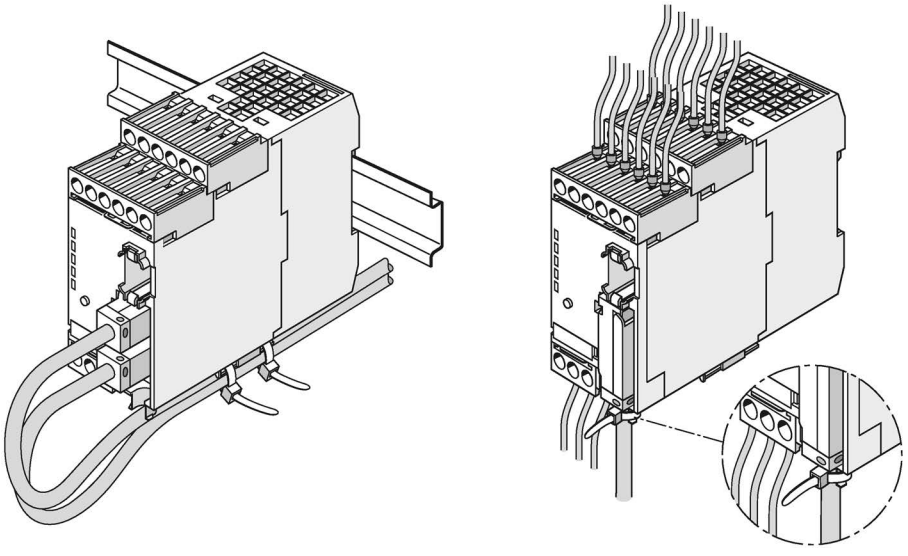


Figure 12-40 Connecting the Ethernet cable to the basic unit pro V

12.3.8 Modbus RTU connection to the SIMOCODE pro device

Connecting Modbus RTU to the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit

Modbus RTU can be connected to the SIMOCODE pro V basic unit both via the connecting terminals as well as via the sub-D connector. The maximum data transfer rate for both connection methods is 57,600 bps.

NOTICE
9-pin sub-D connection The 9-way sub-D connection is an alternative to the A/B terminals!

Connecting Modbus RTU to the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit via the device terminals

Terminal assignment:

Terminal	Modbus signal
A	D0 or DA
B	D1 or DB
SPE	Cable shielding

Connecting Modbus RTU to the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit via the sub-D connector

The pin assignments of the 9-pin sub-D socket for SIMOCODE pro correspond to the assignments defined for PROFIBUS DP. The sub-D connector has the following assignments:

Pin	Modbus signal
8	D0 or DA
3	D1 or DB
5	Cable shielding

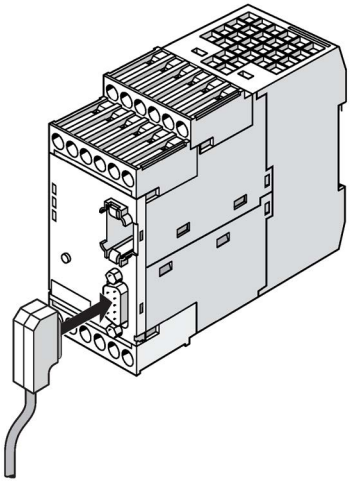


Figure 12-41 Connecting the 9-pin sub-D connector to the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU basic unit

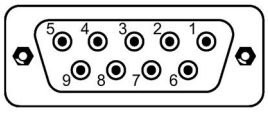


Figure 12-42 PIN assignments 9-pin sub-D socket

SIMATIC Industrial Communication 6ES7972* RS485 connectors can be used to connect Modbus RTU to the sub-D interface thanks to the identical pin assignments to PROFIBUS DP (see RS485 bus connector (https://mall.industry.siemens.com/mall/en/WW/Catalog/Products/9300041?tree=CatalogTree) in the Industry Mall).

NOTICE
Using the PROFIBUS DP connector When the PROFIBUS DP connector is used, the bus terminator does not conform to the Modbus specification. Possible functional constraints resulting from the use of the PROFIBUS DP bus terminator with a MODBUS TCP are the user's responsibility.

You can find recommendations for a suitable layout of the serial communication bus in the document MODBUS over Serial Line - Specification and Implementation Guide - V1.02 (http://www.modbus.org/docs/Modbus_over_serial_line_V1_02.pdf) on the Internet.

12.4 Configuration guidelines

12.4.1 Configuration guidelines on PROFIBUS DP

Definition

The key data contained in this chapter is valid for Siemens products and cables.

PROFIBUS User Organization (PNO) installation guidelines

In the case of electric PROFIBUS networks, note also the PROFIBUS DP / FMS installation guidelines defined by the PROFIBUS user organization. These contain important information about cable routing and the commissioning of PROFIBUS networks.

Publisher:

PROFIBUS-Nutzerorganisation e. V.

Haid-und-Neu-Strasse 7

76131 Karlsruhe / Germany

Phone: ++49 721 965 85 90

Fax: ++49 721 965 85 89

Internet: PROFIBUS user organization (http://www.profibus.com)

Guideline: Order no. 2.111

See also Manual "SIMATIC NET PROFIBUS Networks (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/1971286)."

Application of bus termination modules

The 3UF1900-1K.00 bus termination module is primarily intended for use in MCC motor feeders. It provides correct bus termination, even when MCC plug-in units have been removed. The bus termination module can also be utilized when a standard SUB-D plug cannot be used for the last device on a bus line.

The 3UF1900-1KA00 bus termination module can be connected to either a 220 / 230 V, 380 / 400 V, 115 / 120 V or 24 V AC supply. The 3UF1900-1KB00 type can be used for a 24 V DC supply.

Note

Use of SIMOCODE pro S basic units

In particular, when using SIMOCODE pro S basic units, use the bus termination module for connecting a PROFIBUS segments.

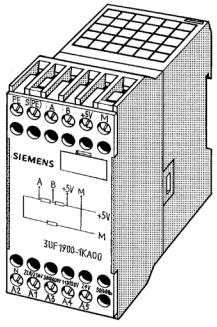


Figure 12-43 Bus termination module

12.4.2 Configuration guidelines on PROFINET

PROFINET installation guidelines

Please also note the PROFINET installation guidelines of the PROFIBUS user organization. These contain important information about planning, installing, and commissioning PROFINET networks.

Publisher:

PROFIBUS-Nutzerorganisation e. V.

Haid-und-Neu-Strasse 7

76131 Karlsruhe / Germany

Phone: +49 (721) 965-8590

Fax: +49 (721) 965-8589

Internet: PI - PROFIBUS & PROFINET International Home (http://www.profibus.com)

PROFINET installation guidelines:

- PROFINET planning

  Version: 1.04

  Order No.: 8.061

  Language: German
- PROFINET installation

  Version: 1.0

  Order No.: 8.071

  Language: German
- PROFINET commissioning

  Version: 1.01

  Order No.: 8.081

  Language: German
- PROFINET commissioning

  Checklist version: 1.01

  Order No.: 8.091

  Language: German

For an overview of the structure and configuration of Industrial Ethernet networks with SIMATIC NET: See also "Industrial Ethernet Networking Manual" system manual (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/27069465)

Commissioning, service, troubleshooting 13

13.1 General information about commissioning and service

Safety guidelines

WARNING

Hazardous voltage!

Can cause electric shock and burns.

Before starting work, disconnect the system and the device from the power supply.

Note

Please also observe the following SIMOCODE pro Operating Instructions (supplied with the devices):

Table 13- 1 Operating Instructions SIMOCODE pro

Device	Article No. Operating Instructions
Basic unit	3ZX1012-0UF70-3BA1
SIMOCODE pro S basic unit	3ZX1012-0UF70-2BA1
Operator panel	3ZX1012-0UF72-1AA1
Operator panel adapter	3ZX1012-0UF78-2BA1
Operator panel with display	3ZX3012-0UF72-2AA1
Digital module	3ZX1012-0UF73-1AA1
DM-F Local fail-safe digital module	3ZX1012-0UF73-1BA1
DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital module	3ZX1012-0UF73-3BA1
Expansion modules	3ZX1012-0UF75-1BA1
Multifunction module	3ZX1012-0UF76-1AA1
Current measuring module	3ZX1012-0UF71-1AA1
Current / voltage measuring module	3ZX1012-0UF71-1BA1
Door adapter	3ZX1012-0UF78-1AA1
Decoupling module	3ZX1012-0UF71-5BA1
Initialization module	3ZX1012-0UF70-2AA1
You will also find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro at Operating Instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)	

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be fulfilled for commissioning and servicing:

- SIMOCODE pro is already installed and wired
- The motor is switched off.

Parameterization methods

You can parameterize SIMOCODE pro as follows:

- With the memory module in which the parameters have already been saved from a basic unit. The memory module is plugged into the system interface. If the memory module is connected to the system interface and the supply voltage returns to the basic unit, the basic unit will be automatically parameterized by the memory module. The parameters can also be downloaded to the basic unit from the memory module by pressing the TEST / RESET button briefly.
- With the SIMOCODE ES software via serial or USB interface: The PC / PG is connected to the system interface with a PC cable.
- With an automation system and/or SIMOCODE ES software via PROFIBUS DP. For this purpose, the PROFIBUS DP cable is connected to the PROFIBUS DP interface of the basic unit.
- With the initialization module in which the parameters have already been saved from a basic unit. The initialization module is permanently installed in the switchboard in a Motor Control Center (MCC). If a withdrawable unit with a SIMOCODE pro S or SIMOCODE pro V basic unit into the MCC and the power supply returns to the basic unit, it will automatically be parameterized by the initialization module.

Commissioning options

There are two commissioning options:

1. Standard case: SIMOCODE pro has not yet been parameterized and has the factory setting
2. SIMOCODE pro has already been parameterized:
   - The parameters have already been loaded into the basic unit.
   - The parameters from a previous application still exist. Check whether the parameters (e.g. the set current) are correct for the new application. Change these accordingly, if necessary.

13.2 Commissioning

13.2.1 Commissioning with PROFIBUS

13.2.1.1 PROFIBUS commissioning steps

Please observe the information in Chapter General information about commissioning and service (Page 233).

To commission SIMOCODE pro, proceed as follows:

Table 13- 2 Commissioning the basic unit

Step	Description
1	Switch on the power supply. In a fault-free state, the following LEDS should light up or flash green: • "Device" (lights up) • "Bus" if PROFIBUS DP is connected (lights up or flashes). Proceed to Step 2. Otherwise, carry out diagnostics according to the LED display. For more information, see Chapter Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFIBUS) (Page 237). Try to rectify the fault.
2	If you wish to make SIMOCODE pro available on the PROFIBUS DP, set the PROFIBUS DP address. For more information, see Chapter Setting the PROFIBUS DP address (Page 236).
3	Parameterize SIMOCODE pro or check the existing parameterization, e.g. with a PC on which SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software is installed. For this, connect the PC / PG to the system interface with the PC cable (see the figure below). **Notice** With SIMOCODE pro C use the system interface on the front and with SIMOCODE pro S use the right-hand system interface.
4	Start SIMOCODE ES.

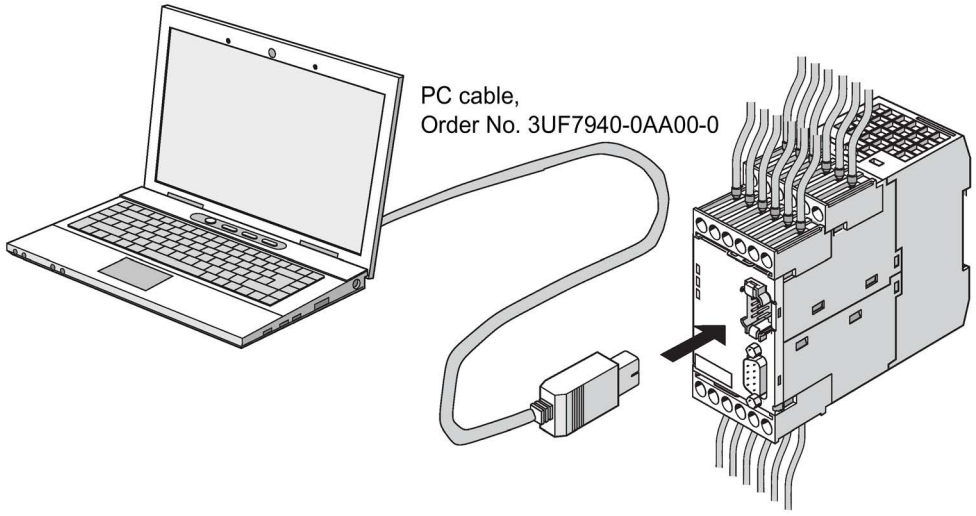


Figure 13-1 Connecting a PC to the basic unit

13.2.1.2 Setting the PROFIBUS DP address

Setting the PROFIBUS DP address via the addressing plug

Note

This setting cannot be made if the TEST / RESET button has been blocked.

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 3 Setting the PROFIBUS DP address via the addressing plug

Step	Description
1	Set the desired valid address on the DIP switch. The switches are numbered. For example, address 21: Put the "16"+"4"+"1" switches in the "ON" position.
2	Plug the addressing plug into the system interface. The "Device" LED lights up yellow.
3	Briefly press the TEST / RESET button. The address you set is now stored. The "Device" LED flashes yellow for approx. 3 seconds.
4	Remove the addressing plug from the system interface.

Setting the PROFIBUS DP address via SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 4 Setting the PROFIBUS DP address via SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Step	Description
1	Switch on the power supply of the basic unit.
2	Connect the USB interface of the PC/PG and the system interface of the basic unit to the Sirius USB PC cable. It may be necessary to install a device driver for the parameterization cable when using the USB PC cable for the first time.
3	Observe the status LED on the basic unit. The "Device" LED should light up green. SIMOCODE pro can be started up.
4a	Setting the address of a device configured in SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) (as started in steps 2 and 3): Under "Parameters → Fieldbus interface", set the "Station address" to the required address and then download the parameterization to the device.
4b	Setting the address of a SIMOCODE device without integration in the current project: In the project navigator, open "Online access" via "Online & Diagnostics". Here, the device currently connected to the serial interface can be accessed using "COM<x> [SIRIUS PtP] → Update accessible devices". If the serial interface COM<x> should indicate a protocol other than SIRIUS PtP, you can change this via the context menu (right mouse button) → Properties. There, under "Parameters → Fieldbus interface", set the "Station address" to the required address and then download the change into the device again.
5	After the parameters have been transferred to the basic unit, the message confirming successful downloading appears under "Info → General" in the status window.

Setting the PROFIsafe address on DM-F PROFIsafe

See Chapter "Safety-related tripping" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

13.2.1.3 Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFIBUS)

The basic units and the operating panel have three LEDs for displaying specific device states:

Table 13- 5 Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel

LED	Status	Display	Description	Corrective measures for faults
Device	Device status	Green	Device ON	-
		Green – flickering	Internal fault	Send the basic unit in for repair
		Yellow	Memory module or addressing plug recognized, TEST/RESET buttons control the memory module or addressing plug	-
		Yellow – flashing	Memory module / addressing plug read in; factory settings restored (duration: 3 s)	_
		Yellow – flickering	Memory module programmed (duration: 3 s)	-
		Red	Incorrect parameterization (also GEN. FAULT on)	Parameterize again, then switch the control voltage off and on again
			Basic unit defective (also GEN. FAULT on)	Replace the basic unit!
		Red – flashing	Memory module, addressing plug or expansion modules defective (also GEN. FAULT on - flashing)	Reprogram/replace the memory module, replace the expansion modules
		Off	Supply voltage too low	Check whether the supply voltage is connected/switched on
Bus	Bus status	Off	Bus not connected or bus fault	Connect the bus or check the bus parameters
		Green – flashing	Baud rate recognized / communication with PC / programming device	-
		Green	Communication with PLC/PCS	-
GEN. FAULT	Fault status	Red	Fault pending; reset has been saved	Rectify fault, e.g., overload
		Red – flashing	Fault pending; reset has not been saved	Clear the error and press Reset; Configuration error: Parameterize again and reset, or switch the control voltage off and on again
		Off	No fault	-

13.2.1.4 Diagnostics via LED display on the modules DM-F Local or DM-F PROFIsafe

See Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

13.2.2 Commissioning with PROFINET

13.2.2.1 PROFINET commissioning steps

Please observe the information in Chapter General information about commissioning and service (Page 233).

To commission SIMOCODE pro, proceed as follows:

Table 13- 6 Commissioning the basic unit

Step	Description
1	Switch on the power supply. In a fault-free state, the following LEDS should light up green: • "Device" (lights up) • "PORT 1 / PORT 2" when the PROFINET cable is connected (lighted or flashing). Continue with step 2. Otherwise, carry out diagnostics according to the LED display. For more information, see Chapter Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFINET) (Page 242). Try to rectify the fault.
2	If you want to make SIMOCODE pro available to PROFINET, you must set the IP parameters and the PROFINET device names. For more information, see Chapter Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name (Page 239).
3	Parameterize SIMOCODE pro or check the existing parameterization, e.g. with a PC on which SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software is installed. For this, connect the PC / PG to the system interface with the PC cable (see the figure below).
4	Start SIMOCODE ES.

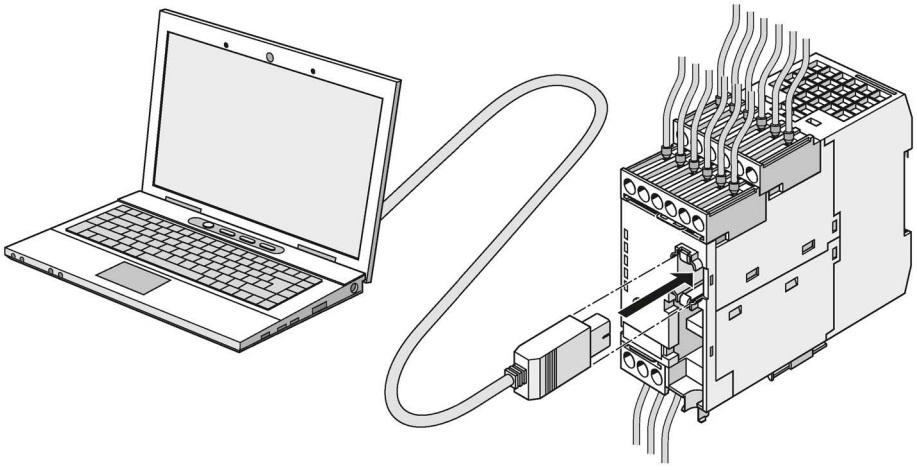


Figure 13-2 Connecting a PC to the basic unit

13.2.2.2 Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name

Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name on a plant-specific basis

The setting of IP parameters and the PROFINET device name is a mandatory step for communication via PROFINET.

These parameters can be set in different ways, depending on the needs of the plant configuration.

A detailed description of these possible approaches can be found in the Chapter "Configuration of further properties of SIMOCODE pro V PN as IO Device" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) via PC cable

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 7 Setting IP parameters and PROFINET device name with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) via PC cable

Step	Description	
1	Plug the PC cable into the system interface.	
2	Start SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal).	
3	1st option: Create new project • In the Project view, create a new project via "Project → New" • Add a new device by double-clicking the button "Add new device" in the project navigator and select the application in the device wizard. The selected application corresponds to the description in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Application examples (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743959). • Check the device configuration and adapt it to the actual configuration, if applicable • Select the communication settings under "Parameters → PROFINET parameters" and set the IP parameters and the device name • Under "Parameters → Motor protection", set the current setting and, if applicable, other parameters • Adapt other parameters in the parameter editor if necessary • Save the project and transfer the device parameters to the device	2nd option: Do not create a new project • In the portal view, click on the button "Online & Diagnostics" • Click "Accessible devices". The "Accessible devices" window opens • Click the "Start search" button • Select a station
4	Select the type of the PG/PC interface (SIRIUS PtP in this case)	
5	Select the PG/PC interface via which the USB PC cable is connected to the computer.	
6	Click on the "Start search" button and load the parameterization into the device. After successfully transferring the parameters into the device (see message in inspector window), the device is ready to operate.	

Step	Description
7	Select a suitable station. You can show the following devices/stations: • devices with the same addresses • all compatible stations • accessible stations
8	Click the "Connect..." button.
9	Open the "PROFINET parameters" dialog box in the parameter editor
10	Activate/deactivate "Overwrite IP parameters in device" and set the IP address, subnet mask, and router as appropriate. The IP parameters are configured with SIMOCODE ES and transferred to the device. In this case, the "Overwrite IP parameters in device" checkbox must be selected. Choose the IP parameters to match the configuration in the automation system. If the IP parameters are assigned by the IO controller in the automation system, no setting is necessary here and the "Overwrite IP parameters in device" checkbox must not be selected [1)]
11	Enter the IP address.
12	Activate the checkbox "Use router" if you want to use a router
13	Enter the IP address (gateway) of the router
14	Select the device name to match the configuration in the automation system
15	Activate the "Overwrite device name in device" checkbox if you want to transfer the device name to the device.
16	If necessary, select the "Web server activated" checkbox
17	If necessary, select the "OPC-UA server activated" checkbox
18	Select the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox if you want to synchronize the unbuffered real-time clock of SIMOCODE pro V PN using the NTP procedure.
19	Enter the NTP server address when the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox is selected.
20	Enter a value for the time shift: -1440 min to +1440 min (default value: 0 min)
21	Enter a value for the cyclic update interval when the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox is selected: 10 to 86400 s (default value: 10 s)
22	Load the data to the basic unit via "Online → Load to device" or click the corresponding button in the menu bar

1)

Note

Initial transfer of device name

The initial transfer of the device name must take place via the SIMOCODE pro system interface, since the device cannot be reached via PROFINET as address settings are missing.

Setting the PROFIsafe address on DM-F PROFIsafe

See Chapter "Safety-related tripping" in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

13.2.2.3 Setting the time manually after switch-on or recovery of the supply voltage

Setting the time with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

If the internal realtime clock of the devices is not automatically synchronized via NTP, you can make the setting manually with SIMOCODE ES.

To do so, follow these steps:

Set the time manually after switch-on or recovery of the supply voltage

Step	Description
1	Go online, e.g. via "Online & Diagnostics" → Accessible devices
2	• Double click "Commissioning" in the project navigator • Click on "Command" • Choose "Set time (=PC time in UTC)

13.2.2.4 Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel (PROFINET)

The basic unit and the operating panel have LEDs for displaying specific device states:

Table 13- 8 Diagnostics via LED display

LED	Status	Display	Description	Corrective measures for faults
Device	Device status	Green	Device ON	_
		Green – flickering	Internal fault	Send the basic unit in for repair
		Yellow	Memory module recognized, TEST/RESET buttons control the memory module	_
		Yellow – flashing	Memory module read in; factory settings configured (duration: 3 s)	_
		Yellow – flickering	Memory module programmed (duration: 3 s)	_
		Red	Device defective (also GEN. FAULT on)	Replace the basic unit!
		Red – flashing	Memory module or expansion modules defective (also GEN. FAULT on - flashing)	Reprogram/replace the memory module, replace the expansion modules
		Off	Supply voltage too low	Check whether the supply voltage is connected/switched on
		Green - flashing	PE energy saving mode active	_
Bus	Bus status	Off	No communication with the IO Controller of the PLC/PCS via PROFINET	Connect the bus or check PROFINET parameters (IP parameters, device name)
		Green	Communication with the IO Controller of the PLC/PCS via PROFINET is active	_
GEN. FAULT	Fault status	Red	Fault pending; reset has been saved	Rectify fault, e.g., overload
		Red – flashing	Fault pending; reset has not been saved	Clear the error and reset. Configuration error: Parameterize again and reset, or switch the control voltage off and on again
		Off	No fault	_
PORT1 (only on basic unit)	Bus status	Green	Ethernet connection available	_
		Off	No Ethernet connection available	Check the Ethernet connection and the wiring
		Flashing	Station flash test for device location active	_
PORT2 (only on basic unit)	Bus status	Green	Ethernet connection available	_
		Off	No Ethernet connection available	Check the Ethernet connection and the wiring
		Flashing	Station flash test for device location active	_

13.2.3 Commissioning with Modbus

13.2.3.1 Commissioning with Modbus RTU

Commissioning sequence of the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit

Table 13- 9 Commissioning sequence of the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit

Step	Description
1	Switch on the power supply. In a fault-free state, the "Device" LED should light up green.
2	Connect the PC / PG to the system interface with the PC cable (see the figure below)
3	Parameterize SIMOCODE pro or check the existing parameterization with a PC on which SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) is installed
4	If automatic baud rate detection is activated, the "Bus" LED flashes green as soon as the setting selected by the controller is found. When the controller exchanges data with the device, the "Bus" LED lights up green.

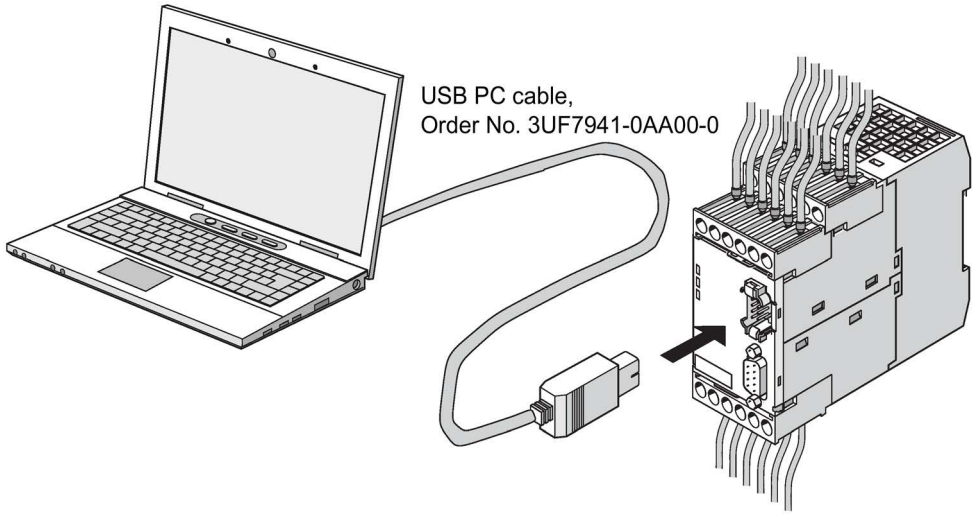


Figure 13-3 Connecting a PC to the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU basic unit

Software for configuring and commissioning

SIMOCODE ES V14 + SP1 (or a later version) is required for full configuring and commissioning. Here, you can choose between:

- SIMOCODE ES Basic: text-oriented configuration of SIMOCODE
- SIMOCODE ES Standard: configuration of SIMOCODE using graphically interconnectable function blocks.

Note

The SIMOCODE ES Premium software does not have more functionality than SIMOCODE ES Standard for SIMOCODE pro Modbus devices, but it can nevertheless be used for commissioning.

The functional principle of SIMOCODE ES software is described in the online help. A "Getting Started" is available on the internet in a multimedia format to help you become more familiar with the software in the initial fundamental steps: Guided Tour (https://www.industry.siemens.com/topics/global/en/tia-portal/tia-portal-framework/tabcardpages/Pages/guided-tour.aspx)

Device addressing

As supplied, the default setting for the device address 126. This must be reassigned when commissioning the devices.

Setting the Modbus RTU address via addressing plug

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 10 Setting the Modbus RTU address via addressing plug

Step	Description
1	Set the desired valid address on the DIP switch. The switches are numbered. Addresses from 1 to 247 can be assigned. For example, address 21: Put the "16"+"4"+"1" switches in the "ON" position. [1)]
2	Plug the addressing plug into the system interface. The "Device" LED lights up yellow.
3	Briefly press the "TEST/RESET" button. The address you set is now stored. The "Device" LED flashes yellow for approx. 3 seconds.
4	Remove the addressing plug from the system interface.

1)

Note

Labeling for the address "128"

Labeling for the address "128" is not available on the addressing plug, that is, the unlabeled switch corresponds to the address "128".

Setting the Modbus RTU address with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 11 Setting the Modbus RTU address with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Step	Description
1	Plug the PC cable into the system interface.
2	Start SIMOCODE ES
3	Select "Online → Go online" or click the "Go online" button

Communication parameters

The following Modbus communication parameters can be set in the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) software under "Parameters → Modbus":

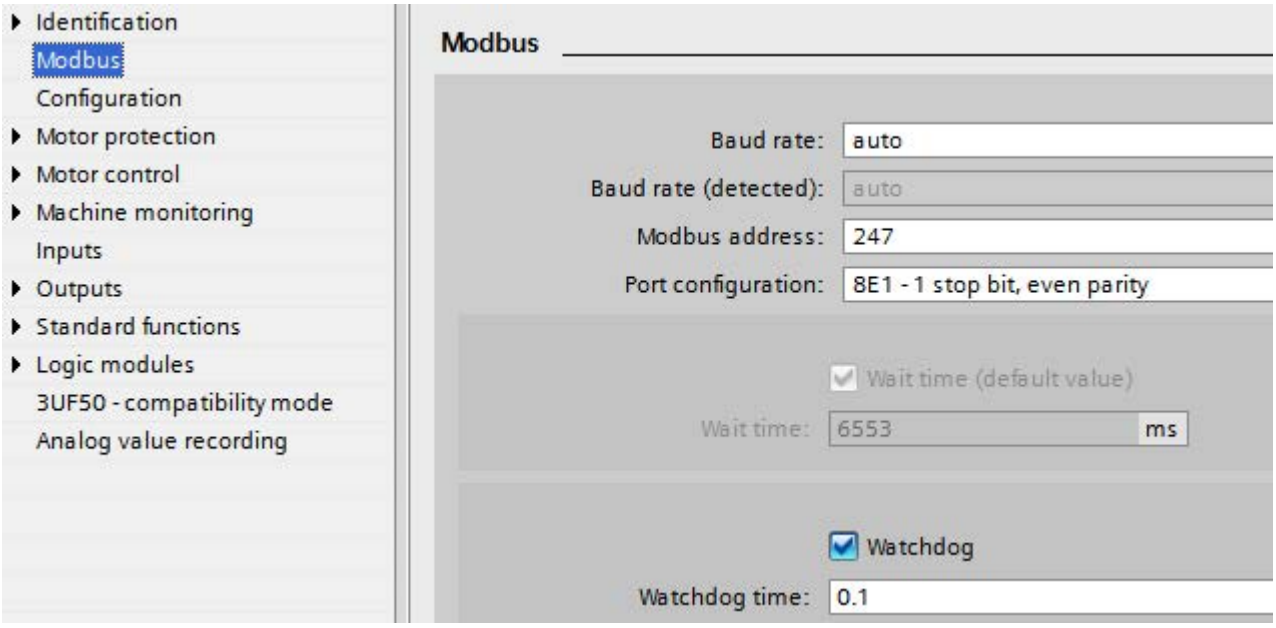


Figure 13-4 Modbus settings

- Baud rate: The baud rate of SIMOCODE pro V Modbus can be set in the range from 0.3 - 57.6 kbps. The parameter setting "auto" activates automatic baud rate detection with which the device autonomously determines the setting selected by the controller. Automatic baud rate search encompasses baud rates in the range from 4.8 ... 57.6 kbps.

  Note

  Automatic baud rate detection

  Use of this function is only possible when the "Watchdog" function is activated.

  Idle time:

  Messages begin and end with a transmission break of at least 3.5 characters. The shortest idle time depends on the baud rate. The following table shows the default values:

Bits per second (bps)	Shortest idle time (ms)
300	128
600	64
1200	32
2400	16
4800	8
9600	4
19200	2
57600	2

- Baud rate (detected): Information about the detected baud rate, if automatic baud rate detection (baud rate = auto) is set.
- Modbus address: Setting the Modbus address for the SIMOCODE device. The address can be set in the range from 1 - 247. As supplied, the address for SIMOCODE pro V devices is set to the default value of 126
- Port configuration: The number of stop bits and the selected parity of the Modbus interface can be set here. The following settings are possible:
  - 8E1 - 1 stop bit, even parity
  - 8O1 - 1 stop bit, odd parity
  - 8N2 - 2 stop bits, no parity
  - 8N1 - 1 stop bit, no parity
- Wait time / wait time (default value): The time duration of the pause between a received request and the reply from SIMOCODE pro can be set with the "Wait time" and "Wait time (default value)" parameters. If the default value of the Modbus specification is to be used, selection of the "Wait time (default value)" parameter is recommended. The "Wait time" parameter is available for free setting. The setting is made in ms. The smallest settable value corresponds to the default value of the Modbus specification. If longer wait times are required, these can be defined using the "Wait time" parameter.

- Watchdog / Watchdog time: Monitoring of the bus communication can be activated with these parameters. This is necessary when automatic baud rate detection is selected, or if the SIMOCODE device were to experience a fault if the bus communication fails. If the watchdog is activated, SIMOCODE monitors whether a valid read or write access to the device occurs within the set watchdog time. If this is not the case, SIMOCODE begins a new search for a valid baud rate if automatic rate detection is set. In addition, a "Fault - bus" is generated if the "Watchdog → Bus monitoring" parameter is also activated.

Bus and controller monitoring on Modbus

With the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus basic unit, both the bus communication and the controller function can be monitored. The functions "Bus monitoring" and "PLC / PCS monitoring" are available for this purpose.

The functionality differs slightly from that described for SIMOCODE pro PROFIBUS.

- Bus monitoring: With this type of monitoring, the "Fault - bus" fault is generated if
  - "Bus monitoring" is active
  - In the "Remote" operating mode (mode selector S1 = 1 and S2 = 1), cyclic data access to Modbus registers between the PLC and SIMOCODE pro is interrupted for longer than the set bus monitoring time, e.g. as the result of an interruption of the Modbus connection.
  - The "Status - bus o. k." can always be evaluated. If SIMOCODE pro is cyclically exchanging data with the PLC, "Status - Bus o. k." is set to "1".
- PLC / PCS monitoring: With this type of monitoring, the "Fault - PLC/PCS" message is generated if
  - "PLC/PCS monitoring" is active
  - The input "PLC/PCS monitoring - input" switches to logic zero when in the "Remote" operating mode (mode selector S1=1 and S2=1). "PLC/PCS monitoring - input" is connected preferably with the bit "Cyclic receive - bit 0.7".
  - The status "PLC/PCS in Run" can always be evaluated. If SIMOCODE pro is in cyclic data exchange with the PLC, and the input "PLC/PCS monitoring" is set, "PLC/PCS in Run" is set to "1".

You can find the further description of the "Watchdog" function block (PLC/PCS monitoring) in Chapter "Watchdog" (PLC/PCS monitoring) in the manual Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958).

13.2.4 Commissioning with EtherNet/IP

13.2.4.1 EtherNet/IP commissioning steps

Please observe the information in Chapter General information about commissioning and service (Page 233).

To commission SIMOCODE pro, proceed as follows:

Table 13- 12 Commissioning the basic unit

Step	Description
1	Switch on the power supply. In a fault-free state, the following LEDS should light up green: • "Device" (lights up) • "PORT 1 / PORT 2" when the Ethernet cable is connected (lighted or flashing). Continue with step 2. Otherwise, carry out diagnostics according to the LED display. For more information, see Chapter Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel with EtherNet/IP (Page 252). Try to rectify the fault.
2	If you want to make SIMOCODE pro available to EtherNet/IP, you must set the IP parameters and the device name. For more information, see Chapter Setting IP parameters and EIP device name (Page 249).
3	Parameterize SIMOCODE pro or check the existing parameterization, e.g. with a PC on which SIMOCODE ES software is installed. For this, connect the PC / PG to the system interface with the PC cable (see the figure below).
4	Start SIMOCODE ES.

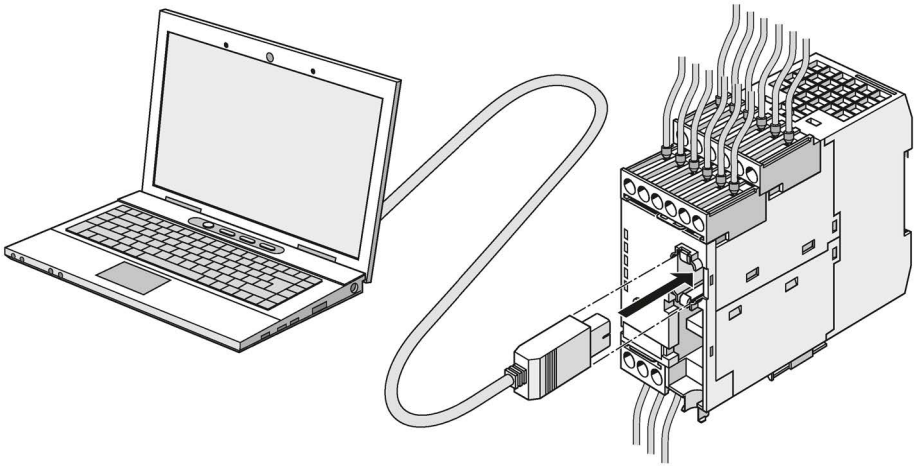


Figure 13-5 Connecting a PC to the basic unit

13.2.4.2 Setting IP parameters and EIP device name

Setting IP parameters and device name on a plant-specific basis

For communication via EtherNet/IP it is mandatory to set the IP parameters and the device name.

These parameters can be set in different ways, depending on the needs of the plant configuration.

Setting IP parameters and EtherNet/IP device name with SIMOCODE ES via PC cable

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 13 Setting IP parameters and EtherNet/IP device name with SIMOCODE ES via PC cable

Step	Description	
1	Plug the PC cable into the system interface	
2	Start SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)	
3	1st option: Create new project • In the Project view, create a new project via "Project → New" • Add a new device by double-clicking the button "Add new device" in the project navigator and select the application in the device wizard. The selected application corresponds to the description in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Application examples (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743959). • Check the device configuration and adapt it to the actual configuration, if applicable • Select the communication settings under "Parameters → Ethernet parameters" and set the IP parameters and the device name • Under "Parameters → Motor protection", set the current setting and, if applicable, other parameters • Adapt other parameters in the parameter editor if necessary • Save the project and transfer the device parameters to the device	2nd option: Do not create a new project • In the portal view, click on the button "Online & Diagnostics" • Click "Accessible devices". The "Accessible devices" window opens • Click the "Start search" button • Select a station
4	Select the type of the PG/PC interface (SIRIUS PtP in this case)	
5	Select the PG/PC interface via which the USB PC cable is connected to the computer.	
6	Click on the "Start search" button and load the parameterization into the device. After successfully transferring the parameters into the device (see message in inspector window), the device is ready to operate.	
7	Select a suitable station. You can show the following devices/stations: • devices with the same addresses • all compatible stations • accessible stations	
8	Click the "Connect..." button.	

Step	Description
9	Open the "Ethernet parameters" dialog box in the parameter editor
10	Select "Use BOOTP/DHCP" if the IP parameters are obtained from a DHCP server and assigned to the IO Device. If the DHCP mode is selected, SIMOCODE pro immediately receives an IP address if the DHCP server is available in the same network. Otherwise the device searches for an IP address. If SIMOCODE pro finds no IP address when setting up an online connection or during a loading operation, because no DHCP server is available in the network, SIMOCODE ES assigns the device a temporary IP address. If the DHCP mode is selected, SIMOCODE pro accepts this temporary address as if it came from a DHCP server. There are two options for deactivating a temporary IP address again: • Restart the device by means of "Commissioning → Command → Restart/Cold start" • Switch the device off and on again. After the restart, the device runs in the DHCP mode and looks for an IP address again.
11	Activate/deactivate "Overwrite IP parameters in device" and set the IP address, subnet mask, and router as appropriate. The IP parameters are configured with SIMOCODE ES and transferred to the device. In this case, the "Overwrite IP parameters in device" checkbox must be selected. Choose the IP parameters to match the configuration in the automation system. If the IP parameters are assigned by the IO controller in the automation system, no setting is necessary here and the "Overwrite IP parameters in device" checkbox must not be selected [1)]
12	Enter the IP address.
13	Activate the checkbox "Use router" if you want to use a router
14	Enter the IP address (gateway) of the router
15	Select the EtherNet/IP device name to match the configuration in the automation system.
16	Activate the "Overwrite device name in device" checkbox if you want to transfer the device name to the device.
17	If necessary, select the "Web server activated" checkbox
18	Select the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox if you want to synchronize the unbuffered real-time clock of SIMOCODE pro V EIP using the NTP procedure.
19	Enter the NTP server address when the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox is selected.
20	Enter a value for the time shift: -1440 min to +1440 min (default value: 0 min)
21	Enter a value for the cyclic update interval when the "Activate NTP synchronization" checkbox is selected: 10 to 86400 s (default value: 10 s)
22	Load the data to the basic unit via "Online → Load to device" or click the corresponding button in the menu bar

1)

Note

Initial transfer of device name

The initial transfer of the device name must occur via the SIMOCODE pro system interface, since the device is not yet accessible via EtherNet/IP due to the missing address settings.

13.2.4.3 Set the time manually after switch-on or recovery of the supply voltage

Setting the timer with SIMOCODE ES

If the internal realtime clock of the devices is not automatically synchronized via NTP, you can make the setting manually with SIMOCODE ES.

To do so, follow these steps:

Set the time manually after switch-on or recovery of the supply voltage

Step	Description
1	Start SIMOCODE ES
2	Establish an online connection.
3	Set the device-internal real time clock via "Commissioning → Command → Set time (= PC time in UTC)"

13.2.4.4 Diagnostics via LED display on the basic unit and on the operator panel with EtherNet/IP

The basic unit and the operating panel have LEDs for displaying specific device states:

Table 13- 14 Diagnostics via LED display

LED	Status	Display	Description	Corrective measures for faults
Device	Device status	Green	Device ON	_
		Green flickering	Internal fault	Send back the basic unit!
		Yellow	Memory module recognized, TEST/RESET buttons control the memory module	_
		Yellow flashing	Memory module read in; factory settings configured (duration: 3 s)	_
		Yellow flickering	Memory module programmed (duration: 3 s)	_
		Red	Device defective (also GEN. FAULT on)	Replace the basic unit!
		Red – flashing	Memory module or expansion modules defective (also GEN. FAULT on - flashing)	Reprogram/replace the memory module, replace the expansion modules
		Off	Supply voltage too low	Check whether the supply voltage is connected/switched on
		Green flashing	PE energy saving mode active	_
Bus	Bus status	Off	No communication with a controller active	Connect the bus or check Ethernet parameters (IP parameters, device name)
		Green flashing	Communication with a controller active (e.g. Rockwell Automation controller)	_
GEN. FAULT	Fault status	Red	Fault pending; reset has been saved	Rectify fault, e.g., overload
		Flashing red	Fault pending; reset has not been saved	_
		Off	No fault	_
PORT1 (only on basic unit)	Bus status	Green	Ethernet connection available	_
		Off	No Ethernet connection available	Check the Ethernet connection and the wiring
		Flashing	Station flash test for device location active	_
PORT2 (only on basic unit)	Bus status	Green	Ethernet connection available	_
		Off	No Ethernet connection available	Check the Ethernet connection and the wiring
		Flashing	Station flash test for device location active	_

13.3 Service

13.3.1 Preventive maintenance

Preventive maintenance - general information

Preventive maintenance is an important step towards avoiding faults and unforeseen costs. Industrial plants require regular professional maintenance, for example, to avoid production losses due to plant downtimes. Preventive maintenance ensures that all components are always kept in perfect working order.

Reading out statistical data

SIMOCODE pro makes statistical data available that can, for example, be read out with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) under **Commissioning → Service Data / Statistical Data**. For example, based on "Motor operating hours" and "Number of starts," you can decide whether motor and / or motor contactors should be replaced.

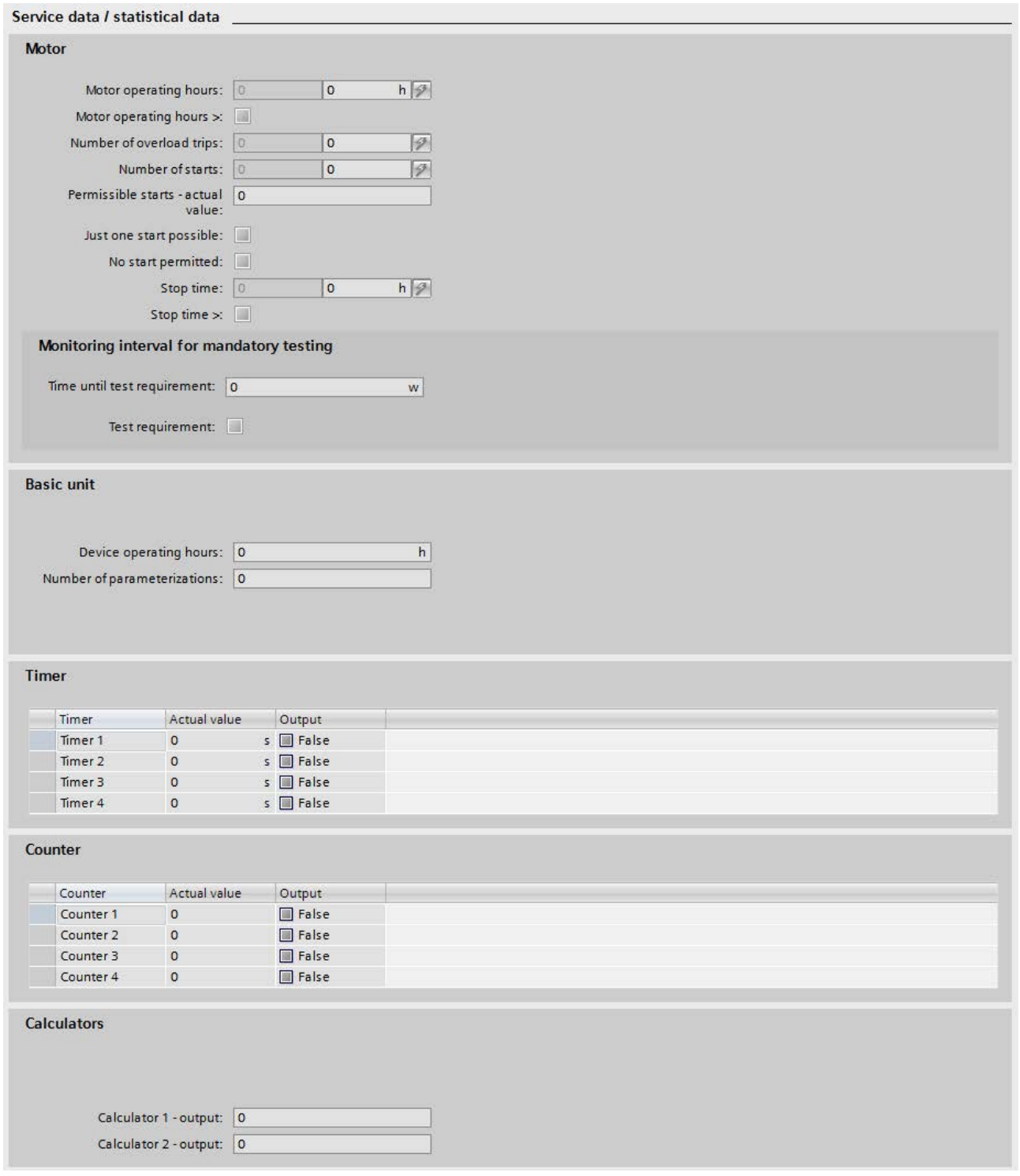


Figure 13-6 Reading out statistical data

13.3.2 Backing up and saving parameters

Always save the parameters in the memory module or in a SIMOCODE ES file. This particularly applies if you replace a basic unit, or if you wish to transfer data from one basic unit to another.

Saving parameters from the basic unit into the memory module

Note

This function will not be available if the TEST / RESET button has been disabled.

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 15 Saving the parameters into the memory module

Step	Description
1.	Plug the memory module into the system interface. The "Device" LED lights up yellow for approx. 10 seconds. During this time, press the "TEST / RESET" button for approx. 3 seconds. The parameters will be saved in the memory module. After successful data transfer, the "Device" LED flickers yellow for approx. 3 seconds.
2.	If necessary, unplug the memory module from the system interface.

Saving parameters from the memory module into the basic unit

Note

This function will not be available if the TEST / RESET button has been disabled.

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 16 Saving parameters from the memory module into the basic unit

Step	Description
1.	Plug the memory module into the system interface. The "Device" LED lights up yellow for approx. 10 seconds. During this time, briefly press the "TEST / RESET" button. The parameters will be transferred to the basic unit. After successful data transfer, the "Device" LED flashes yellow for approx. 3 seconds.
2.	If necessary, unplug the memory module from the system interface.

Note

If the memory module is plugged in, the parameters will be transferred from the memory module to the basic unit when the supply voltage is switched on.

Saving parameters from the basic unit to a SIMOCODE ES file

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 17 Saving parameters to a SIMOCODE ES file

Step	Description
1.	Plug the PC cable into the system interface.
2.	Start SIMOCODE ES.
3.	Create a new project via "Create new project".
4.	Switch to the project view.
5.	Go online, e.g. via "Online & Diagnostics" in the project navigator
6.	Open the "Online access" menu in the project navigator and select the suitable interface by double-clicking it.
7.	Double-click on "Update accessible devices".
8.	Select "Online → Upload device as new station (hardware and software) ...".
9.	Save the project.

Note

This function will not be available if the TEST / RESET button has been disabled.

Saving parameters from a SIMOCODE ES file into the basic unit

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 18 Saving parameters from a SIMOCODE ES file into the basic unit

Step	Description
1.	Plug the PC cable into the system interface.
2.	Start SIMOCODE ES.
3.	Open a project.
4.	Select Online → Extended online connection.
5.	Select the type of the PG/PC interface (SIRIUS PtP or PN/IE).
6.	Select the PG/PC interface.
7.	Click the "Start search" button. A search is made for compatible stations.
8.	Select a station.
9.	Load the parameters to the device via "Online → Load to device".

13.3.3 Replacing SIMOCODE pro components

Safety guidelines

WARNING

Replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules

The main power for the feeder and the supply voltage for the basic unit must be switched off before replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules.

Note

Please observe the information contained in the Operating Instructions!

You will also find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro at Operating Instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals)

Note

It is not necessary to detach the wiring from the removable terminals to replace the components!

Replacing the basic unit

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 19 Replacing the basic unit

Step	Description
1.	Save the parameters. For information on this, see Chapter Backing up and saving parameters (Page 255).
2.	Switch off the main power for the unit feeder and the power supply for the basic unit.
3.	Withdraw the PC cable if necessary, then remove the cover or the connecting cable from the system interface.
4.	Withdraw the removable terminals. You do not need to detach the wiring.
5.	Dismantle the basic unit.
6.	Withdraw the removable terminals from the new basic unit.
7.	Mount the new basic unit.
8.	Connect the wired, removable terminals.
9.	Connect the cables to the system interfaces.
10.	Switch on the supply voltage for the basic unit.
11.	Save the parameters into the basic unit. For information on this, see Chapter Backing up and saving parameters (Page 255).
12.	Switch on the main power for the unit feeder.

Replacing an expansion module or a decoupling module

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 20 Replacing an expansion module or a decoupling module

Step	Description
1.	Switch off the main power for the feeder and switch off the power supply for the basic unit and the DM-F.
2.	Withdraw the PC cable if necessary, then remove the cover or the connecting cable from the system interface.
3.	Withdraw the removable terminals. You do not need to detach the wiring.
4.	Remove the expansion module or decoupling module.
5.	Withdraw the removable terminals from the new basic expansion module or decoupling module.
6.	Install the new expansion module or decoupling module.
7.	Connect the wired, removable terminals.
8.	Connect the cables to the system interfaces.
9.	Switch on the supply voltage for the basic unit.
10.	Switch on the main power for the unit feeder.

Replacing a DM-F

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 21 Replacing a DM-F

Step	Description
1	First, switch off the main power for the feeder and then the supply voltage for the basic unit and the DM-F.
2	Withdraw the PC cable if necessary, then remove the cover or the connecting cable from the system interface.
3	Withdraw the removable terminals. You do not need to detach the wiring.
4	Dismantle the DM-F.
5	Withdraw the removable terminals from the new DM-F.
6	Mount the new DM-F.
7	Connect the wired, removable terminals.
8	Connect the cables to the system interfaces.
9	DM-F PROFIsafe only: Set the DIP switches for the PROFIsafe address according to the configuration in the F-controller (see Chapter "Configuring the DM-F PROFIsafe and integrating it into the fail-safe automation system" in the System Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro SAFETY (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852)).
10	Switch on the power supply for the DM-F and the basic unit.
11	DM-F Local only Configure the DM-F Local correctly (see Chapter "Configuring the DM-F Local" in the System Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro SAFETY (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852))
12	Switch on the main power for the unit feeder.

Replacing the current measuring module and the current / voltage measuring module

⚠ WARNING
Replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules The main power for the feeder and the supply voltage for the basic unit must be switched off before replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules.

Proceed as follows:

Table 13- 22 Replacing the current measuring module and the current / voltage measuring module

Step	Description
1	Switch off the main power for the unit feeder and the power supply for the basic unit.
2	Pull out the connecting cable from the system interface.
3	Remove the removable terminal from the module as illustrated below (current / voltage measuring modules only).
4	Disconnect the three cables of the three phases of the main circuit.
5	Replace the module (see Chapter Mounting of current measuring modules (Page 170) and Chapter Mounting the current / voltage measuring modules (Page 171)).
6	Connect the three cables of the main circuit, leading them through the feed-hole openings.
7	Plug the removable terminals onto the module (current / voltage measuring modules only).
8	Connect the cable to the system interface.
9	Switch on the supply voltage for the basic unit.
10	Switch on the main power for the unit feeder.

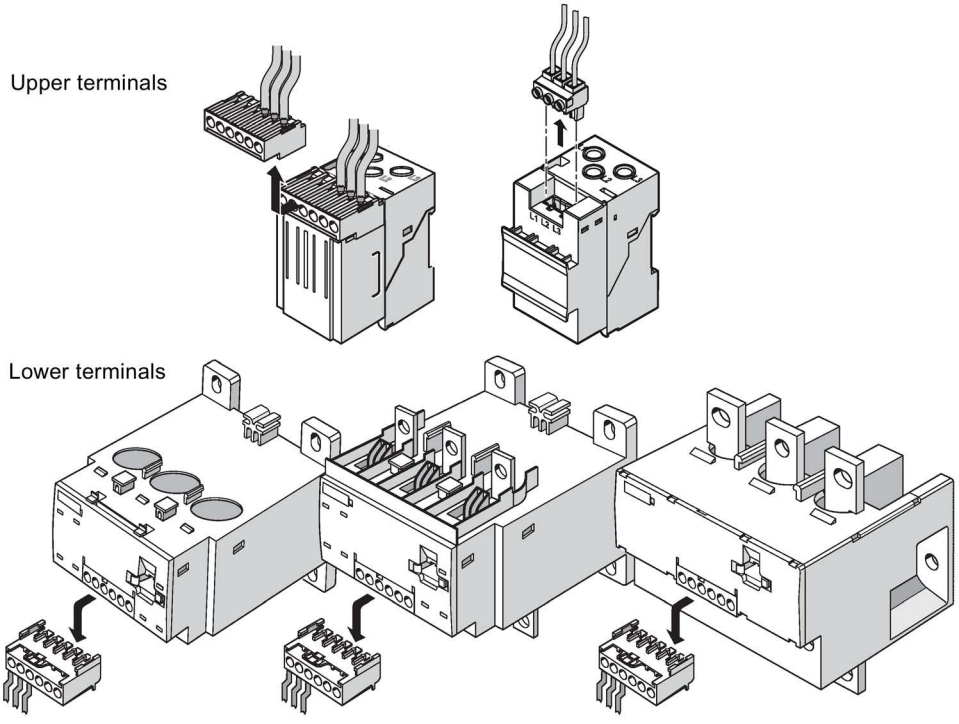


Figure 13-7 Replacing current / voltage measuring modules

Replacing a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module (UM) with a 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module (UM+)

⚠ WARNING
Replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules The main power for the feeder and the supply voltage for the basic unit must be switched off before replacing current measuring modules and current / voltage measuring modules.

The following table shows which 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module replaces a 1st generation current / voltage measuring module:

1st generation current / voltage measuring module		2nd generation current / voltage measuring module
⚠		
3UF7110-1AA00-0, I_e = 0.3 to 3 A	→	3UF7110-1AA01-0, I_e = 0.3 to 4 A
3UF7111-1AA00-0, I_e = 2.4 to 3 A	→	3UF7110-1AA01-0, I_e = 0.3 to 4 A
3UF7111-1AA00-0, I_e = 3.0 to 25 A	→	3UF7111-1AA01-0, I_e = 3 to 40 A
3UF7112-1AA00-0, I_e = 10 to 100 A	→	3UF7112-1AA01-0, I_e = 10 to 115 A

13.3.4 Exchanging a 3UF52 operator panel for a 3UF720 operator panel

To exchange a 3UF52 operator panel for the smaller 3UF720 operator panel, proceed as follows:

Table 13- 23 Exchanging a 3UF52 operator panel for a 3UF720 operator panel

Step	Description
1	Unscrew the four mounting bracket screws and remove the 3UF52 operator panel from the front panel or switchgear cabinet door.
2	Ensure that the dimensions of the cutout in the front panel or cabinet door measure 91.5 + 0.5 mm (width) and 54.5 + 0.5 mm (height) (see figure).
3	Slide the seal provided onto the operator panel adapter (see figure).
4	Position the operator panel adapter in the cutout.
5	Position the operator panel in the adapter.
6	Snap the four mounting brackets onto the operator panel.
7	Lock the operator panel in position by tightening the four mounting bracket screws (see figure and safety information!).

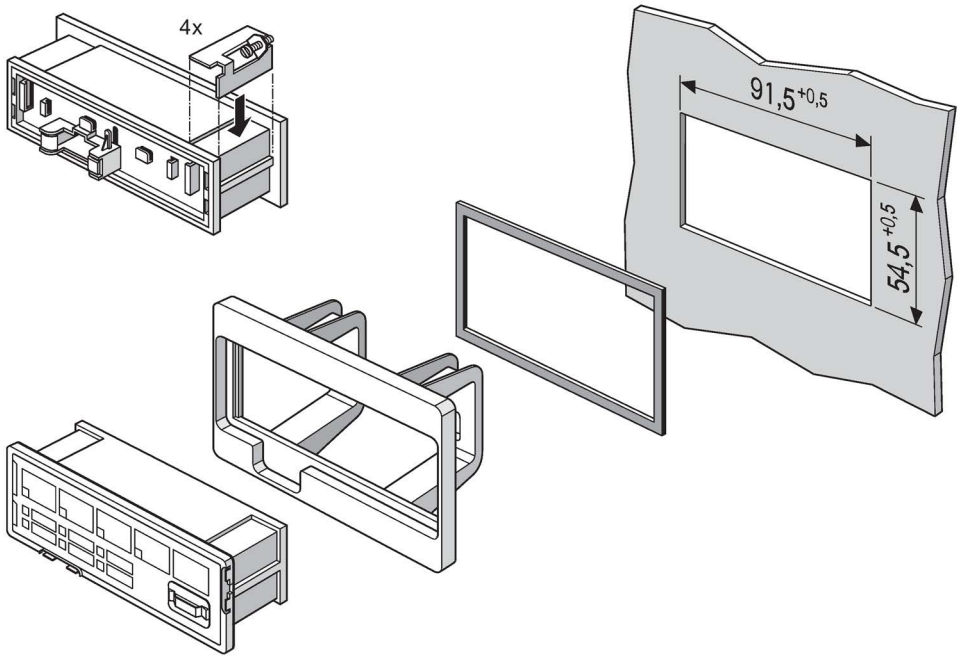


Figure 13-8 Mounting the operator panel adapter (1)

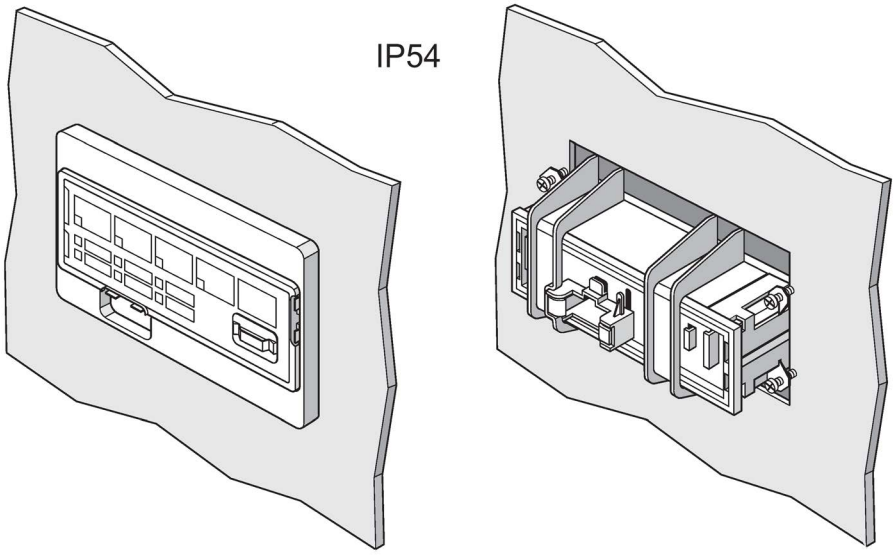


Figure 13-9 Mounting the operator panel adapter (2)

WARNING

Tightening torque of the screws

To ensure that the panel will function correctly and is sealed to comply with IP54, the tightening torque of the screws provided must not be set too high when mounting and the seal must be properly fitted.

Note

A SIMOCODE pro 3UF7 system operator panel is not compatible with SIMOCODE DP 3UF5, and vice versa.

13.3.5 Restoring factory settings

With the factory settings, all parameters are reset to the factory values.

Restoring the factory settings with the TEST / RESET button on the basic unit

Proceed as follows (also deletes any previous password setting!):

Table 13- 24 Restoring the factory settings with the TEST / RESET button

Step	Description
1	Switch off the supply voltage for the basic unit.
2	Press the TEST / RESET button on the basic unit and keep it pressed.
3	Switch on the supply voltage for the basic unit. The "Device" LED lights up yellow.
4	Release the TEST / RESET button after approx. two seconds.
5	Press the TEST / RESET button again after approx. two seconds.
6	Release the TEST / RESET button after approx. two seconds.
7	Press the TEST / RESET button again after approx. two seconds.
8	The factory setting is restored.

Note

If any of the steps stated above are not carried out correctly, the basic unit will revert to normal operation.

Note

This function is always active, irrespective of the "TEST / RESET keys disabled" parameter.

Restoring the factory settings with the software SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Prerequisite: SIMOCODE pro is connected to the PC / PG via PROFIBUS DP or via the system interface and SIMOCODE ES is started.

Proceed as follows (resets to factory settings, excluding the password):

Table 13- 25 Restoring the factory settings with the software SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Step	Description
1	Go online, e.g. via "Online → Connect online".
2	In the Project navigation view, select "Online accesses → COM [Sirius PtP] → Update accessible stations → SIMOCODE → Commissioning → Command".
3	Click on the "Factory settings" button. The factory setting is restored.
4	"Factory settings OK" is displayed in the inspector window.

13.3.6 Firmware update of device components

Various device components of the SIMOCODE pro system allow a firmware update to be performed.

For example, the basic unit SIMOCODE pro V EIP.

The current firmware versions can be obtained on request via Support Request (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/technical-assistance).

The firmware update can be performed with the SIMOCODE ES software (TIA Portal or with STEP 7). It is to be found at the online accesses to the SIMOCODE device under "Online & Diagnostics → Functions → Firmware Update": Enter the path to the firmware file here and click on "Start update".

NOTICE
Firmware update **Requirements:** A firmware update is only possible if • the motor is switched off • the control station is in the "Local manual" status • the device is not password-protected • reading/writing of cyclic data sets is deactivated **Password protection** In order to prevent a firmware update by a third party, we recommend that a password is assigned. Moreover, unless a password is assigned, a firmware update may be triggered at an inconvenient time.

13.4 Troubleshooting

13.4.1 Error buffer

SIMOCODE pro has an error buffer in which the 21 most recent errors / faults and "Power - On" events are recorded with a time stamp. Time stamps are based upon the operating hours of the device (resolution 1 s), i.e. the length of time for which the device is supplied with control supply voltage.

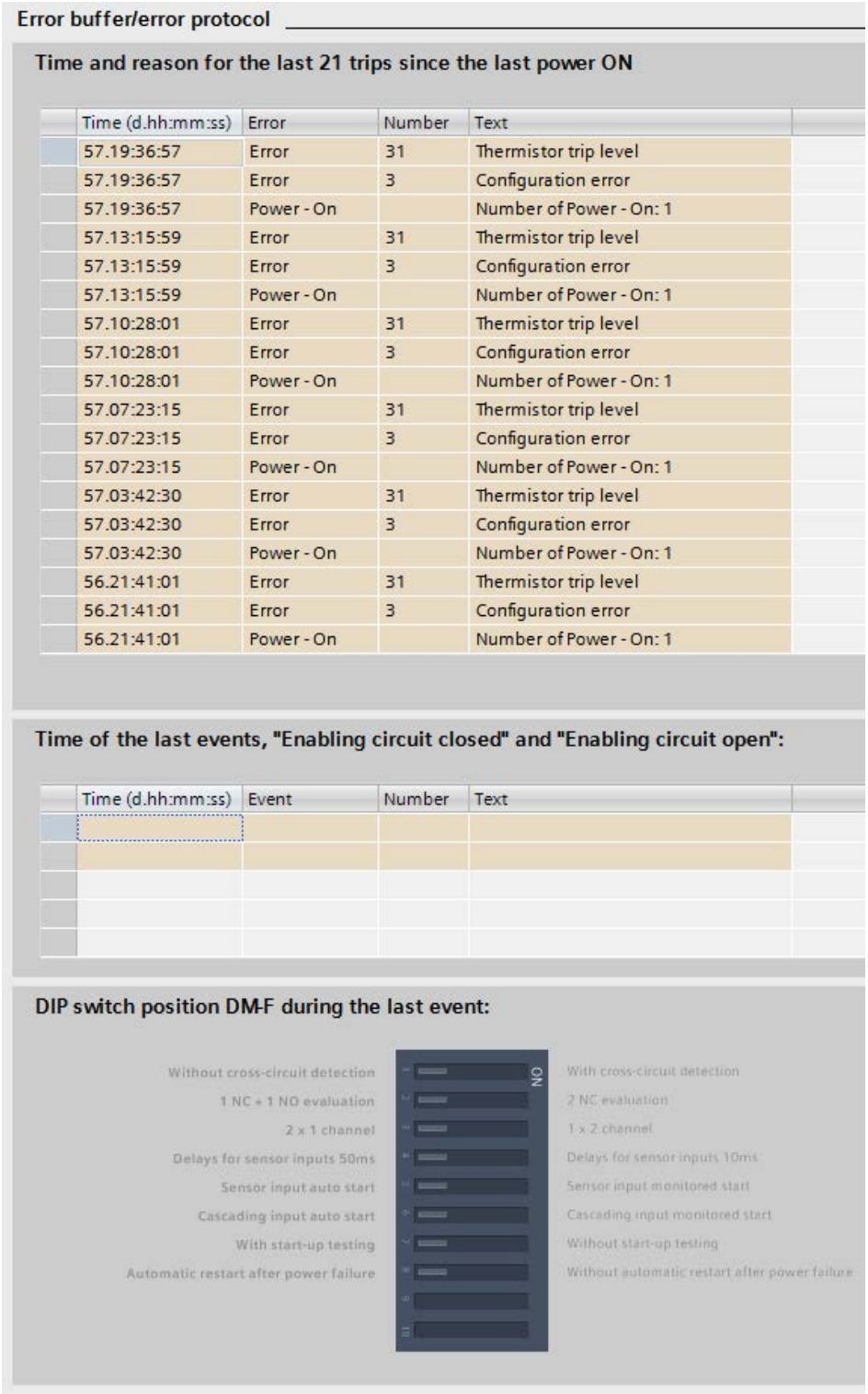
The "Error/Fault" and "Power - On" events are logged. Each of these events is given a time stamp.

- Error/Fault: The last 21 errors are stored in a ring buffer; the incoming error (rising edge) is always logged. An outgoing error (falling edge) will not be logged.
- Power on: If the most recent entry is "Power - On," this is not logged multiple times. Instead, the error number is used as a power-on counter. Thus, the error buffer cannot be deleted by frequent on/off operations.

Entry 1 is the most recent entry and entry 21 the oldest.

This data is displayed via the "SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)".

Example:



Error buffer/error protocol

Time and reason for the last 21 trips since the last power ON

Time (d.hh:mm:ss)	Error	Number	Text
57.19:36:57	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
57.19:36:57	Error	3	Configuration error
57.19:36:57	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1
57.13:15:59	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
57.13:15:59	Error	3	Configuration error
57.13:15:59	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1
57.10:28:01	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
57.10:28:01	Error	3	Configuration error
57.10:28:01	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1
57.07:23:15	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
57.07:23:15	Error	3	Configuration error
57.07:23:15	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1
57.03:42:30	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
57.03:42:30	Error	3	Configuration error
57.03:42:30	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1
56.21:41:01	Error	31	Thermistor trip level
56.21:41:01	Error	3	Configuration error
56.21:41:01	Power - On		Number of Power - On: 1

Time of the last events, "Enabling circuit closed" and "Enabling circuit open":

Time (d.hh:mm:ss)	Event	Number	Text

DIP switch position DM-F during the last event:

Figure 13-10 Example of event logging using the SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Example:

The most recent "power-on" event was logged at a device operating time of 17 days, 21 hours and 31 minutes. Therefore, at the moment of "Power - On", the device was operating (supplied with voltage) for 17d 21h 31min. The "Number of starts >" fault was logged at a device operating time of 18 days, 22 hours, 17 minutes, i.e. 24h 46min after the most recent "Power - On."

When **using a DM-F**, the events "Enabling circuit closed" and "Enabling circuit open" are logged for the DM-F Local and/or the DM-F PROFIsafe in a separate window:

- Time
- Event: "Enabling circuit closed" or "Enabling circuit open"
  - Number:

    Line 1 200 or 202

    Line 2 201 or 203
  - Text:

    Line 1 "DM-F Local enabling circuit 0 -> 1" or
    "DM-F PROFIsafe enabling circuit 0 -> 1"

    Line 2 "DM-F Local enabling circuit 1 -> 0" or
    "DM-F PROFIsafe enabling circuit 1 -> 0."

The current DIP switch position of the "DM-F Local" and/or the "DM-F PROFIsafe" is displayed under "DIP switch position DM-F during the last event".

See also Chapter "Data record 72 - Error buffer" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

13.4.2 Event memory

In addition to the error buffer, various events can be stored in the event buffer

Note

This event memory is supported by the SIMOCODE pro V basic unit as from firmware version V3.0.

The following events are stored:

- last event "DM-F enabling circuit closed"
- last event "DM-F enabling circuit open"
- Initialization module read in
- Initialization module written.

See also Chapter "Data record 73 - Event buffer" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

13.4.3 Alarms, faults, and system events - error handling

Table 13- 26 Alarm, fault, and system events

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Analog module 1/2 open circuit	An open circuit has occurred in the analog value measuring circuit.	Check the measured value sensor and the measuring circuit.	Reset		64
Startup parameter block active	The startup parameter block prevents transfer of SIMOCODE pro parameters that can be transferred from the IO controller during startup. The block may not be set if SIMOCODE pro is integrated in STEP7 via the SIMOCODE pro object manager (OM). [2]				
Antivalence	Only for positioner control function: The change-over contacts of the limit switch do not issue an antivalent signal.	Limit switch defective, open circuit limit switch		Tripped	
Configuration error	The configured unit configuration does not match the actual configuration.	• Check whether all the configured components are available • Check the actual configuration with "Configuration".	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	3
Execution STOP command	The motor feeder could not be turned off after a STOP command was issued.	• The contactor contact is welded • Parameter execution time is too short • The "open" end position has not been reached during the parameterized runtime (only for the "Positioner" and "Solenoid valve" control functions).	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	9
Execution ON command	The motor feeder could not be turned on after an ON command is issued.	• Main circuit is interrupted (fuse, circuit breaker) • The motor contactor or contactor control is defective • Parameter execution time is too short.	Reset	Tripped	8

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Trip level cos phi <	The power factor cos phi has undershot the trip level. Possible cause: The motor is being operated without a load.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.		Tripped	44
Trip level I < undershot	The maximum current has undershot the trip level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.		Tripped	41
Trip level I > overshot	The maximum current has overshot the trip level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.		Tripped	40
Trip level P < undershot	The active power of the motor has undershot the trip level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.		Tripped	43
Trip level P > overshot	The active power of the motor has overshot the trip level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.		Tripped	42
Trip level U < undershot	The voltage in the motor feeder has undershot the trip level. Possible causes: • Undervoltage in the network • Fuse has tripped	Check the motor feeder.		Tripped	45
Trip level 0/4 - 20 mA < undershot	The measured value at the analog input has undershot the trip level.	Check the measuring station.		Tripped	47
Trip level 0/4 - 20 mA > overshot	The measured value at the analog input has overshot the trip level.	Check the measuring station.		Tripped	46
Operational Protection Off (OPO)	An "Operational Protection Off (OPO)" signal is pending. A switched-on motor feeder has been switched off. The feeder cannot be switched on while the OPO signal is active.		Reset	Tripped; for positioners QE1 or QE2 switched on until end position is reached - depending upon configuration	19
Motor operating hours >	The configured limit value for motor operating hours monitoring has been exceeded.	Please adopt the maintenance measures intended for the feeder.			
Stalled rotor	The maximum motor current has exceeded the threshold for stalled rotor protection. Possible cause: The motor is blocked.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.	Reset	Tripped	48

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Stalled positioner	The torque switch has activated before or without the respective limit switch.	• The positioner may be blocked. • Acknowledge the fault by releasing with the "OPEN/CLOSED" counter command. • Please check the positioner application and the limit switches.	Counter command "OPEN / CLOSED!"	Tripped	12
DM-F feedback circuit	The DM-F Local or DM-F PROFIsafe has detected a fault in the feedback circuit (the feedback circuit must be closed as the enabling circuit is switched on); the "SF" (general fault) LED on the front of the DM-F Local or DM-F PROFIsafe is flashing red.	• Check the wiring of the feedback circuit • Check the contact blocks in the feedback circuit.	Rectify the fault such that the feedback circuit is closed.	Tripped	
DM-F safety-related tripping	The DM-F has tripped the enabling circuit for safety reasons.	The motor cannot be switched on again until the enabling circuits of the DM-F are closed again.	Acknowledge with "Reset", if auto-reset is not active.	Tripped	66
DM-F test requirement	The enabling circuits of the DM-F Local or DM-F PROFIsafe have not been opened and closed again within the configured time period.	The function of the enabling circuit relay contacts can only be tested when they are switched. Perform a function test.	Please apply the maintenance measures prescribed for this scenario.		
DM-F wiring	DM-F module wiring fault (short-circuit to ground in the sensor circuit/feedback circuit); the "SF" (general fault) LED on the front of the DM-F Local is illuminated red.	• Check the wiring of the sensor circuits / feedback circuit • Rectify the fault.	Reset	Tripped	67
DM-FL actual and set configuration different	The actual configuration of the DM-F Local does not correspond to the parameterized set configuration.	Check whether the effective configuration of the DM-F Local corresponds to the parameterized set configuration. Correct the effective configuration by changing the DIP switch settings or adjusting the set configuration by means of parameterization if required.			
DM-FL simultaneity	The DM-F Local has detected a discrepancy error in the two-channel sensor circuit.	Check the switching elements in the sensor circuit.	Rectify the fault by opening or closing the sensor inputs.	Tripped	

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
DM-FL configuration mode	The DM-F Local is in "configuration mode"; the "DEVICE" LED on the front of the DM-F Local is illuminated yellow.	Complete the configuration (see manual "Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro Safety", Chapter 7.4) [3].			
DM-FL cross circuit	Cross circuit in sensor circuit of DM-F Local; the "SF" (general fault) LED on the front of the DM-F Local is illuminated red.	• Check the wiring of both sensor circuits for cross circuiting • Rectify the fault.	Reset	Tripped	68
DM-FL waiting for start-up test	The DM-F LOCAL is in the "Waiting for start-up test" status.	Perform the startup test by actuating the sensor in the sensor circuit.			
DM-FP Prm error	The parameter settings of the PROFIsafe profile are incorrect or the set PROFIsafe address is not identical to the configured address.	Check the communication / PROFIsafe parameters of SIMOCODE pro that were set on the IO controller.			
Double 0	Both torque switches have activated simultaneously. The motor feeder has been turned off.	• Open circuit torque switch. • Torque switch is defective.		Tripped	13
Double 1	Both limit switches have activated simultaneously.	Limit switch defective		Tripped	14
End position	Except positioner 5 control function: The state of the limit switches has changed without a command (positioner has left the end position without a command).		Counter command "OPEN / CLOSED!"	Tripped	15
External ground fault	External ground-fault monitoring has responded. An impermissibly high residual current is flowing.	Please check the motor connection cable for damage.	Reset	Tripped	29
External fault 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6	A signal is pending at the input (socket) of the "External fault 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6" standard function.	Check the motor feeder.		Tripped	56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
Required function is not supported	At least one parameterized function is not supported by the version of the basic unit.	Activate only the functions that are supported by the version of the basic unit.			
Hardware fault	The SIMOCODE pro basic unit hardware is defective.	Replace the basic unit. See Chapter Replacing SIMOCODE pro components (Page 257).	Clear the fault.	Tripped	0

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. 1)
Initialization module write-protected	The initialization module is completely write-protected.	Deactivate write protection of the initialization module			
Initialization module write-protected, parameter changes not allowed	The initialization module is completely or partially write-protected. Reparameterization of SIMOCODE pro is denied because the initialization module is write-protected.	Deactivate write protection of the initialization module			
Initialization module - identification data write-protected	Reparameterization has been rejected because the initialization module is write-protected.	• Select a parameterization with identical addressing and I&M data • Deactivate the partial write protection of the initialization module			
Initialization module read in	The parameters of the initialization module were read into SIMOCODE.				
Initialization module programmed	The reparameterization was accepted in the initialization module.				
Initialization module cleared	The initialization module has been cleared and is now back in the as-delivered condition.				
Internal ground fault	Internal ground-fault monitoring has responded. An impermissibly high residual current is flowing.	Please check the motor connection cable for damage.	Reset	Tripped	28
No start permitted	The permissible number of starts in the monitoring timeframe has been attained. The next start should not be carried out until the interlocking time has expired.		Reset	Tripped	
Module fault	At least 1 SIMOCODE pro module is not ready for use.	• Connecting cable defective or incorrectly connected • Module defective. Replace the module. See Chapter Replacing SIMOCODE pro components (Page 257).	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	1

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Module supply voltage is not present	Supply voltage on the DM-F Local is too low or not present.	• The terminals are not wired properly • Module defective. Replace the module. See Chapter Replacing SIMOCODE pro components (Page 257).	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	
Power failure (UVO)	The power failure lasted longer than the set power failure time.		Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	18
Just one start possible	The start after the next one should not be carried out until the interlocking time has expired.				
Parameter is incorrect ("General fault" category)	The parameter data is incorrect.	The designation of the incorrect parameter can be found via the number (byte No.) in Chapter "Tables" in the manual "Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro" [4].	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	4
Parameter is incorrect ("Event" category)	The parameter data transferred to the unit is incorrect. Errors in the parameter data can occur, for example, if the device has not been parameterized with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal).	Check the parameter data (data records 130 - 135) that has been transmitted to the device for correct content. See Chapter "Data formats and data records" in the manual "SIMOCODE pro - Communication" [5].			
Parameter changes not allowed in the current operating state	You attempted to change at least one parameter that cannot be changed in the current operating state.	Many parameters can only be changed if the motor feeder is switched off and not in "Remote" mode. The following parameters can always be changed: See Chapter "Data formats and data records" in the manual "SIMOCODE pro - Communication" [5].			
Wrong password	SIMOCODE pro parameters are protected by a password. An attempt has been made to change the parameters without entering the password.	Please use the correct password for changing the parameters. If you do not know the password, new parameters can only be entered after the factory settings have been restored. For a description of how to restore the factory settings, see Chapter Restoring factory settings (Page 263).			

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Phase unbalance	The limit value for phase unbalance has been exceeded. Phase unbalance can cause an overload. Possible causes: • Phase failure • Fault in the motor windings.	Check the motor feeder and the motor.	Reset	Tripped	25
Feedback (FB) OFF	The current flow in the motor feeder has been interrupted without the motor feeder being turned off.	• The main circuit has been interrupted (fuse, circuit breaker, main switch). • The motor contactor or contactor control is defective	Reset	Tripped	11
Feedback (FB) ON	Current is flowing in the motor feeder without the motor feeder being switched on	• Contactor contacts have been manually activated • Contactor has not been switched on via SIMOCODE	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	10
Test Position Feedback (TPF)	Current is flowing in the motor feeder although the motor feeder is in the test position (TPF).	The main circuit is not interrupted in test operation.	Reset	Tripped	17
Memory module read in	The parameters of the memory module were read into SIMOCODE.				
Memory module cleared	The memory module was cleared and is now back in as-delivered state.				
Memory module programmed	The reparameterization was accepted in the memory module.				
Memory module write-protected	The memory module is completely write-protected.	Deactivate write protection of the memory module.			
Status - cooling down period active	The motor feeder has been switched off due to overload.	The motor can only be switched on again after the cooling down period has expired.			
Status - DM-F enabling circuit	Shows the status of the enabling circuit: • closed or • tripped				
Status - emergency start executed	The thermal memory has been cleared with the function "Emergency start".	The motor can be switched on again immediately after an overload trip.			

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Status - test position (TPF)	The motor feeder is in the test position (TPF). The main circuit has been interrupted and the feeder can be "cold started".				17
Stop time >	The configured limit value for motor stop time monitoring has been exceeded.	Please adopt the maintenance measures intended for the feeder. If possible, switch on the feeder.			
Fault - bus	Bus communication has been or is being interrupted.	Check the bus connection (plugs, cables, etc.).	Reset, auto-reset	Tripped	5
Fault - PLC/PCS	The PLC that controls the feeder was or is in STOP mode.	Check the operating state of the PLC.	Reset, auto-reset	Tripped	6
Fault antivalence	The limit switches are not reporting any antivalent signals.	• Limit switch open circuit • Please check the positioner application and the limit switches.	Counter command "OPEN/CLOSED"	Tripped	16
Fault - EM open circuit	A short circuit has occurred in the wiring to the 3UL23 residual current transformer.	Check the wiring to the 3UL23 residual current transformer	Reset	Tripped	38
Fault - EM short-circuit	A short-circuit has occurred in the wiring to the 3UL23 residual current transformer.	Check the wiring to the 3UL23 residual current transformer	Reset		39
Fault end position	Positioner/solenoid valve has left the end position without a command being issued. The motor feeder has been turned off.	Acknowledge the fault by releasing with the counter command "OPEN/CLOSED".	Reset; counter command	Tripped	15
Fault - temporary components (e.g. memory module)	One of the following components is defective: • Memory module • PC cable.	Replace the defective components. See Chapter Replacing SIMOCODE pro components (Page 257).	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	2
Temperature module 1/2 - trip level exceeded	The temperature trip level has been overshot.	Check the temperature measuring station.	Tripped		35
Temperature module 1/2 - warning level exceeded	The temperature warning level has been exceeded.	Check the temperature measuring station.			
Temperature module 1/2 out of range	Temperature sensor is delivering impermissible values.	Check the temperature sensor.	Reset	Tripped	37

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. [1]
Temperature module 1/2 sensor fault	Either a short circuit or an open circuit has occurred in the temperature sensor circuit.	Check the temperature sensor and the sensor cable.	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	36
Test trip	The motor feeder has been checked and switched off by a test trip.		Reset	Tripped	65
Thermistor trip level	Thermistor protection response. The temperature of the motor is too high.	Please check the motor and the application that is being driven by the motor. The motor cannot be switched on again until the temperature has reached the reset point of the thermistor.	Reset, auto-reset	Tripped	31
Thermistor open circuit	An open circuit has occurred in the thermistor sensor cable.	Check the thermistor sensor cable and the thermistor.	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	33
Thermistor short circuit	A short circuit has occurred in the thermistor sensor cable.	Check the thermistor sensor cable and the thermistor.	Clear the fault; reset	Tripped	32
Overload	The motor feeder has been overloaded.	Please check the motor and the application that is being driven by the motor. The motor can be switched on again after the cooling down period has expired or after an emergency start.	Reset, auto-reset	Tripped	26
Overload and unbalance	There is a load unbalance on the motor feeder phases. Possible causes: • Phase failure • Fault in the motor windings.	Check the motor feeder and the motor. The motor can be switched on again after the cooling down period has expired or after an emergency start.	Reset, auto-reset	Tripped	27
Prewarning overload (I > 115 %)	The motor feeder is in overload operation. If this condition continues to persist, the motor feeder will trip within a short period of time due to overload.	Please check the motor and the application that is being driven by the motor.			
Warning level cos phi <	The power factor cos phi has undershot the warning level. Possible cause: The motor is being operated without a load.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.			
Warning level I< undershot	The maximum current has undershot the warning level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.			

Event (alphabetical)	Description	Troubleshooting	Acknowledgment / fault rectification	Contactor control	Error No. 1)
Warning level I> overshot	The maximum current has overshot the warning level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.			
Warning level P< undershot	The active power of the motor has undershot the warning level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.			
Warning level P> overshot	The active power of the motor has overshot the warning level.	Please check the application that is being driven by the motor.			
Warning level U< undershot	The voltage in the motor feeder has undershot the warning level. Possible causes: • Undervoltage in the network • Fuse has tripped.	Check the motor feeder.			
Warning level 0/4 - 20 mA < undershot	The measured value at the analog input has undershot the warning level.	Check the measuring station.			
Warning level 0/4 - 20 mA > overshot	The measured value at the analog input has overshot the warning level.	Check the measuring station.			
Permissible number of starts exceeded	The permissible number of starts in the monitoring timeframe has already been exceeded. The next start should not be carried out until the interlocking time has expired.		Reset	Tripped	52

1) See also "Error number" in Chapter "Data record 72 - Error buffer" in the manual SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960).

Note

2) Parameter block

On devices in the as-delivered condition or after the factory settings have been restored, the parameter block is not active!

3) SIMOCODE pro fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852)

4) Parameterizing SIMOCODE pro (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743958)

5) SIMOCODE pro - Communication (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743960)

Safety and commissioning information for Ex areas 14

14.1 Information and standards

Information and standards

Types of protection Ex d, Ex e and Ex nA:

The overload protection and the thermistor motor protection of the SIMOCODE pro system comply with the requirements for overload protection of explosion-proof motors of the following types of protection:

- **Ex d "flameproof enclosure" according to DIN EN 60079-1**
- **Ex e "increased safety" according to DIN EN 60079-7**
- **Ex nA according to DIN EN 60079-15**

Increased danger in hazardous areas means it is necessary to carefully observe the following notes and standards:

- **IEC 60079-14 / EN 60079-14 / DIN VDE 0165-1** Electrical equipment for locations with explosive gas atmosphere - Electrical installations in hazardous areas (except mines)
- **DIN EN 60079-15 / VDE 0170-16** Explosive atmospheres - Part 15: Equipment protection with type of protection "nA"
- **IEC 60079-17 / EN 60079-17 / DIN VDE 0165-10-1** Electrical equipment for locations with explosive gas atmosphere - Testing and maintenance of electrical installations in hazardous areas (except mines)
- **DIN EN 50495** Safety devices required for the safe functioning of equipment with respect to explosion risks
- **VDE 0118** Erection of electrical installations in mines
- **Betriebssicherheitsverordnung - BetrSichV. (German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health)**

All 3UF7 devices are approved under Device Group I, Category "M2" (mining) and Device Group II, Category 2 in the area "GD" (areas in which explosive gas, steam, fog, air mixtures and inflammable dust are present):

- **BVS 06 ATEX F 001 Ⓔx I (M2)** *)
- **BVS 06 ATEX F 001 Ⓔx II (2) GD** *).

*)

Note

This safety and commissioning information is also valid for devices with certificate numbers BVS 04 ATEX F 003.

The devices are suitable for protecting motors in potentially explosive areas in accordance with the above standards.

Tests other than those legally stipulated (Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health) are not required.

WARNING

Qualified personnel required

All work involved in connecting, commissioning and maintenance must be carried out by **qualified, responsible** personnel.

Failure to follow proper procedures may result in **personal injury and damage to property**.

14.2 Installation and commissioning

14.2.1 Operating Instructions

Note

Also follow the following SIMOCODE pro Operating Instructions (included with the devices).

You can find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro listed in Chapter General information about commissioning and service (Page 233) or at Operating Instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals) in the Industry Online Support.

14.2.2 Setting the rated motor current

Notes/example

Set the 3UF7 to the rated motor current (according to the type plate or design test certificate of the motor).

Note

Pay attention to the trip class or the tripping characteristic of the 3UF7.

Choose the trip class so that the motor is thermally protected even with a blocked rotor.

The motor, cables, and contactor must be dimensioned for the selected trip class.

Note

Set the response of the overload protection to "Trip"!

Example of a tripping characteristic with 3UF710* current/voltage measuring modules and 3UF711*-1AA00-0 1st generation current/voltage measuring modules

Motor 500 V, 50 / 60 Hz, 110 kW, 156 A, temperature class T3, time T_E = 11 s, I_A / I_s = 5.5:

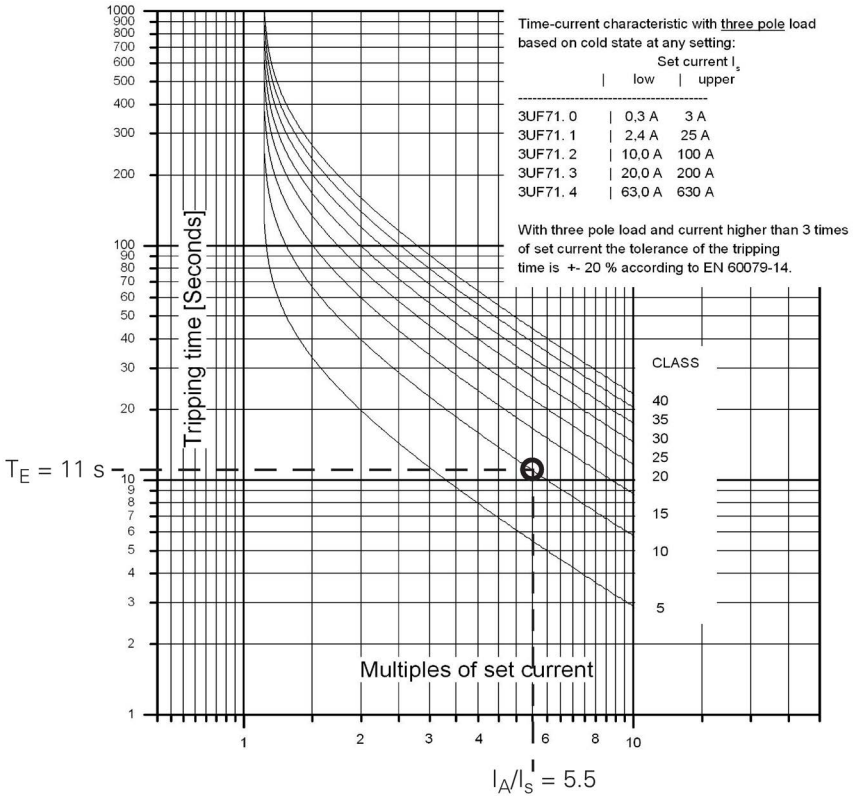


Figure 14-1 Tripping conditions of the Ex e motor, selected: CLASS 10 when using a 3UF710* current measuring module

The latest tripping characteristics for SIMOCODE pro can be found in the Industry Online Support (Tripping characteristics 3UF7 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/search?search=3UF7&type=Characteristic&lc=en-WW)).

NOTICE

Tripping characteristic

The type of tripping characteristic is dependent on the configured measuring module.

If a 3UF711*-1AA00-0 1st generation current / voltage measuring module is configured in a parameter assignment, although a 3UF711*-1AA01-0 2nd generation current / voltage measuring module is used, then the tripping characteristic remains that of the 1st generation current / voltage measuring module.

If only the hardware of the measuring module is replaced, this does not result in any change to the tripping behavior.

14.2.3 SIMOCODE pro with thermistor input

On 3UF70, you can use temperature sensor type A with a characteristic according to IEC 60947-8 (DIN VDE 0660, part 303), DIN 44081 and DIN 44082.

Depending on the number of sensors, the following tripping and restart temperatures apply.

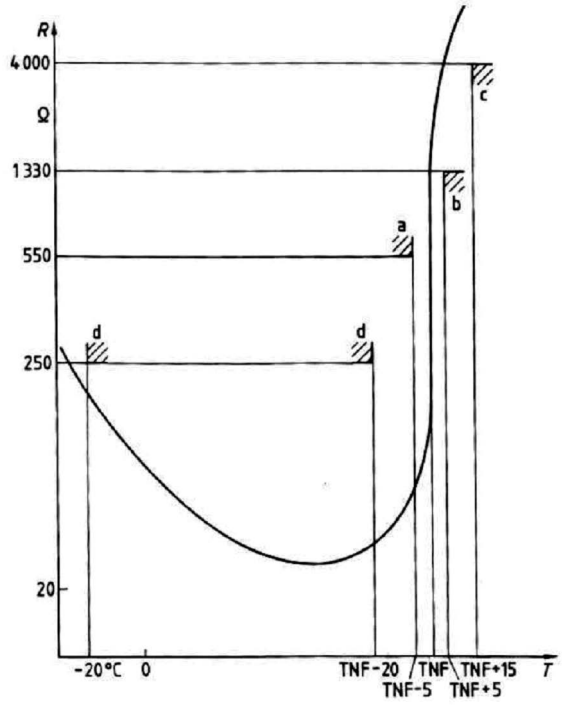


Figure 14-2 Typical characteristic curve of a type A sensor (logarithmic scale)

Depending on the number of sensors, the following tripping and restart temperatures will result based on the TNF (rated response temperature of the sensor):

Table 14- 1 Tripping and restart temperatures

	Tripping temperature	Restart temperature
3 sensors	TNF +4 K	TNF -7 K
6 sensors	TNF -5 K	TNF -20 K

The temperatures listed are limit values.

⚠ CAUTION
Response setting Set the response for the activated thermistor to "Trip"!

14.2.4 Sensor circuit wiring

NOTICE
Installing the measuring circuit cables Lay the measuring circuit cables as separate control cables. It is not permissible to use the cores of the motor supply cable or other main supply cables. Shielded control cables should be used if extremely inductive or capacitive interference is expected as a result of power cables routed in parallel.

Maximum cable lengths of the sensor circuit cables:

Table 14- 2 Maximum cable length of the sensor circuit cables

Cable cross section	Cable lengths (single) at the thermistor input	
	Without short-circuit detection	With short-circuit detection[1)]
2.5 mm^2	2800 m	250 m
1.5 mm^2	1500 m	150 m
0.5 mm^2	500 m	50 m
1) A short circuit in the sensor circuit will be detected up to these maximum cable lengths.		

NOTICE
Evaluation of the short-circuit detection of the sensor cable Evaluating the short-circuit detection of the sensor cable is recommended. If the short-circuit detection of the sensor cable is not evaluated, when commissioning or after modifications / maintenance work (assembly, disassembly) of the system, the sensor resistor must be measured using a suitable measuring instrument.

14.2.5 Short-circuit protection for type of coordination 2 according to IEC 60947-4-1

Short-circuit protection must be carried out by separately arranged overcurrent protection devices.

NOTICE
Fuse protection of the contactor for type of coordination 2 When combining with other contactors, observe the respective maximum fuse protection of the contactor for type of coordination 2.

14.2.6 Cable protection

NOTICE
Cable cross sections Avoid impermissibly high cable surface temperatures by correctly dimensioning the cross sections! Choose a sufficient cable cross section, especially for heavy-starting motors CLASS 20 to CLASS 40 (see Chapter Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeders for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V for 1st generation current / voltage measuring module (Page 323))!

14.2.7 Test

Testing - general information

SIMOCODE pro offers users a convenient method of checking the complete motor protection chain (incl. actuators and sensors such as contactors, circuit breakers, thermistors). This can be used, for example, for testing according to IEC 60079-17. The test encompasses a full function test. For this purpose, all three test phases are to be carried out (hardware test, current feedback, motor protection tripping, see below). The test can be carried out using the "TEST / RESET" buttons provided, or automatically via the bus. Due to existing self-test routines, tripping currents do not need to be injected in order to carry out testing.

Test phases

- Phase 1: Hardware test / lamp test (0 to 2 s):

  The hardware (e.g. the thermistor electronics) is tested, all LEDs and displays are activated, including the lamp control. Contactor controls remain unchanged.

- Phase 2: Hardware test results (2 s to 5 s):

  If there is a fault, the "HW fault basic unit" fault is triggered.

  If there is no fault:

  – the LED "GEN. FAULT" flashes; if no main current is flowing

  – the LED "GEN. FAULT" flickers; if main current is flowing in all three phases (exception: with a "1-phase load" in one phase).

- Phase 3: Relay test (> 5 s):

  If testing is carried out with tripping, the contactor controls are deactivated.

The contactor control can only be shut down by means of the "Test 1" function block and in the "Local 1-3" operating mode, using the "TEST / RESET" button on the basic device / operator panel.

The following table shows the test phases performed when the "TEST / RESET" button is pressed for the required length of time:

Table 14- 3 States of the status LEDs / contactor controls during testing

Test phase	**Status**	**Without main current**		**With main current**	
		OK	Fault *)	OK	Fault
Hardware test / lamp test					
< 2 s	"DEVICE" LED	● orange	● green	● orange	● green
	"GEN.FAULT" LED	●	●	●	●
	Contactor control	Unchanged	Unchanged	Unchanged	Unchanged
	Show QL *)	●	●	●	●
Results of the hardware test / lamp test					
2 to 5 s	"DEVICE" LED	● green	● red	● green	● red
	"GEN.FAULT" LED	◑	●	⊗	●
	Contactor control	Unchanged	Deactivated	Unchanged	Deactivated
Relay test					
> 5 s	"DEVICE" LED	● green	● red	● green	● red
	"GEN.FAULT" LED	●	●	●	●
	Contactor control	Deactivated	Deactivated	Deactivated	Deactivated

● LED lighted / switched on	◑ LED flashing	⊗ LED flickering	○ LED off

*) "Fault" only displayed after 2 s

14.2.8 Further safety guidelines

WARNING

Safety information for DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital modules

Pay attention to the safety notes in the Manual Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

CAUTION

Using relay outputs for the protection function

For the protection function, only the relay outputs of the 3UF70 basic unit, of a monostable digital module 3UF730, of a multifunction module 3UF76, or of a fail-safe expansion module 3UF732/3UF733 may be used, and only if connected to the corresponding contactor controls "QE" of the control function!

WARNING

The 3UF7 is not suitable for installation in hazardous areas.

The device is only allowed to be installed in a control cabinet with the minimum degree of protection of IP 4x.

If installed in hazardous areas, there must be no ignition hazard from the 3UF7. Appropriate measures must be taken (e.g. encapsulation).

WARNING

Electrical isolation required

For SIMOCODE pro devices with a 24 V DC control supply, galvanic isolation must be ensured with a battery or a safety isolating transformer according to DIN EN 61558-2-6.

Note

The 3UF7 is not suitable for load-side operation on frequency converters.

14.2.9 Ambient conditions

Permissible ambient temperature range:

- Storage / transportation: -40 °C to +80 °C
- Operation: -25 °C to +60 °C; BBD: 0 °C to +60 °C

14.2.10 Safety values

- SIL (IEC 61508): SIL 1
- PFDavg (IEC 61508) < 3.0 * 10^{-2}
- Repeat test: DIN EN 60079-17, Section 4.4
- HFT = 0 (single-channel system)

Module	MLFB	λs [10^{-9}/h] 1)	λdd [10-9/h] 2)	λdu [10-9/h] 3)	SFF [%] 4)
DM monostable 24 V	3UF7300-1AB00-0	856	160	597	63
DM monostable 230 V	3UF7300-1AU00-0	856	160	597	63
DM-FL UC	3UF7320-1AU00-0	3244	531	463	89
DM-FL DC	3UF7320-1AB00-0	3158	520	463	89
DM-FP UC	3UF7330-1AU00-0	2946	603	470	88
DM-FP DC	3UF7330-1AB00-0	2861	592	470	88
MM DC	3UF7600-1AB01-0	749	155	548	62
MM UC	3UF7600-1AU01-0	717	149	565	61
BU0 DC	3UF7020-1AB01-0	1704	1037	1019	73
BU0 UC	3UF7020-1AU01-0	2187	1037	1037	76
BU1 DC	3UF7000-1AB00-0	1758	328	915	70
BU1 UC	3UF7000-1AU00-0	2500	328	925	75
BU2 DC	3UF7010-1AB00-0	3187	318	916	79
BU2 UC	3UF7010-1AU00-0	3790	318	925	82
BU2 MBR DC	3UF7012-1AB00-0	3194	318	916	79
BU2 MBR UC	3UF7012-1AU00-0	3797	318	925	82
GG2+ MBR DC	3UF7012-1AB00-0-Z	2742	370	766	80
BU2+ MBR UC	3UF7012-1AU00-0-Z	3354	522	812	83
BU2+ DC	3UF7010-1AB00-0-Z	2742	370	766	80
BU2+ UC	3UF7010-1AU00-0-Z	3354	522	812	83
BU3 DC EIP	3UF7013-1AB00-0	3274	436	950	80
BU3 UC EIP	3UF7013-1AU00-0	3396	436	998	79
BU3 DC PN	3UF7011-1AB00-0	3274	436	950	80
BU3 UC PN	3UF7011-1AU00-0	3396	436	998	79
IM	3UF710x-1Ax00-0	3	550	121	82
UM	3UF711x-1Ax00-0	3	797	149	84
UM+	3UF711x-1Ax01-0	445	199	36	95

1) Probability of the occurrence of safe failures

2) Probability of the occurrence of recognized hazardous failures

3) Probability of the occurrence of unrecognized hazardous failures

4) Safe-failure fraction

14.3 Maintenance and repairs

These devices are maintenance-free.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs

Repairs to the device may only be carried out by the manufacturer.

14.4 Warranty

Note

To meet the conditions of the warranty, you must observe the safety and commissioning instructions from the operating instructions.

You can find the Operating Instructions for SIMOCODE pro listed in Chapter General information about commissioning and service (Page 233) or at Operating Instructions (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/manuals) in the Industry Online Support.

14.5 Further information

You will find further information on the Internet:

- Internet (https://www.siemens.com/simocode)
- Information and Download Center (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/infomaterial)
- Product Information System (ProdIS) (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/support)
- Service and support (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/technical-assistance)
- ATEX (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/atex)
- Certificates (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/approvals)

Technical data

15

15.1 Common technical data

Common technical data	
Standards	EN 60204-1, EN 1760-1, ISO 13849-1, IEC 61508, IEC/EN 60947-4-1, IEC/EN 60947-5-1
Test verification documents	See Certificates (https://www.siemens.com/sirius/approvals)
Permiss. ambient temperature	
In operation	-25 to +60°C [1]
For storage and transport	-40 to +80°C [2]
at installation altitude above MSL	
≤ 2000 m	
≤ 3000 m	Max. +50 °C (no protective separation)
≤ 4000 m	Max. +40 °C (no protective separation)
Degree of protection (according to IEC 60529)	
All components (except current measuring modules with bus connection, operator panel and door adapter)	IP20
Current measuring modules with bus connection	IP00
Operator panel (front) and door adapter (front) with cover	IP54
Vibration resistance acc. to IEC 60068-2-6	
• General	• 1-6 Hz / 15 mm; 6-500 Hz / 2 g
• SIMOCODE pro S basic unit and SIMOCODE pro S multifunction module assembled on a current measuring module	• 1-6 Hz / 15 mm; 6-500 Hz / 1 g
• SIMOCODE pro V basic unit assembled on a current / voltage measuring module	• 1-6 Hz / 15 mm; 6-500 Hz / 1 g
Shock resistance (sine pulse) acc. to IEC 60068-2-27	
• General	
• SIMOCODE pro S basic unit and SIMOCODE pro S multifunction module assembled on a current measuring module	• 15 g / 11 ms • 15 g / 11 ms
• SIMOCODE pro V basic unit assembled on a current / voltage measuring module	• 15 g / 11 ms

Common technical data	
Mounting position	Any
Frequencies	50/60 Hz ± 5 %
EMC stability according to IEC 60947-1 • IEC 60947-1, IEC 60947-5-1, SN 27095, NE21 • DM-F: IEC 61326-3-1	Corresponds to degree of severity 3
Conducted interference, burst according to IEC C 61000-4-4	2 kV (power ports) **Surge suppressor is required for inductive loads.** 1 kV (signal ports)
Conducted interference immission, high-frequency according to IEC 61000-4-6	10 V
Conducted interference immission, surge according to IEC 61000-4-5	2 kV (line to earth) 1 kV (line to line)
Electrostatic discharge, ESD according to IEC 61000-4-2 [4]	8 kV (air discharge) 6 kV (contact discharge) [3]
Radiated interference immission according to IEC 61000-4-3	10 V/m
This is a Class A product. This product can cause radio interference if used in a domestic environment. Therefore, the user may need to implement suitable countermeasures. Conducted and radiated interference emission	DIN EN 55011/DIN EN 55022 (CISPR11/CISPR22) (corresponds to Degree of Severity A)
Protective separation according to IEC 60947-1	All SIMOCODE pro circuits are isolated from each other according to IEC 60947-1, i.e. dimensioned with double creepage distance and air clearance. **Notice** Please observe the information in the "Protective Separation" test report, No. 2668.
3UF793 connecting cable:	
Rated voltage	300 V
Rated operating voltage	24 V

1) for operator panel with display 3UF721 0 - 60 °C

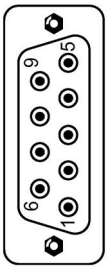
2) for operator panel with display 3UF721 -20 - 70 °C

3) for operator panel with display 3UF721 4kV

4) 3UF7020: Operator input during operation only on the front

15.2 Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro C / pro S / pro V PB / pro V MB RTU basic units

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro C / pro S / pro V PB / pro V MB RTU basic units	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Cabinet mounting basic unit SIMOCODE pro S (3UF7020)	Minimum distance to be maintained • from cabinet rear wall for series mounting at side: 0 mm • from grounded parts at side: 2 mm
Display	
Red / green / yellow "DEVICE" LED	• Red: "Function test negative, device disabled" • Green: "Ready for operation" • Yellow: "Memory module or addressing plug detected" • OFF: "No control supply voltage"
Green "BUS" LED	• Continuous light: "Communication with PLC/PCS" • Flashing: "Baud rate recognized/communication with PC/PG"
Red "GEN. FAULT" LED	Continuous light/flashing: "Feeder fault," e.g. overload tripping
"TEST/RESET" button	• Resets the device after tripping • Function test (system self-test) • Operation of memory module or addressing plug
System interfaces	
Front	For connecting an operator panel or expansion modules. The memory module, addressing plug or a PC cable can also be connected to the system interface for parameterization purposes.
Bottom/front	Connection of a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module
PROFIBUS DP interface	
Interface (physical)	RS485

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro C / pro S / pro V PB / pro V MB RTU basic units		
Connection technology [1]	9-way sub D socket (12 Mbit) Pin assignment acc. to DIN EN 61158-2 Terminals (1.5 Mbit) Connection of a PROFIBUS DP cable via terminal connection or a 9-pole sub D socket.  Pin assignment: 1: n. c.: Reserved 2: n. c.: Reserved 3: BUS B: Data line B 4: RTS: Transmission request 5: P-: Ground 6: P+: Supply voltage 7: n. c.: Reserved 8: BUS A: Data line A 9: n. c.: Reserved -: SHIELD: Shield over connector housing Load rating 5 V DC on PROFIBUS DP: Max. 100 mA Support for the transfer rates defined by the PROFIBUS DP standard: 9.6 kbit / s, 19.2 kbit / s, 45.45 kbit / s, 93.75 kbit / s, 187.5 kbit / s, 500 kbit / s, 1500 kbit / s, 3000 kbit / s, 6000 kbit / s, 12000 kbit / s. **Note** The 5 V power supply is only sufficient to power the bus termination module, not any other loads. Supported data transfer rates for Modbus RTU: 300 baud, 600 baud, 1,200 baud, 2,400 baud, 4,800 baud, 9,600 baud, 19,200 baud (default), 57,600 baud	
Rated control supply voltage U_s (according to DIN EN 61131-2)	110 V to 240 V AC/DC, 50/60 Hz	24 V DC
Operating range	0.85 x Us to 1.1 x Us	0.8 x Us to 1.2 x Us
Power consumption		
SIMOCODE pro C (3UF7000) basic unit and SIMOCODE pro S (3UF7020)	7 VA / 5 W	5 W
SIMOCODE pro V PROFIBUS (3UF7010) basic unit and SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU (3UF7012) including two connected expansion modules	10 VA / 7 W	7 W

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro C / pro S / pro V PB / pro V MB RTU basic units		
SIMOCODE pro V PROFIBUS E15/V 4.0 basic unit (3UF7010-1A.00-0 -Z B01) including two connected expansion modules	10 VA / 4 W	4 W
Rated insulation voltage U_i	300 V (at pollution degree 3)	
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	4 kV	
Power failure backup time(longer power failures lead to shutdown of the relay outputs (monostable))	SIMOCODE pro C 24 V DC 110 V to 240 V AC/DC	Typ. 50 ms
	SIMOCODE pro S	Typ. 50 ms
	SIMOCODE pro V - 24 V DC	Typ. 50 ms
	SIMOCODE pro V - 110 V - 240 V AC/DC	Typ. 200 ms
Relay outputs		
Number	Monostable relay outputs: 3 (SIMOCODE pro C, pro V) 2 (SIMOCODE pro S)	
Function	Isolated NO contacts (NO contact response parameterizable via internal signal conditioning), 2 relay outputs connected to common potential, one separate relay output, freely-assignable to control functions (e.g. line, star or delta contactor or operating state status information.)	
Stipulated short-circuit protection for auxiliary contacts (relay outputs)	• 6 A fuse inserts, operational class gG; 10 A quick-response (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 1.6 A, C characteristic (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 6 A, C characteristic (Ik < 500 A)	
Rated uninterrupted current	5 A 6 A at max. +50 °C	
Rated switching capacity	• AC-15: 6 A / 24 V AC; 6 A / 120 V AC; 3 A / 230 V AC • DC-13: 2 A / 24 V DC; 0.55 A / 60 V DC; 0.25 A / 125 V DC	
Inputs (binary)	4 inputs connected to common potential that are supplied via the device electronics (24 V DC) for measuring process signals (e.g. local control station, key-operated switch, limit switch, etc.), freely-assignable to control functions.	
24 V DC		
Cable lengths (single)	300 m	
Input characteristic	Type 1 according to EN 61131-2	

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro C / pro S / pro V PB / pro V MB RTU basic units	
Thermistor motor protection (PTC binary)	
Total cold resistance	≤ 1.5 kOhm
Response value	3.4 kOhm to 3.8 kOhm
Return value	1.5 kOhm to 1.65 kOhm
Sensor short-circuit response value	< 9 ohm
Cable lengths (single), conductor cross sections:	250 m: 2.5 mm^2 150 m: 1.5 mm^2 50 m: 0.5 mm^2
Connection of SIMOCODE pro C / pro V basic units	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 lb.in to 10.3 lb.in 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2 x0.5 mm^2 ... 2.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 4 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 14 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 1.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 2.5 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14
- PROFIBUS cable	2 x 0.34 mm^2 AWG 22
Connection of SIMOCODE pro S basic unit	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 5.2 lb.in to 7.0 lb.in 0.6 Nm to 0.8 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 1.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 2.5 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 1.0 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 2.5 mm^2
- PROFIBUS cable	2 x 0.34 mm^2 / 1 x 0.34 mm^2 AWG 22

1)

Note

Bus termination module

The bus termination module is powered by a voltage of max. 5 V.

The current drawn for the bus termination module is limited.

15.3 Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Mounting position	Any
Display	
Red/green/yellow "DEVICE" LED	• Red: "Function test negative, device disabled" • Green: "Ready for operation" • Yellow: "Memory module detected" • OFF: "No control supply voltage"
Green "BUS" LED	• Continuous light: "Communication with PLC/PCS" • Flashing: "Baud rate recognized/communication with PC/PG"
Red "GEN. FAULT" LED	Continuous light/flashing: "Feeder fault", e.g. overload tripping
Green "PORT1" LED	• Continuous light: Ethernet connection available • Flashing: Station flash test
Green "PORT2" LED	• Continuous light: Ethernet connection available • Flashing: Station flash test
"TEST/RESET" button	• Resets the device after tripping • Function test (system self-test) • Operation of memory module
System interfaces	
Front	For connecting an operator panel or expansion modules. The memory module or a PC cable can also be connected to the system interface for parameterization purposes.
Bottom	Connection of a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module
ETHERNET interface	
Connection system	2 x RJ45 (LAN)
Transmission rate	Max. 100 Mbit/s
Number of interfaces according to PROFINET	2
PROFINET conformity class	B
Protocols supported	PROFINET IO, PROFIsafe, LLDP, SNMP, Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), HTTP, HTTPS, OPC UA Server, NTP
Autonegation	Yes
Autosensing	Yes
MRP/MRRP redundancy procedure	Yes
PROFINET IO system redundancy	Yes
PROFIenergy measured values	Yes
PROFIenergy shutdown	Yes

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units		
Rated control supply voltage Us (according to DIN EN 61131-2) ⚠ **Warning** For the 24 V DC power supply, always use an SELV or PELV power supply unit!	110 V to 240 V AC/DC, 50/60 Hz	24 V DC
Operating range	0.85 x Us to 1.1 x Us (startup) 0.85 x Us to 1.1 x Us (operation)	0.85 x Us to 1.2 x Us (startup) 0.80 x Us to 1.2 x Us (operation)
Power consumption		
SIMOCODE pro V PROFINET (3UF7011) and SIMOCODE pro V EtherNet/IP (3UF7013) basic units including two connected expansion modules	11 VA / 8 W	8 W
Rated insulation voltage U_i	300 V (at pollution degree 3)	
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	4 kV	
Power failure backup time(longer power failures lead to shutdown of the relay outputs (monostable))	• 24 V DC • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC	Typ. 20 ms
Relay outputs		
Number	3 monostable relay outputs	
Function	Isolated NO contacts (NO contact response parameterizable via internal signal conditioning), 2 relay outputs connected to common potential, one separate relay output, freely-assignable to control functions (e.g. line, star or delta contactor or operating state status information.)	
Stipulated short-circuit protection for auxiliary contacts (relay outputs)	• 6 A fuse inserts, operational class gG; 10 A quick-response (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 1.6 A, C characteristic (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 6 A, C characteristic (Ik < 500 A)	
Rated uninterrupted current	• 5 A • 6 A at max. +50 °C	
Rated switching capacity	• AC-15: 6 A / 24 V AC; 6 A / 120 V AC; 3 A / AC 230 V • DC-13: 2 A/24 V DC; 0.55 A/60 V DC; 0.25 A/125 V DC	
Contact rating of the auxiliary contacts according to UL	B300/R300	
Electrical durability (operating cycles)	Typical: 100 000	
Mechanical durability (operating cycles)	Typical: 10 000 000	

Technical specifications of the SIMOCODE pro V PN / pro V EIP basic units		
Inputs (binary)	4 inputs connected to common potential that are supplied via the device electronics (24 V DC) for measuring process signals (e.g. local control station, key-operated switch, limit switch, etc.), freely-assignable to control functions.	
24 V DC		
Cable lengths (single)	300 m	
Input characteristic	Type 1 according to EN 61131-2	
Thermistor motor protection (PTC binary)		
Total cold resistance	≤ 1.5 kOhm	
Response value	3.4 kOhm to 3.8 kOhm	
Return value	1.5 kOhm to 1.65 kOhm	
Cable lengths (single), conductor cross sections:	Cross section:	Length:
	2.5 mm^2	250 m
	1.5 mm^2	150 m
	0.5 mm^2	50 m
Connection		
Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 lb.in - 10.3 lb.in; 0.8 Nm - 1.2 Nm	
Connection cross sections		
• Solid	2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 4 mm^2; 2 x AWG 20 to 14 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12	
• Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 1.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2; 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14	

15.4 Technical data of the current measuring modules and the current / voltage measuring modules

Technical data of the current measuring modules and the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules		
Mounting		
Current setting I_s = 0.3 A - 4 A; 3 A - 40 A; 10 A - 115 A (3UF7110.1-0, 3UF7111.1-0, 3UF7112.1-0)	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs	
Current setting I_s = 20 A to 200 A (3UF7113.1-0)	Snap-on mounting onto 35-mm standard mounting rails, screw attachment onto the mounting plate or direct mounting onto the contactor	
Current setting I_s = 63 A to 630 A (3UF7114.1-0)	Screw attachment to the mounting plate or direct mounting onto the contactor	
System interface for main circuit	For connection to a basic unit	
Current setting I_s	3UF7110-1AA01-0: 0.3 A - 4 A 3UF7111-1AA01-0: 3 A - 40 A 3UF7112-1AA01-0: 10 A - 115 A	3UF7113-1AA01-0: 20 A to 200 A 3UF7113-1BA01-0: 20 A to 200 A 3UF7114-1BA01-0: 63 A to 630 A
Rated insulation voltage U_i (at pollution degree 3)	690 V	
Rated operating voltage U_e	690 V	
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	6 kV	
Rated frequency	50/60 Hz	
Type of current	Three-phase	
Short circuit	Additional short-circuit protection is required in the main circuit [1)]	
Typical voltage measuring range		
Line-to-line voltage / voltage between lines (e.g.: U_{L1L2})	110 V - 690 V	
Phase voltage (e.g.: U_{L1})	65 V to 400 V	
Accuracy at 25 °C, 50/60 Hz		
valid for current range:	3UF7110-1AA01-0: 0.25 A - 8 A 3UF7111-1AA01-0: 2.25 A - 80 A 3UF7112-1AA01-0: 7.5 A - 230 A	3UF7113-1AA01-0: 15 A - 400 A 3UF7113-1BA01-0: 15 A - 400 A 3UF7114-1BA01-0: 47 A - 1260 A
Temperature drift of current measurement	3UF7110-1AA01-0: 0.02% / K 3UF7111-1AA01-0: 0.01% / K 3UF7112-1AA01-0: 0.01% / K	3UF7113-1AA01-0: 0.01% / K 3UF7113-1BA01-0: 0.01% / K 3UF7114-1BA01-0: 0.01% / K
valid for voltage range: • phase-to-phase voltage V_L in the range 0.85 x 110 V - 1.1 x 690 V • Phase voltage V_L in the range 0.85 x 65 V - 1.1 x 400 V		
of the current measurement	1.5%	

Technical data of the current measuring modules and the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules		
of the voltage measurement	1.5%	
of the cos phi measurement (cos phi ≥ 0.5)	1.5%	
of the apparent power measurement (cos phi ≥ 0.5)	3%	
of the active power measurement (cos phi ≥ 0.5)	5%	
of the energy measurement (cos phi ≥ 0.5)	5%	
of the frequency measurement (cos phi ≥ 0.5)	1.5%	
of the ground-fault detection acc. to IEC 60947-1, Annex T		
• in the range 30% - 120% I_e	• ± 10% (Class CI-A)	
• in the range 15% - 30% I_e	• ± 25% (Class CI-B)	
Note on voltage measurement		
Caution Note that the supply cables for voltage measurement may require additional cable protection.		
Feed-through opening	Diameter	Design of cable insulation
Current setting 0.3 A - 4 A; 3 A - 40 A	7.5 mm	6 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Current setting 10 A - 115 A:	14.0 mm	6 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Current setting 20 A to 200 A:	25.0 mm	6 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Bus connection		
Current setting I_s	20 A to 200 A	63 A to 630 A
Connection screw	M8x25	M10x30
Tightening torque	10 Nm to 14 Nm	14 Nm to 24 Nm
Solid with cable lug	16 mm^2 - 95 mm [2) 3)]	50 mm^2 - 240 mm [2) 4)]
Stranded with cable lug	25 mm^2 - 120 mm [2) 3)]	70 mm^2 - 240 mm [2) 4)]
AWG cable	4 kcmil - 250 kcmil	1/0 kcmil to 500 kcmil
Connection for voltage measurement		
	45 mm / 55 mm modules	**120 mm / 145 mm modules**
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 4.4 lb.in - 5.3 lb.in 0.5 Nm to 0.6 Nm	TORQUE: 7 lb.in - 10.3 lb.in 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections		

Technical data of the current measuring modules and the 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules		
- Solid	1 x 0.25 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 / 1 x AWG 24 to 14 2 x 0.25 mm^2 - 1 mm^2 / 2 x AWG 24 to 18	1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 4 mm^2 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12 2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 / 2 x AWG 20 to 14
- Finely stranded with end sleeve		1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14 2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 1.5 mm^2 / 2 x AWG 20 to 16

1) You will find more information at SIMOCODE pro (https://www.siemens.com/simocode).

2) Screw connection is possible with an appropriate 3RT19 box terminal.

3) When connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46235 to cables with a cross section larger than 95 mm^2, the 3RT19 56-4EA1 terminal cover is required to maintain phase separation.

4) When connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46234 to cables with a cross section larger than 240 mm^2 and when connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46235 to cables with a cross section larger than 185 mm^2, the 3RT19 56-4EA1 terminal cover is required to maintain phase separation.

Technical data of the current measuring modules or the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules		
Mounting		
Current setting I_s = 0.3 A to 3 A; 2.4 A to 25 A; 10 A to 100 A (3UF7100*, 3UF7101*, 3UF7102*, 3UF7110.0-0, 3UF7111.0-0, 3UF7112.0-0)	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs	
Current setting I_s = 20 A to 200 A (3UF7103*, 3UF7113.0-0)	Snap-on mounting onto 35-mm standard mounting rails, screw attachment onto the mounting plate or direct mounting onto the contactor	
Current setting I_s = 63 A to 630 A (3UF7104*, 3UF7114.0-0)	Screw attachment to the mounting plate or direct mounting onto the contactor	
System interface for main circuit	For connection to a basic unit or decoupling module	
Current setting I_s	3UF7100*0-0, 3UF7110*0-0: 0.3 A - 3 A 3UF7101*0-0, 3UF7111*0-0: 2.4 A - 25 A 3UF7102*0-0, 3UF7112*0-0: 10 A - 100 A	3UF7103*0-0, 3UF7113*0-0: 20 A to 200 A 3UF7104*0-0, 3UF7114*0-0: 63 A to 630 A
Rated insulation voltage U_i (at pollution degree 3)	690 V 1)	
Rated operating voltage U_e	690 V	
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	6 kV 2)	
Rated frequency	50/60 Hz	
Type of current	Three-phase	
Short circuit	Additional short-circuit protection is required in the main circuit 3)	
Accuracy of current measuring (ranging from 1 x minimum current setting I_u to 8 x maximum current setting I_o)	± 3%	

Technical data of the current measuring modules or the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules		
Typical voltage measuring range		
Line-to-line voltage / voltage between lines (e.g.: U_{L1L2})	110 V - 690 V (depending on the setting, either the line-to-line voltage/ phase-to-ground voltage or the phase voltage is displayed)	
Phase voltage (e.g.: U_{L1})	65 V to 400 V	
Voltage measuring accuracy in the range from 230 V to 400 V	± 3% (typically)	
Accuracy of cos phi measurement (in the nominal load range cos phi = 0.4 to 0.8)	± 5% (typically)	
Accuracy of apparent power measurement (in the nominal load range)	± 5% (typically)	
Notes on voltage measurement		
Current / voltage measuring modules must be used with a decoupling module in certain types of power system. See the table in Chapter Decoupling module (DCM) for 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules (e.g. 3UF711.1AA000) (Page 125).	**Caution** Note that the supply cables for voltage measurement may require additional cable protection.	
Feed-through opening	Diameter	Design of cable insulation
Current setting 0.3 A to 3 A; 2.4 A to 25 A	7.5 mm	6 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Current setting 10 A to 100 A:	14.0 mm	6 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Current setting 20 A to 200 A:	25.0 mm	UM: 6 kV, IM: 8 kV according to IEC 60947-1
Bus connection		
Current setting I_s	20 A to 200 A	63 A to 630 A
Connection screw	M8x25	M10x30
Tightening torque	10 Nm to 14 Nm	14 Nm to 24 Nm
Solid with cable lug	16 mm^2 - 95 mm [2) 4) 5)]	50 mm^2 - 240 mm [2) 4) 6)]
Stranded with cable lug	25 mm^2 - 120 mm [2) 4) 5)]	70 mm^2 - 240 mm [2) 4) 6)]
AWG cable	6 kcmil to 300 kcmil	1/0 kcmil to 500 kcmil
Connection for voltage measurement		
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 lb.in - 10.3 lb.in 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm	
• Connection cross sections		
- Solid	1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 4 mm^2 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12 2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 / 2 x AWG 20 to 14	

Technical data of the current measuring modules or the 1st generation current / voltage measuring modules	
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14
	2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 1.5 mm^2 / 2 x AWG 20 to 16

1) for 3UF7103 or 3UF7104 to 1000 V

2) for 3UF7103 or 3UF7104 to 8 kV

3) You will find more information at SIMOCODE pro (https://www.siemens.com/simocode) and in Chapter Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeders for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V for 1st generation current / voltage measuring module (Page 323)

4) Screw connection is possible with an appropriate 3RT19 box terminal.

5) When connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46235 to cables with a cross section larger than 95 mm^2, the 3RT19 56-4EA1 terminal cover is required to maintain phase separation.

6) When connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46234 to cables with a cross section larger than 240 mm^2 and when connecting cable lugs complying with DIN 46235 to cables with a cross section larger than 185 mm^2, the 3RT19 56-4EA1 terminal cover is required to maintain phase separation.

15.5 Technical data of the decoupling module

Technical data of the decoupling module	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs.
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	
System interfaces	The left interface is for connection to a basic unit or an expansion module, the right interface is exclusively for connection to a current / voltage measuring module.
Connection cross sections	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2 x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1 x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 14 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1 x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14

15.6 Technical data of the expansion modules

15.6.1 Technical data of the digital modules

Technical data of the digital modules	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interfaces	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel
Control circuit	
Rated insulation voltage U_i	300 V (at pollution degree 3)
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	4 kV
Relay outputs	
• Number	2 monostable or bistable relay outputs (depending on the type)
• Function	Isolated NO contacts (NC contact response parameterizable via internal signal conditioning), relay outputs all with connection to common potential, freely-assignable to control functions (e.g. line, star or delta contactor or operating state status information).
• Stipulated short-circuit protection for auxiliary contacts (relay outputs)	• Fuse links, operating class gL/gG 6 A, quick-response 10 A (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 1.6 A, C characteristic (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 6 A, C characteristic (I_k < 500 A)
• Rated uninterrupted current	• 5 A • 6 A at max. +50 °C
• Rated switching capacity	
AC-15	6 A / 24 V AC; 6 A / 120 V AC; 3 A / 230 V AC
DC-13	2 A / 24 V DC; 0.55 A / 60 V DC; 0.25 A / 125 V DC
Inputs (binary)	4 externally supplied, isolated inputs (24 V DC or 110 V to 240 V AC / DC, depending on the type), connected to common potential for measuring process signals (e.g. local control station, key-operated switches, limit switches, ...), freely-assignable to control functions.

Technical data of the digital modules	
• 24 V DC: Cable lengths (single) Input characteristic	 300 m Type 2 according to EN 61131-2
• 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: Cable lengths (single) Input characteristic	 200 m (cable capacitance 300 nF / km) —
Connection	Removable terminal block with screw connection
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm - 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2 x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1 x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2 AWG 20 to 14 / 1 x AWG 20 to 12
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 - 1.5 mm^2 / 1 x 0.5 mm^2 - 2.5 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14

15.6.2 Technical data, digital modules DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe

Technical data of the DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe digital modules	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Enclosure width	45 mm
System interfaces	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel
Rated control supply voltage U_s (according to DIN EN 61131-2)	• 24 V DC • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC, 50/60 Hz
Operating range	• 24 V DC: 0.8 to 1.2 x U_s • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: 0.85 to 1.1 x U_s
Power consumption	DM-F LOCAL: • 24 V DC: 3 W • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: 9.5 VA/4.5 W DM-F PROFIsafe: • 24 V DC: 4 W • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: 11.0 VA/5.5 W
Protective separation according to IEC 60947-1	Between relay enabling circuits / relay outputs and electronics
Rated insulation voltage U_i	300 V (at pollution degree 3)
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	4 kV

Technical data of the DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe digital modules	
Mains buffering time	• 24 V DC: typically 20 ms at 0.8 x Us • 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: typically 20 ms at 0.85 x Us, typically 200 ms at 230 V
Relay outputs	2 monostable relay outputs
• Number	• Common potential connection is internally disconnected in a fail-safe manner by a relay enabling circuit
• Function	• Normally open contact, freely assignable to the control functions
Electrical service life of relay outputs	0.1 million switching cycles (AC-15, 230 V/3 A)
Relay enabling circuits	
• Number	2 common switching-type, fail-safe relay enabling circuits
• Function	Fail-safe normally open contacts
• Stipulated short-circuit protection for relay enabling circuits / relay outputs	Fuse links operating class gL/gG 4 A (IEC 60947-5-1), separate for each relay enabling circuit
• Rated uninterrupted current of relay enabling circuits	5 A
• Rated switching capacity of relay enabling circuits	AC-15: 3 A / AC 24 V; 3 A / AC 120 V; 1.5 A / AC 230 V DC-13: 4 A / DC 24 V; 0.55 A / DC 60 V; 0.22 A / DC 125 V; 0.11 A / DC 250 V
• Electrical service life of relay enabling circuits	0.1 million switching cycles (AC-15, 240 V/ 2 A)
• Switching rate of the relay enabling circuits	2000/h
Connection	Removable terminals with screw connection
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm - 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm2 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

15.6.3 Technical data of the DM-F Local digital module

Technical data of the DM-F Local digital module			
LEDs on DM-F LOCAL		**Color**	**Meaning**
"READY"		OFF	System interface not connected / supply voltage too low / device defective
		Green	Device ON/system interface OK
		Flashing green	Device ON / system interface not active or not OK
"DEVICE"		OFF	Supply voltage too low
		Green	Device ON
		Flashing green	Self-test
		Yellow	Configuration mode
		Flashing yellow	Configuration error
		Red	Device defective or faulty
"OUT"		OFF	Safety-related output not active
		Green	Safety-related output active
		Flashing green	Feedback circuit not closed although start condition satisfied
"IN"		OFF	Input not active
		Green	Input active
		Flashing green	Fault detected (e.g., cross circuit at input, sensor simultaneity not fulfilled)
"GF"		OFF	No general fault
		Red	Group fault (wiring error, cross-circuit, configuration error)
		Flashing red	Group fault (feedback circuit fault, simultaneity condition not satisfied)
"1"		OFF	Cross-circuit detection Off
		Yellow	Cross-circuit detection On
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"2"		OFF	NC contact/NO contact
		Yellow	NC contact/NC contact
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"3"		OFF	2 x 1-channel
		Yellow	1 x 2-channel
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"4"		OFF	Debounce time Y12, Y22, Y34 ~ 50 ms
		Yellow	Debounce time Y12, Y22, Y34 ~ 10 ms
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"5"		OFF	Sensor circuit, automatic start
		Yellow	Sensor circuit, monitored start
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error

Technical data of the DM-F Local digital module			
"6"		OFF	Cascading input 1, automatic start
		Yellow	Cascading input 1, monitored start
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"7"		OFF	With startup testing
		Yellow	Without startup testing
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
"8"		OFF	Automatic starting after power failure
		Yellow	No automatic starting after power failure
		Flashing yellow	Configuration mode waiting for confirmation
		Flickering yellow	Configuration error
DIP switch		for setting safety functions	
"SET / RESET" button		• Application of parameters set via DIP switch • Resetting of faults (also possible via "TEST/RESET" button on basic unit)	
Inputs with safety relay function		2 sensor inputs 24 V DC (Y12, Y22) • Supply via terminal T1 and T2 with cross-circuit detection or external supply (static +24 V DC) without cross-circuit detection • Functions parameterizable via DIP switch	
		1 start signal input 24 V DC (Y33) • For monitored reconnection of the relay enabling circuits after a safety-related trip • Supply via terminal T1 with/without T3 (static +24 V DC) without cross-circuit detection	
		1 cascading input 24 V DC (1) • For use in connection with a higher-level safety relay • Supply via terminal T3 (static +24 V DC)	
		1 feedback circuit input 24 V DC (Y34) • For contactor monitoring of the motor and incoming supply contactors via series-connected auxiliary switch normally-closed contacts • Supply via terminal T2 with/without T3 (static +24 V DC) without cross-circuit detection	
Cable length (single)		1500 m	
Input characteristic		Type 2 according to EN 61131-2	

15.6.4 Technical data of the DM-F-PROFIsafe digital module

Technical data of the DM-F PROFIsafe digital module			
LED display DM-F PROFIsafe		**Color**	**Meaning**
"READY"		OFF	System interface not connected / supply voltage too low / device defective
		Green	Device ON/system interface OK
		Flashing green	Device ON / system interface not active or not OK
"DEVICE"		OFF	Supply voltage too low
		Green	Device ON
		Red	Device defective or faulty
"OUT"		OFF	Safety-related output not active
		Green	Safety-related output active
		Flashing green	Feedback circuit not closed although start condition satisfied
"GF"		OFF	No general fault
		Red	Group fault (PROFIsafe not active, incorrect PROFIsafe address, wiring error, device defective)
"1"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 1
"2"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 2
"3"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 4
"4"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 8
"5"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 16
"6"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 32
"7"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 64
"8"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 128
"9"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 256
"10"		Yellow	PROFIsafe address 512
DIP switch		for setting the PROFIsafe address	
"SET / RESET" button		• Displays the set PROFIsafe address • Application of the set PROFIsafe address (restart of the module) • Resetting of faults (also possible via "TEST/RESET" button on basic unit)	
Inputs binary		• 3 inputs (83, 85, 89) 24 V DC • Supply via terminal 84 or external supply (static +24 V) • Common connected, electrically isolated inputs for acquiring process signals (e.g., local control station, keyswitch, limit switch, etc.), freely assignable to control functions	
Input with safety relay function		• 1 feedback circuit input (91/FBC) 24 V DC • For contactor monitoring of the motor and incoming supply contactors via series-connected auxiliary switch contacts • Supply via terminal 90/T	
Cable length (single)		300 m	
Input characteristic		Type 2 according to EN 61131-2	

15.6.5 Safety-related technical data of the digital modules DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe

See "Technical Data" in the Manual "SIMOCODE pro Safety" fail-safe digital modules (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50564852).

15.6.6 Technical data of the analog module

Technical data of the analog module	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interfaces	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel.
Control circuit	
Connection type:	2-wire connection
Inputs:	
• Channels	2 (passive)
• Parameterizable measuring ranges	0/4 mA to 20 mA
• Cable shielding	Recommended for up to 30 m and outside the cabinet; shielding mandatory for cables of 30 m or longer
• Max. input current (destruction limit)	40 mA
• Accuracy	±1 %
• Input resistance	50 ohms
• Conversion time	150 ms
• Resolution	12 bits
• Open-circuit detection	For measuring range 4 mA to 20 mA
• Isolation of the inputs from the device electronics	No
Outputs:	
• Channels	1
• Parameterizable output range	0/4 mA to 20 mA
• Cable shielding	Recommended for up to 30 m and outside the cabinet; shielding mandatory for cables of 30 m or longer

Technical data of the analog module	
• Max. output voltage	30 V DC
• Accuracy	±1 %
• Max. output load	500 ohms
• Conversion time	25 ms
• Resolution	12 bits
• Short-circuit proof	Yes
• Isolation of the outputs from the device electronics	No
Connection:	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

15.6.7 Technical data of the ground-fault module 3UF7500-1AA00-0

Technical data of the ground-fault module 3UF7500-1AA00-0	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35 mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interface	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel.
Control circuit	
Connectable 3UL22 residual current transformer with rated fault currents I_N	0.3 / 0.5 / 1 A
• $I_{ground\ fault} \leq 50\ \%\ I_N$	No tripping
• $I_{ground\ fault} \geq 100\ \%\ I_N$	Tripping
Response delay (conversion time)	300 ms to 500 ms, additional delay possible
Connection	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Connection cross sections, solid:	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
- Connection cross sections, finely stranded with ferrule:	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

15.6.8 Technical data of the ground-fault module 3UF7510-1AA00-0

Technical data of the ground-fault module 3UF7510-1AA00-0	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35 mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interface	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel.
Control circuit	
Cable to the residual current transformer **Notice** • We recommend using twisted cables. • Cables of lengths > 10 m must additionally be shielded and grounded.	

Conductor cross section	0.5 mm^2	1.0 mm^2	1.5 mm^2	2.5 mm^2	4.0 mm^2
AWG	20 kcmil	18 kcmil	16 kcmil	14 / 12 kcmil	10 kcmil
Max. cable length	70 m	140 m	210 m	300 m	550 m
Connectable residual current transformer 3UL23 [1] - feed-through diameter	35 mm to 210 mm				
Type of current to be monitored	AC and pulsating DC (type A)				
Measurable line frequency	16 Hz to 400 Hz				
Response value current (settable)	0.03 A to 40 A				
Measuring accuracy (relative) ground-fault module	±5 %				
Measuring accuracy (relative) transformer 3UL23	±2.5 %				
Reaction time (maximal)	100 ms				

Connection	
Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN to 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm to 1.2 Nm
Connection cross sections	
• Solid	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
• Finely stranded with end sleeve	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

1) Technical data residual current transformer 3UL23: See Manual 3UG4/3RR2 Monitoring Relay (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/54397927).

15.6.9 Technical data of the temperature module

Technical data of the temperature module	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Display	
• Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interface	For connecting to a basic unit, an additional expansion module, a current measuring module or a current / voltage measuring module or the operator panel.
Sensor circuit	
Conversion time	500 ms
Type of connection	2-wire or 3-wire connection
Typical sensor current:	
• PT100	1 mA (typical)
• PT1000 / KTY83 / KTY84 / NTC	0.2 mA (typical)
Open circuit detection / short-circuit detection / measuring range:	
• PT100 / PT1000	Open circuit, short-circuit; measuring range: -50 °C to +500 °C
• KTY83-110	Open circuit, short-circuit; measuring range: -50 °C to +175 °C
• KTY84	Open circuit, short-circuit; measuring range: -40 °C to +300 °C
• NTC	Short-circuit; measuring range: +80 °C to +160 °C
Measuring accuracy at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (T20)	< ±2 K, ±1 digit
Deviation due to ambient temperature (as % of measured value)	0.05 per K deviation from T20
Isolation of the inputs from the device electronics	No
Connection	
Tightening torque	TORQUE: 7 LB.IN - 10.3 LB.IN 0.8 Nm - 1.2 Nm
Connection cross sections	
• Solid:	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 4 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 14 / 1x AWG 20 to 12
• Finely stranded with end sleeve:	2x 0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2 / 1x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2x AWG 20 to 16 / 1x AWG 20 to 14

15.7 Technical data of the multifunction module

Technical data of the multifunction module	
Mounting	Snap-mounted onto 35-mm standard mounting rail or screw-mounted using additional push-in lugs
Cabinet mounting	Minimum distance to be maintained • from cabinet rear wall for series mounting at side: 0 mm • from grounded parts at side: 2 mm
Display	
Green "READY" LED	• Continuous light: "Ready for operation" • Flashing: "No connection to basic unit"
System interfaces	For connection to a SIMOCODE pro S basic unit or an operator panel
Digital module function	
Control circuit	
Rated insulation voltage U_i	300 V (at pollution degree 3)
Rated impulse withstand voltage U_{imp}	4 kV
Inputs (binary)	4 externally supplied, isolated inputs (24 V DC or 110 V to 240 V AC / DC, depending on the type), connected to common potential for measuring process signals (e.g. local control station, key-operated switches, limit switches, ...), freely-assignable to control functions.
• 24 V DC: Cable lengths (single) Input characteristic	 300 m Type 2 according to EN 61131-2
• 110 V to 240 V AC/DC: Cable lengths (single) Input characteristic	 200 m (cable capacitance 300 nF / km) —
Relay outputs	
• Number	2 monostable relay outputs (depending on the type)
• Function	Isolated NO contacts (NC contact response parameterizable via internal signal conditioning), relay outputs all with connection to common potential, freely-assignable to control functions (e.g. line, star or delta contactor or operating state status information).
• Stipulated short-circuit protection for auxiliary contacts (relay outputs)	• Fuse links, operating class gL/gG 6 A, quick-response 10 A (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 1.6 A, C characteristic (IEC 60947-5-1) • Miniature circuit breaker 6 A, C characteristic (I_k < 500 A)
• Rated uninterrupted current	• 5 A • 6 A at max. +50 °C
• Rated switching capacity	
AC-15	6 A / 24 V AC; 6 A / 120 V AC; 3 A / 230 V AC

Technical data of the multifunction module	
DC-13	2 A / 24 V DC; 0.55 A / 60 V DC; 0.25 A / 125 V DC
Ground-fault module function	
Connectable 3UL23 residual current transformer - feed-through diameter	35 mm to 210 mm
Type of current to be monitored	AC and pulsating DC (type A)
Measurable line frequency	16 Hz to 400 Hz
Response value current (settable)	0.03 A to 40 A
Measuring accuracy (relative) ground-fault module	±5 %
Measuring accuracy (relative) transformer 3UL23	±2.5 %
Reaction time (maximal)	100 ms
Temperature module function	
Sensor circuit	
Versions of the cable shielding for the sensor circuit	• Up to 30 m, cable shielding recommended • From 30 m, cable shielding necessary
Versions of the cable shielding for the sensor circuit	
Conversion time	500 ms
Type of connection	2-wire or 3-wire connection
Typical sensor circuit	
• PT100	1 mA (typical)
• PT1000 / KTY83 / KTY84 / NTC	0.2 mA (typical)
Measuring range open circuit detection / short-circuit detection	
• PT100 / PT1000	-50 °C ... +500 °C (open circuit, short circuit)
• KTY83-110	-50 °C to +175 °C (open circuit, short circuit)
• KTY84	-40 °C to +300 °C (open circuit, short circuit)
• NTC	+80 °C to +160 °C (short circuit)
Measuring accuracy at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (T20)	< ±2 K, ±1 digit
Deviation due to ambient temperature (as % of measured value)	0.05 per K deviation from T20
Isolation of the inputs from the device electronics	No

Technical data of the multifunction module	
Connection	
• Tightening torque	TORQUE: 5.2 LB.IN to 7.0 LB.IN 0.6 Nm to 0.8 Nm
• Connection cross sections	
- Solid	2 x0.5 mm^2 to 1.5 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 to 2.5 mm^2 2 x AWG 20 to 16 / 1 x AWG 20 to 14
- Finely stranded with end sleeve	2 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 1.0 mm^2; 1 x 0.5 mm^2 ... 2.5 mm^2

15.8 Technical data of the operator panels

15.8.1 Technical data of the operator panel

Technical data of the operator panel	
Mounting	Installation in a cabinet door or in a front panel, with IP54 system interface cover.
LED displays	
• Red / green / yellow "DEVICE" LED	• Red blocked: "Function test negative, device disabled" • Green: "Ready for operation" • Flashing green: "No connection to basic unit" • Yellow: "Memory module or addressing plug detected" • OFF: "No control supply voltage"
• Green "BUS" LED	• Continuous light: "Communication with PLC/PCS" • Flashing: "Baud rate recognized/communication with PC/PG"
• Red "GEN. FAULT" LED	• Continuous light / • Flashing: "Feeder fault," e.g. overload tripping
• 3 yellow LEDs / 4 green LEDs	For freely assigning any status signals
Buttons	
• Test / Reset	• Resets the device after tripping • Function test (system self-test) • Operation of memory module or addressing plug
• Control buttons	• For controlling the motor feeder, freely assignable
System interfaces	
• Front	For connecting a memory module, an addressing plug, or a PC cable for parameterization purposes
• Rear face	For connecting a cable to the basic unit or the expansion module

15.8.2 Technical data of the operator panel with display

Technical data of the operator panel with display	
Mounting	Installation in a cabinet door or in a front panel, with IP54 system interface cover.
LED displays	
• Red / green / yellow "DEVICE" LED	• Red blocked: "Function test negative, device disabled" • Green: "Ready for operation" • Flashing green: "No connection to basic unit" • Yellow: "Memory module or addressing plug detected" • OFF: "No control supply voltage"
• Green "BUS" LED	• Continuous light: "Communication with PLC/PCS" • Flashing: "Baud rate recognized/communication with PC/PG"
• Red "GEN. FAULT" LED	• Continuous light/flashing: "Feeder fault," e.g. overload tripping
• 4 green LEDs	For freely assigning any status signals (preferably for feedback on the switching state, e.g. ON, OFF, CCW, CW)
Display	Graphic display of current measured values, operating and diagnostics data or status information.
Buttons	
• Control buttons	• Control of the motor feeder, freely assignable
• Arrow keys	• Navigation in the display menu
• Softkeys	• Various functions, depending upon the menu, e.g. test, reset, operation of memory module and addressing plug
System interfaces	
• Front	For connecting a memory module, an addressing plug, or a PC cable for parameterization purposes
• Rear face	Connection to the basic unit or to an expansion module

Note

Product version of the operator panel with display

- For use with the SIMOCODE pro V PN/pro V EIP basic units, an operator panel with display version *E07* or higher is required
- For use with the SIMOCODE pro V MB basic unit, an operator panel with display version *E09* or higher is required.

15.9 Technical data of the compartment identification

Technical data of the initialization module

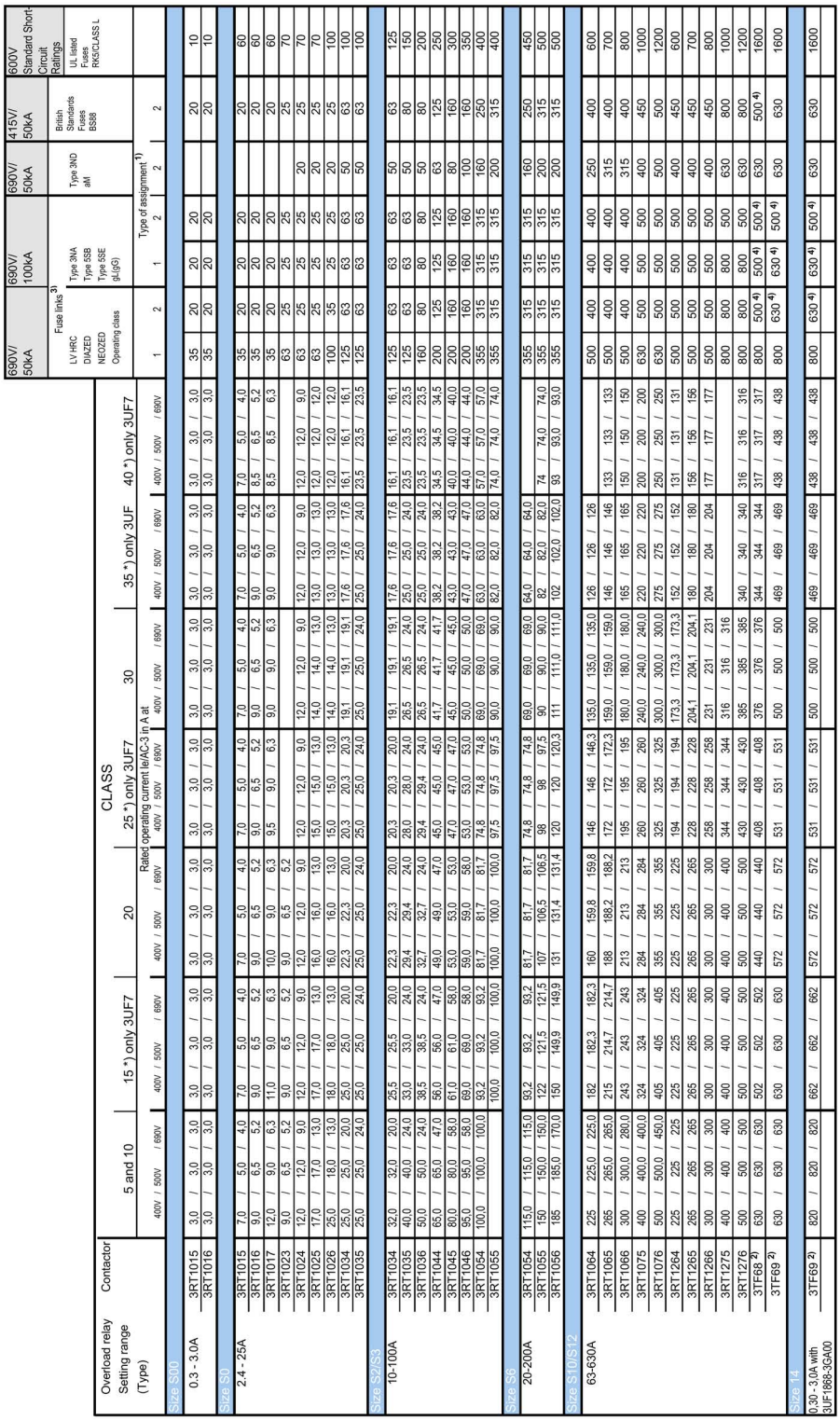
Technical data of the initialization module	
Order No. (MLFB)	3UF7 902-0AA00-0
Ambient temperature	-25 to +80 °C
Rated voltage	300 V
Rated operating voltage	24 V

Technical data of the Y connecting cable

Technical data of the Y connecting cable	
Order No. (MLFB)	3UF7 931-0CA00-0, 3UF7 932-0CA00-0, 3UF7 937-0CA00-0
Lengths of system cable / open end of cable	
3UF7 931-0CA00-0	0.1 m / 1.0 m
3UF7 932-0CA00-0	0.5 m / 1.0 m
3UF7 937-0CA00-0	1.0 m / 1.0 m

15.10 Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeders for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V for 1st generation current / voltage measuring module

Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeder for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V



Overload relay Setting range (Type)	Contactor	CLASS 5 and 10			15 *) only 3UF7			20			25 *) only 3UF7			30			35 *) only 3UF			40 *) only 3UF7			690V/ 50kA	690V/ 100kA		690V/ 50kA		415V/ 50kA		600V Standard Short-Circuit Ratings
											Rated operating current (Ie/AC-3 in A at												Fuse links [3]			Type of assignment [1]				
		400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	400V	500V	/ 690V	LV HRC DIAZED NEOZED Operating class	Type 3NA Type 5SB Type 5SE gL/gG	Type 3ND aM	1	2	British Standards Fuses BS88		UL listed Fuses RK5/CLASS L
																											1	2	1	2	
Size S00																															
0.3 - 3.0A	3RT1015	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	35	20	20			20		10
	3RT1016	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	35	20	20			20		10
Size S0																															
2.4 - 25A	3RT1015	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	7,0	5,0	4,0	35	20	20			20		60
	3RT1016	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	8,5	6,5	5,2	35	20	20			20		60
	3RT1017	12,0	9,0	6,3	11,0	9,0	6,3	10,0	9,0	6,3	9,5	9,0	6,3	9,0	9,0	6,3	9,0	9,0	6,3	8,5	8,5	6,3	35	20	20			20		60
	3RT1023	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2	9,0	6,5	5,2													63	25	25			25		70
	3RT1024	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	12,0	12,0	9,0	63	25	25	20		25		70
	3RT1025	17,0	17,0	13,0	17,0	17,0	13,0	16,0	16,0	13,0	15,0	15,0	13,0	14,0	14,0	13,0	13,0	13,0	13,0	12,0	12,0	12,0	63	25	25	20		25		70
	3RT1026	25,0	18,0	13,0	18,0	18,0	13,0	16,0	16,0	13,0	15,0	15,0	13,0	14,0	14,0	13,0	13,0	13,0	13,0	12,0	12,0	12,0	100	35	25	25		25		100
	3RT1034	25,0	25,0	20,0	25,0	25,0	20,0	22,3	22,3	20,0	20,3	20,3	20,3	19,1	19,1	19,1	17,6	17,6	17,6	16,1	16,1	16,1	125	63	63	50		63		100
	3RT1035	25,0	25,0	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	23,5	23,5	23,5	125	63	63	50		63		100
Size S2 (S3)																															
10-100A	3RT1034	32,0	32,0	20,0	25,5	25,5	20,0	22,3	22,3	20,0	20,3	20,3	20,0	19,1	19,1	19,1	17,6	17,6	17,6	16,1	16,1	16,1	125	63	63	50		63		125
	3RT1035	40,0	40,0	24,0	33,0	33,0	24,0	29,4	29,4	24,0	28,0	28,0	24,0	26,5	26,5	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	23,5	23,5	23,5	125	63	63	50		80		150
	3RT1036	50,0	50,0	24,0	38,5	38,5	24,0	32,7	32,7	24,0	29,4	29,4	24,0	26,5	26,5	24,0	25,0	25,0	24,0	23,5	23,5	23,5	160	80	80	50		80		200
	3RT1044	65,0	65,0	47,0	56,0	56,0	47,0	49,0	49,0	47,0	45,0	45,0	45,0	41,7	41,7	41,7	38,2	38,2	38,2	34,5	34,5	34,5	200	125	125	63		125		250
	3RT1045	80,0	80,0	58,0	61,0	61,0	58,0	53,0	53,0	53,0	47,0	47,0	47,0	45,0	45,0	45,0	43,0	43,0	43,0	40,0	40,0	40,0	200	160	160	80		160		300
	3RT1046	95,0	95,0	58,0	69,0	69,0	58,0	59,0	59,0	58,0	53,0	53,0	53,0	50,0	50,0	50,0	47,0	47,0	47,0	44,0	44,0	44,0	200	160	160	100		160		350
	3RT1054	100,0	100,0	100,0	93,2	93,2	93,2	81,7	81,7	81,7	74,8	74,8	74,8	69,0	69,0	69,0	63,0	63,0	63,0	57,0	57,0	57,0	355	315	315	160		250		400
	3RT1055				100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	97,5	97,5	97,5	90,0	90,0	90,0	82,0	82,0	82,0	74,0	74,0	74,0	355	315	315	200		315		400
Size S6																															
20-200A	3RT1054	115,0	115,0	115,0	93,2	93,2	93,2	81,7	81,7	81,7	74,8	74,8	74,8	69,0	69,0	69,0	64,0	64,0	64,0				355	315	315	160		250		450
	3RT1055	150	150,0	150,0	122	121,5	121,5	107	106,5	106,5	98	98	97,5	90	90,0	90,0	82	82,0	82,0	74	74,0	74,0	355	315	315	200		315		500
	3RT1056	185	185,0	170,0	150	149,9	149,9	131	131,4	131,4	120	120	120,3	111	111,0	111,0	102	102,0	102,0	93	93,0	93,0	355	315	315	200		315		500
Size S10/S12																															
63-630A	3RT1064	225	225,0	225,0	182	182,3	182,3	160	159,8	159,8	146	146	146,3	135,0	135,0	135,0	126	126	126				500	400	400	400	250	400		600
	3RT1065	265	265,0	265,0	215	214,7	214,7	188	188,2	188,2	172	172	172,3	159,0	159,0	159,0	146	146	146	133	133	133	500	400	400	400	315	400		700
	3RT1066	300	300,0	280,0	243	243	243	213	213	213	195	195	195	180,0	180,0	180,0	165	165	165	150	150	150	500	400	400	400	315	400		800
	3RT1075	400	400,0	400,0	324	324	324	284	284	284	260	260	260	240,0	240,0	240,0	220	220	220	200	200	200	630	500	500	500	400	450		1000
	3RT1076	500	500,0	450,0	405	405	405	355	355	355	325	325	325	300,0	300,0	300,0	275	275	275	250	250	250	630	500	500	500	500	500		1200
	3RT1264	225	225	225	225	225	225	225	225	225	194	194	194	173,3	173,3	173,3	152	152	152	131	131	131	500	500	500	500	400	450		600
	3RT1265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	228	228	228	204,1	204,1	204,1	180	180	180	156	156	156	500	500	500	500	400	450		700
	3RT1266	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	258	258	258	231	231	231	204	204	204	177	177	177	500	500	500	500	400	450		800
	3RT1275	400	400	400	400	400	400	400	400	400	344	344	344	316	316	316							800	800	800	500	630	800		1000
	3RT1276	500	500	500	500	500	500	500	500	500	430	430	430	385	385	385	340	340	340	316	316	316	800	800	800	500	630	800		1200
	3TF68 [2]	630	630	630	502	502	502	440	440	440	408	408	408	376	376	376	344	344	344	317	317	317	800	500 [4]	500 [4]	630	500 [4]	630		1600
	3TF69 [2]	630	630	630	630	630	630	572	572	572	531	531	531	500	500	500	469	469	469	438	438	438	800	630 [4]	630 [4]	500 [4]	630	630		1600
Size T4																															
0.30 - 3.0A with 3UF1868-3GA00	3TF69 [2]	820	820	820	662	662	662	572	572	572	531	531	531	500	500	500	469	469	469	438	438	438	800	630 [4]	630 [4]	500 [4]	630	630		1600

Figure 15-1 Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeder for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V for 3UF7 8 (1) 1) , 2) , 3) , 4): See below.

Overload relay Setting range (Type)	Contacor	CLASS 5 and 10	15 only 3UF7	20	25 only 3UF7	30	35 only 3UF7	40 only3UF7	690V/ 100kA Fuse links 3) NH DIAZED, NEOZED TYP 3NA, 5SB, 5SE Operating class gG		690V/ 100kA Type 3ND Operating class aM		415V/ 80kA British standards Fuses BS88		600V Standart short-circuit Ratings UL listed Fuses RK5/CLASS L	High short-circuit Ratings
		Rated operating current Is/AC in A at							Type of assignment 1)							
		400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	400V / 500V / 690V	1	2	1	2	1	2		
Size S00 2)																
0.3 - 3.0A	without contactors	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A	10A	10A
3UF7100-1AA00-0/	3RT2015	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
3UF7110-1AA00-0/	3RT2016	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
3RB2906-2BG1	3RT2017	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
	3RT2018	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	3A / 3A / 3A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
2.4 - 25	3RT2015	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	7,0A / 6,0A / 4,9A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
3UF7101-1AA00-0/	3RT2016	9,0A / 7,7A 6,7A	9,0A / 7,7A 6,7A	9,0A / 7,7A 6,7A	9,0A / 7,7A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,7A / 6,7A	8,5A / 7,7A / 6,7A	8,0A / 7,7A / 6,7A	35A	20A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
3UF7111-1AA00-0/	3RT2017	12,0A / 9,2A / 6,7A	10,7A / 9,2A / 6,7A	10,0A / 9,2A / 6,7A	9,5A / 9,2A / 6,7A	9,0A / 9,0A / 6,7A	8,5A / 8,5A / 6,7A	8,0A / 8,0A / 6,7A	50A	35A	20A	16A	35A	20A		
3RB2906-2DG1	3RT2018	16,0A / 12,4A / 8,9A	13,0A / 12,4A / 8,9A	11,5A / 11,5A / 8,9A	10,3A / 10,3A / 8,9A	9,5A / 9,5A / 8,9A	8,8A / 8,8A / 8,8A	8,3A / 8,3A / 8,3A	50A	25A	25A	20A	50A	25A		
Size S0 2)																
2.4 - 25A	without contactors	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	25A / 25A / 25A	125A	50A	50A	25A	125A	50A	100A	100A
3UF7101-1AA00-0/	3RT2023	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	9,0A / 7,6A / 6,7A	63A	25A	32A	20A	63A	25A		
3UF7111-1AA00-0/	3RT2024	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	12,0A / 12,0A / 9,0A	63A	25A	32A	20A	63A	25A		
3RB2906-2DG1	3RT2025	17,0A / 17,0A / 13,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 13,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 13,0A	14,8A / 14,8A / 13,0A	14,0A / 14,0A / 13,0A	13,4A / 13,4A / 13,0A	13,0A / 13,0A / 13,0A	63A	25A	32A	20A	63A	25A		
	3RT2026	25,0A / 18,0A / 13,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 13,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 13,0A	14,8A / 14,8A / 13,0A	14,0A / 14,0A / 13,0A	13,4A / 13,4A / 13,0A	13,0A / 13,0A / 13,0A	100A	35A	50A	20A	100A	35A		
	3RT2027	25,0A / 25,0A / 21,0A	23,0A / 20,0A / 20,0A	20,0A / 20,0A / 17,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 15,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 15,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 15,0A	15,0A / 15,0A / 15,0A	125A	50A	50A	25A	125A	50A		
	3RT2028	25,0A / 25,0A / 21,0A	23,0A / 20,0A / 20,0A	20,0A / 20,0A / 17,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 15,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 15,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 15,0A	15,0A / 15,0A / 15,0A	125A	50A	50A	25A	125A	50A		
10 - 100A	without contactors	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	100A / 100A / 100A	315A	315A			315A	315A	400A	400A
3UF7102-1AA00-0/	3RT2024	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	12,0A / 12,0A /	63A	25A	32A	20A	63A	25A		
3UF7112-1AA00-0/	3RT2025	17,0A / 17,0A / 13,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 13,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 13,0A	14,8A / 14,8A / 13,0A	14,0A / 14,0A / 13,0A	13,4A / 13,4A / 13,0A	13,0A / 13,0A / 13,0A	63A	25A	32A	20A	63A	25A		
3RB2906-2JG1	3RT2026	25,0A / 18,0A / 13,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 13,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 13,0A	14,8A / 14,8A / 13,0A	14,0A / 14,0A / 13,0A	13,4A / 13,4A / 13,0A	13,0A / 13,0A / 13,0A	100A	35A	50A	20A	100A	35A		
	3RT2027	32,0A / 32,0A / 21,0A	23,0A / 20,0A / 20,0A	20,0A / 20,0A / 17,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 15,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 15,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 15,0A	15,0A / 15,0A / 15,0A	125A	50A	50A	25A	125A	50A		
	3RT2028	38,0A / 32,0A / 21,0A	23,0A / 20,0A / 20,0A	20,0A / 20,0A / 17,0A	18,0A / 18,0A / 15,0A	17,0A / 17,0A / 15,0A	16,0A / 16,0A / 15,0A	15,0A / 15,0A / 15,0A	125A	50A	50A	25A	125A	50A		

Figure 15-2 Short-circuit protection with fuses for motor feeder for short-circuit currents up to 100 kA and 690 V for 3UF7 8 (2)

1) Assignment and short-circuit protective devices acc. to IEC 60947-4-1

WARNING

Type of coordination 1

With type of coordination 1, the contactor or starter must not pose a hazard to people or equipment in the event of a short circuit!

The contactor or starter must be suitable for further operation without repair and replacement of parts.

WARNING

Type of coordination 2

With type of coordination 2, the contactor or starter must not pose a hazard to people or equipment in the event of a short circuit!

The contactor or starter must be suitable for further use.

There is a risk of contact welding.

2) No contactor installation possible

3)

NOTICE

Operating voltage

Pay attention to the operating voltage!

4)

WARNING

Maximum AC3 operating current

Ensure that there is a sufficient safety margin between the maximum AC-3 operating current and the rated fuse current.

You will find selection tables for fuseless and fused motor feeders in the following manuals:

- Configuration Manual Load Feeders - Configuring the SIRIUS Modular System (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/39714188)
- Configuration Manual Configuring SIRIUS Innovations UL - Selection Data for Fuseless and Fused Load Feeders (https://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/53433538)

The manufacturer's declarations can be found in the Industry Online Support:

Declarations, manufacturer
(https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109741638)

15.11 Typical reaction times

15.11.1 Typical reaction times of the SIMOCODE pro C/V device series

Table 15- 1 Typical reaction times of SIMOCODE pro C device series

Component	Time inputs	Time processing	Time outputs
Basic unit:	Set delay time	30 ms	10 ms
Thermistor:	400 ms		-
PROFIBUS:	30 ms		30 ms
Current measurement:	200 ms		-
Internal ground fault:	300 ms ... 600 ms + set delay		-

Table 15- 2 Typical reaction times of SIMOCODE pro V device series [1)]

Component	Time: Inputs		Time: Processing	Time: Outputs
Basic unit:	Set delay time		5 ms	10 ms
Thermistor:	400 ms			-
PROFIBUS:	5 ms			5 ms
	when using UM	when using UM+ [2), 4)]		
Current measurement:	300 ms	200 ms		-
Voltage measurement:	300 ms	200 ms		-
Active power / cos phi:	1000 ms	200 ms		-
Internal ground fault:	300 ms ... 600 ms [3)]	200 ms ... 600 ms [3)]		-
Ground-fault module / external ground fault	100 ms [3)]			-
Digital modules:				
• 24 V DC version	15 ms + delay time			25 ms
• 110 V - 240 V AC/DC version	50 ms + delay time			25 ms
Analog module	150 ms			25 ms
Temperature module	500 ms			-
DM-F Local	≤ 75 ms + delay time			30 ms
DM-F PROFIsafe	15 ms + delay time			30 ms

1) Based upon a typical hardware set-up: Basic unit + current measuring module + 2 expansion modules

Reaction time = inputs conversion time + internal processing time + outputs conversion time

Example:

You wish to switch a relay output of the basic unit via PROFIBUS when the "remote" bit is set:

- SIMOCODE pro C: Reaction time = 30 ms + 30 ms + 10 ms = 70 ms
- SIMOCODE pro V: Reaction time = 5 ms + 5 ms + 10 ms = 20 ms.

For the data from and to the PLC, you must also add the times for bus execution time, IM/CP cycles, and PLC-CPU cycle.

You will find the corresponding information in the device descriptions.

2) 2nd generation current / voltage measuring modules

3) + set delay

4) the existing values are valid in compatibility mode

15.11.2 Typical response times of SIMOCODE pro S device series

Table 15- 3 Typical reaction times of the SIMOCODE pro device series

Component/control function	Time inputs	Time: Processing	Time: Outputs
Basic unit: Thermistor: PROFIBUS:	Set delay time 400 ms 30 ms	30 ms	10 ms - 30 ms
Current measurement Internal ground fault	300 ms 300 ms ... 600 ms + set delay		- -
Multifunction module • 24 V-DC version • 110 V - 240 V AC/DC version	 30 ms + delay time 65 ms + delay time		 40 ms 40 ms
Ground-fault module function	100 ms + set delay		-
Temperature module function	500 ms		-
Star-delta starter - typical switchover time from star to delta	100 to 150 ms 1)		-

1) QE2 and QE3 must be parameterized to the outputs of the basic unit.

Example:

You wish to switch a relay output of the basic unit via PROFIBUS when the "remote" bit is set:

Reaction time = 30 ms + 30 ms + 10 ms = 70 ms

In the case of the data from and to the PLC, you must also add the times for bus runtime, IM/CP cycles, and PLC-CPU cycle.

You will find the corresponding information in the device descriptions.

15.11.3 Typical reaction times of the Modbus RTU device series

Component	Time: Inputs	Time: Processing	Time: Outputs
Basic unit: Thermistor: Modbus RTU:	Set delay time 400 ms 5 ms	5 ms	10 ms - 5 ms
Current measurement: Voltage measurement: Active power / cos phi: Internal ground fault:	300 ms 300 ms 1000 ms 300 ms ... 600 ms + set delay		- - - -
Ground-fault module / external ground fault	100 ms + set delay		-
Digital modules: • 24 V DC version • 110 V - 240 V AC/DC version	 15 ms + delay time 50 ms + delay time		 25 ms 25 ms
Analog module	150 ms		25 ms
Temperature module	500 ms		-
DM-F Local	≤ 75 ms + delay time		30 ms
DM-F PROFIsafe	15 ms + delay time		30 ms

1) Based upon a typical hardware set-up: Basic unit + current measuring module + 2 expansion modules

Reaction time = inputs conversion time + internal processing time + outputs conversion time

Example:

You wish to switch a relay output of the basic unit via PROFIBUS when the "remote" bit is set:

Reaction time = 5 ms + 5 ms + 10 ms = 20 ms.

For the data from and to the PLC, you must also add the times for bus execution time, IM/CP cycles, and PLC-CPU cycle.

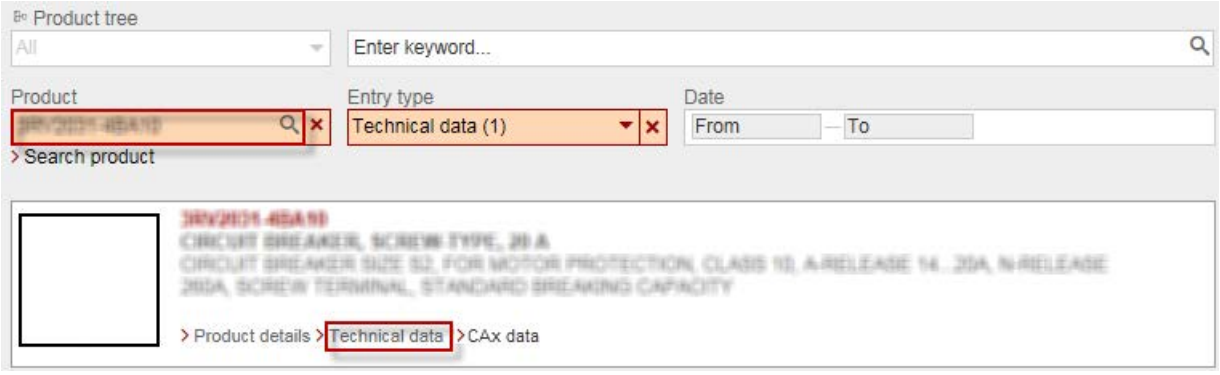
You will find the corresponding information in the device descriptions.

15.12 Technical data in Siemens Industry Online Support

Technical data sheet

You can also find the technical data of the product at Siemens Industry Online Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/).

1. Enter the full article number of the desired device in the "Product" field, and confirm with the Enter key.
2. Click the "Technical data link.



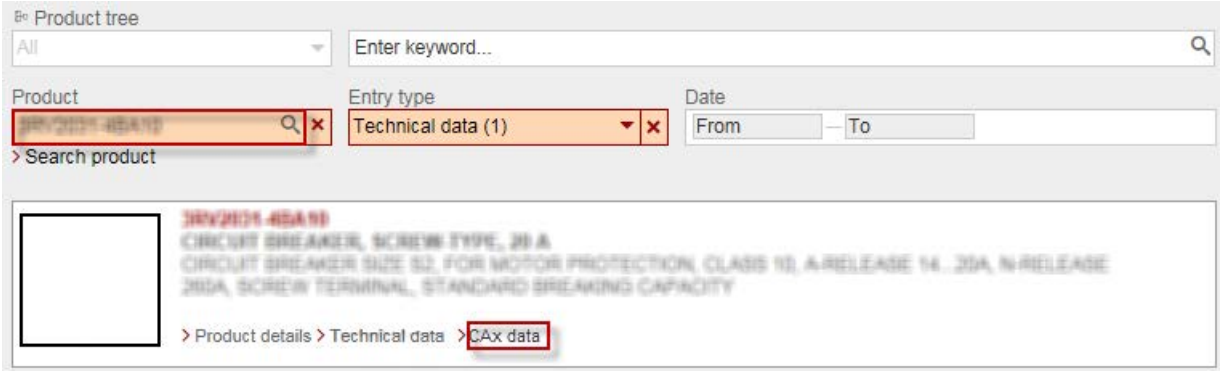
CAx data, dimension drawings

16

16.1 CAx data

You can find the CAx data in the Siemens Industry Online Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/).

1. Enter the full article number of the desired device in the "Product" field, and confirm with the Enter key.
2. Click the "CAx data link.



List of abbreviations

A

A.1 List of abbreviations

Table A- 1 Guide to the abbreviations

Abbreviation	Term
AM	Analog module
AS	Alarm switch
ATEX	"Atmosphère explosible" according to ATEX Directive 2014/34/EU
AWG	American Wire Gauge
Acycl.	Acyclic
OP	Operator panel
OPD	Operator Panel with Display for SIMOCODE pro
OPO	Operational Protection Off
CPU	Central Processing Unit
DCM	Decoupling module
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DIP	Dual In-Line Package
DM	Digital module
DM-F	Fail-safe digital module (DM-FL or DM-FP)
DM-FL	Digital Module Failsafe Local
DM-FP	Digital Module Failsafe PROFIsafe
TO	Torque open
TC	Torque closed
DP	Distributed peripherals
DS	Data record
DTM	Device Type Manager
EEx	European Norm EXplosion-proof: Specifies the protection classes for categorizing motors for use in hazardous areas.
ex	Explosion-proof
EM	Ground-fault module
EMF	Electromotive force
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
F-CPU	Fail-safe CPU (controller)
FMS	Fieldbus Message Specification
BU	Basic unit
BU2+	2nd generation SIMOCODE pro V basic unit (for UM+)
BU2_MBR+	2nd generation SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU basic unit (for UM+)
GSD	Device master data
AUXS	Auxiliary switch

Abbreviation	Term
I&M	Identification and Maintenance
InM	Initialization module
IT	Isolation-Terre (isolation ground)
IM	Current measuring module
MM	Multifunction module
NTC	Negative temperature coefficient (resistance dependent on temperature)
OB	Organization block
OM	Object Manager for PROFIBUS DP slaves for integration into STEP 7
OSSD	Part of the electro-sensitive protective equipment (ESPE) that is connected to the machine control system and that switches to the OFF state if the sensor part is tripped during operation for the intended purpose.
PB	PROFIBUS
PCS	Process Control System
PDM	Process Device Manager
PELV	Protective Extra Low Voltage
PFD	Probability of failure of demand: Probability of dangerous failure of a safety function on demand
PFDavg	Average probability of failure of demand: Average probability of dangerous failure of a safety function on demand
PFHD	Probability of dangerous failure per hour: Average probability of hazardous failure occurring each hour
PG	Programming device
PL	Performance Level
PCS	Process Control System
PROFIBUS	Process fieldbus
PTC	Positive temperature coefficient (resistance dependent on temperature)
PZ	Pozidriv
FB	Feedback
FO	Feedback open
TPF	Test position feedback
FC	Feedback closed
SELV	Safety Extra Low Voltage
GF, CF	Group fault, control function
SIL	Safety Integrity Level
SFB	System function block
SFC	System function
PLC	Programmable logic controller
Th	Thermistor
TM	Temperature module
T_{OFDT}	Total one fault delay time (maximum response time when error is present)
T_{WCDT}	Total worst case delay time (maximum response time in error-free state)
UM	1st generation current / voltage measuring module
UM+	2nd generation current / voltage measuring module
UVO	Undervoltage off
LC	Local control
Cycl.	Cyclic

Glossary

0/4 to 20 mA monitoring

SIMOCODE pro supports two-phase monitoring of the analog signals of a transducer (standardized 0/4 - 20 mA output signal). The analog signals are fed to the "0/4 to 20 mA monitoring" function block via the analog module.

Addressing plug

The addressing plug is necessary to enable the hardware-based allocation of the PROFIBUS DP address to a basic unit without a PC / PG.

Analog module (AM)

The analog module provides a way of optionally extending the basic unit with analog inputs and outputs (0/4 - 20 mA). This makes it possible to measure and monitor any process variables that can be mapped onto a 0/4 to 20 mA signal. The automation system has free access to the measured process variables.

Application data unit (ADU)

Modbus application data unit.

ATEX

French abbreviation for "atmosphère explosible" (explosive atmosphere).

Synonym for the ATEX Directive 2014/34/EU.

Basic unit (BU)

The basic units are the fundamental components of the SIMOCODE pro system. Basic units are always necessary when using SIMOCODE pro.

Versions:

- SIMOCODE pro C basic unit: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro C device series for PROFIBUS DP. It contains the essential motor control and motor protection functions.
- Basic unit pro S: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro S device series for PROFIBUS DP. It is used in combination with a current measuring module and an optional operator panel.
- SIMOCODE pro V PB basic unit: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro V device series for PROFIBUS DP. It contains all functions and requirements regarding motor protection, motor control, diagnostics, and monitoring.

- SIMOCODE pro V basic unit Modbus RTU: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro V Modbus RTU device series for Modbus RTU. It contains all functions and requirements regarding motor protection, motor control, diagnostics, and monitoring.
- SIMOCODE pro V PN basic unit: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro V PN device series for PROFINET. It contains all functions and requirements regarding motor protection, motor control, diagnostics, and monitoring.
- SIMOCODE pro V EtherNet/IP basic unit: Basic component of the SIMOCODE pro V EherNet/IP device series. It contains all functions and requirements regarding motor protection, motor control, diagnostics, and monitoring.

Baud rate

The baud rate is the speed at which data is transferred and indicates the number of transmitted bits per second (baud rate = bit rate). For example, with PROFIBUS DP, baud rates between 9.6 kbaud and 12 Mbaud are possible.

Bus

A common transmission path with which all stations are connected. It has two defined ends. With PROFIBUS, the bus is a two-wire cable (copper cable) or a fiber optic cable.

Bus segment

PROFIBUS DP consists of at least one bus segment. A bus segment has at least two stations, one of which must be a DP master. A maximum of 32 stations can be connected to a bus segment.

Cascading input

Safe, 1-channel input of a safety relay, e.g. DM-F LOCAL and DM-F PROFIsafe. Internally, this input is evaluated like a sensor signal. If no voltage is present, the safety relay trips the enabling circuits (outputs) in a safety-related way.

CLASS

Unit for the trip class. Indicates the maximum tripping time in which SIMOCODE must trip at a current that is 7.2 times the value of the current setting I_s in a cold state (motor protection according to IEC 60947). If Class 10 is set for SIMOCODE pro, for example, it is ensured that the (cold) motor will switch off after 10 seconds if a current occurs that is 7.2 times the current setting. The trip class can be set to eight different settings ranging from Class 5 to Class 40.

Class 1 master

Active station on PROFIBUS DP. It is characteristically used for cyclic data exchange with other stations. Typical Class 1 masters include PLCs with a PROFIBUS DP connection.

Class 2 master

Optional station on PROFIBUS DP. Typical class 2 masters include:

- PC/PG with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)
- PDM (PCS7)
- PC with "SIMARIS manager" software (power management).

Connecting cable

Connecting cables are necessary for connecting the individual basic units with their current measuring modules and, if required, with their expansion modules or operator panels. They are available in various versions and lengths (ribbon cable 0.025 m, 0.1 m, 0.3 m, 0.5 m; round cable 0.5 m, 1.0 m, 2.5 m).

Notice

Maximum length of connecting cables:

The total length of all cables must not exceed 3 m on either of the system interfaces of the basic unit!

Contactor

Electromagnetically operated low-voltage switch with only one position of rest; it cannot be manually operated. Contactors can energize, carry, and deenergize currents in a circuit under normal operating conditions, including operational overload. The contact system consists of main and auxiliary contacts (NC, NO). Depending on the size of the contactor, the main contacts can switch several hundred amps while the auxiliary contacts are only rated for control currents of a few amps.

Control functions

Control functions (e.g. direct-on-line starters, reversing starters) are used for controlling load feeders. They are characterized by the following important features:

- Monitoring the switch-on / switch-off process (no current flows in the main circuit without the ON command)
- Monitoring the OFF state (no current flows in the main circuit without the ON command)
- Monitoring the ON status
- Tripping if a fault occurs.

Control stations

Control stations are places from which control commands are issued to the motor. The "Control Stations" function block is used for administration, switching and prioritization of these different control stations. SIMOCODE pro allows parallel administration of up to four different control stations. Dependent on the control function, up to 5 different control commands can be transmitted from every control station to SIMOCODE pro.

- Local control, in the direct vicinity of the motor. Control commands via pushbuttons.
- PLC/PCS, switching commands are issued by the automation system (remote).
- PC, control commands are issued via an operator control and monitoring station or via PROFIBUS DPV1 with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal).
- Operator panel / operator panel with display, control commands are issued via the buttons of the operator panel / operator panel with display in the switchgear cabinet door.

Cooling down period

The cooling down period is the amount of time that must elapse before an overload trip can be reset. This is usually 5 minutes. Supply voltage failures of SIMOCODE pro during this time extend the specified time correspondingly.

Cos phi monitoring

Cos phi monitoring monitors the load condition of inductive loads. The main field of application is for asynchronous motors in 1-phase or 3-phase networks with loads that fluctuate significantly. The power factor (cos phi) is measured by evaluating the phase displacement between the voltage and current in a phase.

Current measuring module (IM)

Current measuring modules are used together with the basic units. The current measuring module must be selected according to the current setting to be monitored (rated operating current of the motor). The current measuring modules cover current ranges between 0.3 A and 630 A, with intermediate transformers up to 820 A.

Current / voltage measuring module (UM, UM+)

The SIMOCODE pro V device series allows use of a current / voltage measuring module instead of a current measuring module. In addition to measuring the motor current, current / voltage measuring modules also enable:

- Monitoring of voltages up to 690 V
- Calculation and monitoring of power and power factor (cos phi)
- Monitoring of the phase sequence.

Current limit monitoring

Current limit monitoring is used for process monitoring. This enables incipient anomalies in the system to be detected in good time. If a current limit is exceeded but still below the overload limit, it can, for example, indicate a dirty filter on a pump, or an increasingly sluggish motor bearing. If the current limit is undershot, it can be the first sign of a worn-out drive motor belt.

Cyclic redundancy check (CRC)

Cyclic redundancy check for checking Modbus RTU transmission errors

Decoupling module

A module for connection between a current / voltage measuring module and the basic unit at the system interface when voltage and power measurements are implemented in non-grounded networks.

Device master data (GSD file)

Information on the input and output range, as well as the consistency of the cyclically transmitted data is defined in the device data file (GSD file), tested with the configuration telegram from the device and, if appropriate, declared to be valid. The GSD file is used for integrating the device into SIMATIC S7 or any DP standard master system (automation system).

Device name

Before an IO device can be addressed by an IO controller, it must have a device name because the IP address is permanently assigned to the device name. In the case of PROFINET, this method was chosen because names are easier to handle than complex IP addresses.

Assignment of a device name for a specific IO device is comparable to setting the PROFIBUS address on a DP slave.

An IO device does not have a device name when it is delivered. It can only be addressed by an IO controller once a device name has been assigned to it, e.g. for transmission of the configuration data (including the IP address) during startup or for exchanging useful data in cyclic operation.

Digital module (DM)

Digital modules offer the option of further increasing the types and number of binary inputs and outputs on SIMOCODE pro V as required. Up to two digital modules can be connected to one SIMOCODE pro V basic unit. All types can be combined with each other. SIMOCODE pro V can thus be extended to a maximum of twelve binary inputs and seven binary outputs.

DIP switch

Small switch used to make certain basic settings. The abbreviation stands for Dual In-line Package, a device package with two parallel rows of electrical connection pins.

DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe digital modules

The DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe fail-safe digital modules are used as safety relays in EMERGENCY STOP devices in accordance with EN 418 and in safety circuits in accordance with EN 60204 (11.98):

DM-F Local digital module:

For applications that require local safety-related tripping with EMERGENCY OFF buttons.

DM-F PROFIsafe digital module:

For applications that require decentralized safety-related tripping with EMERGENCY OFF buttons. A fail-safe SIMATIC controller applies the logical connection between the EMERGENCY OFF button and DM-F PROFIsafe digital module.

See manual "Fail-safe Digital Modules SIMOCODE pro Safety".

Door adapter

The door adaptor is necessary for making the system interface of a basic unit available at an easily accessible location (e.g. front panel), thus enabling fast parameterization.

DP master

A master that works with the DP protocol according to the EN 50170 standard, Volume 2, PROFIBUS. Cyclic send data is exchanged between the DP master and the DP slave once in every DP cycle. The DP master sends the cyclic receive data to SIMOCODE pro. In response, SIMOCODE pro sends the cyclic send data to the DP master.

DP slave/DP standard slave

A slave that is operated on PROFIBUS with the PROFIBUS DP protocol and works according to the EN 50170 standard, Volume 2, PROFIBUS.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is an information technology communication protocol. It enables assignment of the network configuration to clients by a server. DHCP was defined in RFC 2131 and was assigned the UPD ports 67 and 68 by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

Emergency start

Emergency start deletes the thermal memory from SIMOCODE pro each time it is activated. This allows the motor to be immediately restarted after an overload trip. This function can be used to:

- Enable an immediate restart/reset after an overload trip
- Influence the thermal memory (motor model) during operation, if required.

Since the emergency start is edge-triggered, this function cannot permanently affect the thermal motor model.

EMERGENCY STOP

Shutdown in case of an emergency according to EN 418 (ISO 13850).

An action in an emergency that is intended to stop a process or motion that would result in a hazard.

EMERGENCY STOP command device

Contact block ("EMERGENCY STOP" mushroom pushbutton according to EN EN 418 (ISO 13850), cable-operated switch with positive opening contacts according to EN 60204-1) that causes the process, machine or plant to be stopped when actuated in hazardous situations. This must have positive-opening contacts, be easy to reach and be tamper-proof.

EMERGENCY STOP device

Protective device that is operated in response to an emergency according to EN 418 (ISO 13850), EN 60204-1.

Enabling circuit

An enabling circuit is used to generate a safety-related output signal. From an external viewpoint, enabling circuits act as NO contacts (however, in terms of functionality, safety-related opening is always the most important aspect). A single enabling circuit, that is internally redundantly configured in the safety relay (two-channel) can be used for Category 3/4 according to EN 954-1 (ISO 13849-1).

EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP (EtherNet Industrial Protocol, often simply called EIP) is a real-time Ethernet that is used mainly in automation engineering. EtherNet/IP was developed by Allen-Bradley (belongs to Rockwell Automation) and was later handed over to the Open DeviceNet Vendor Association (ODVA) as an open standard. In 1998, a working group of ControlNet International designed a process for basing the already-published application protocol, Common Industrial Protocol, on Ethernet. Based on this process, EtherNet/IP was published as an open industrial standard in March 2000. ControlNet International (CI), the Open DeviceNet Vendor Association (ODVA) and the Industrial Ethernet Association (IEA) were involved.

Besides PROFINET and Modbus/TCP, EtherNet/IP is an Ethernet-based fieldbus that is currently widely spread.

Expansion modules

Expansion modules are intended as optional additions for the basic units. The following expansion modules are available:

- Digital module (DM)
- Analog module (AM)
- Ground-fault module (EM, EM+)
- Temperature module (TM)
- Multifunction module (MM).

All expansion modules are equipped with 2 system interfaces (incoming/outgoing) and removable terminals.

F_WD_Time

Monitoring time in the fail-safe PROFIsafe option. A valid, current safety message frame must be received from the F-CPU within this monitoring time. Otherwise, the PROFIsafe option goes to the safe state.

Factory settings

The factory settings are used to reset all parameters of a device to the default settings to which they were set at the factory. The factory settings can be restored using either the "TEST / RESET" button on the basic unit or via SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal).

Feedback circuit

A feedback circuit is used to monitor controlled actuators (e.g., relays or contactors with positively driven contacts). The evaluation unit can only be activated if the feedback circuit is closed.

Note:

The NC contacts of the relays to be monitored are connected in series and integrated into the feedback circuit of the safety relay. If a contact in the enabling current path is welded, the safety relay can no longer be activated because the feedback circuit remains in the open position.

Field/field level

The field or field level of an automation system contains the individual sensors and actuators, as opposed to the control level, which is located above it in the hierarchy.

Fieldbus

Industrial communication system that connects a large number of field devices such as probes (sensors), actuators and drives to a control device.

Function block

Defined group of functions that can be freely parameterized by the user and connected to other function blocks to create a complete feeder-specific logic system. This means conventional wired control circuits containing auxiliary relays, time relays, etc. can be completely replaced.

Function code (FC)

Identification of a function

Ground-fault module (EM, EM+)

The ground-fault module and the multifunction module enable implementation of a powerful external ground fault monitoring system in conjunction with the 3UL22 (3UF7 500-1AA00-0) and 3UL23 (3UF7 510-1AA00-0) residual current transformers. In addition to the internal ground-fault monitoring function which is supported by both device series, SIMOCODE pro can be extended by an additional and more precise external ground-fault monitoring system.

Ground-fault monitoring

See "Ground-fault monitoring."

Ground-fault monitoring

SIMOCODE pro acquires and monitors all three phase currents. By evaluating the summation current of the three current values, the motor feeder can be monitored for a possible residual current or ground fault. There is a difference between internal and external ground-fault monitoring:

Internal ground-fault monitoring:

Internal ground-fault monitoring via current measuring modules or current / voltage measuring modules is only possible for motors with a 3-phase connection in power systems that are either grounded solidly or with low impedance. The basic unit uses the total current to detect a possible residual current / ground-fault current.

External ground-fault monitoring with SIMOCODE pro V:

The external ground-fault monitoring using residual current transformer and ground-fault module is normally used for power systems that are grounded with high impedance, or in cases, in which precise detection of the ground-fault current is necessary, for example, for condition monitoring. The ground-fault module (EM) evaluates rated fault currents using an externally connected summation current transformer (e.g. 3UL23).

GSD file

The properties of a PROFINET device are described in a GSD (General Station Description) file that contains all the necessary information for configuration. You can use a GSD file to integrate a PROFINET device in exactly the same way as a PROFIBUS device into an automation system (SIMATIC S7 environment or any DP standard master system).

In the case of PROFINET IO, the GSD file is in XML format. The structure of the GSD file conforms to ISO 15734, the worldwide standard for device descriptions.

I&M data

Identification and maintenance data.

Information stored in a module that helps you to check the plant configuration, to locate hardware modifications in a plant, or to remedy faults in a plant. I&M data can be used to identify modules uniquely on the network.

I/O

The term I/O devices is used in automation engineering to refer to peripheral devices, for example, devices that are connected to centralized controls.

Independent operation

SIMOCODE pro protects and controls the motor feeder, independently of the automation system. Even if the automation system (PLC) fails, or if communication is disrupted, the motor feeder remains fully protected and controllable. SIMOCODE pro can be used without being connected to the communication bus. This can easily be connected later, if required.

Initialization module

Memory module permanently installed in the switchboard or the motor control center in which the device parameters of intelligent switching devices are stored.

The initialization module is used in motor control centers with a withdrawable design in which all functions concerning the motor feeder are fitted in an exchangeable withdrawable module.

The initialization module can be permanently installed in the switchboard and enables backup of all parameters of a system and completely automatic transmission to a new system, e.g. device replacement.

IP address

To enable a PROFINET device to be addressed as a node on Industrial Ethernet, this device also requires an IP address that is unique within the network. The IP address is made up of 4 decimal numbers with a range of values from 0 through 255. The decimal numbers are separated by a decimal point.

The IP address is made up of

- The address of the (sub)net and
- The address of the node (generally called the host or network node)

IT system

The IT system (FR Isolé Terre) is a specific type of ground connection for increased fail-safe protection in case of insulation faults.

Local Human Machine Interface (HMI) for SIRIUS devices

Human Machine Interface for a SIRIUS device or for several SIRIUS devices

Logic modules

Logical operations, time relay functions and counter functions are implemented using logic modules.

Low voltage

All voltage levels used for the distribution of electricity that are within a range whose upper limit in AC systems is generally 1000 V.

MAC address

Each PROFINET device is assigned a globally unique device identification at the factory. This 6-byte-long device identifier is the MAC address.

The MAC address is divided up as follows:

- 3 bytes for the manufacturer ID and
- 3 bytes device identifier (consecutive number).

The MAC address can generally be read from the front on the device,
e.g.: 08-00-06-6B-80-C0.

Master

PROFIBUS DP is based on a master-slave architecture. Telegrams are sent by the master to the addressed station (slave) and responded to by the slave.

Media redundancy

SIMOCODE pro V PN supports media redundancy according to the Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP). This function is configured using the configuration tool of the automation system, e.g. HW Config with STEP 7.

Memory module

The memory module is plugged into the system interface and is used for fast reading in or out of the entire SIMOCODE pro parameterization, e.g. if a unit is exchanged.

Note

The SIMOCODE pro C and SIMOCODE pro V basic units up to product version *E08* only support the memory module 3UF7900-0AA00-0. The basic units SIMOCODE pro S and SIMOCODE pro V as from product version *E09* also support the memory module 3UF7910-0AA00-0.

Modbus address table

Data with similar properties are combined in one of four address tables: Discrete inputs, coils, input register, holding register

Modbus RTU

Modbus RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) is a standard protocol for network communication and uses the electrical RS485 connection for serial data transmission between Modbus devices in the network.

Modbus RTU uses a master/slave network in which the entire communication is triggered by only one master device while the slaves can only respond to the request of the master. The master sends a request to a slave address and only this slave address responds to the command (exception: broadcast frames to slave address 0 which are not acknowledged by the slaves).

Monitoring functions

The following monitoring functions

- Ground-fault monitoring
- Current limit monitoring
- Voltage monitoring
- Cos phi monitoring
- Active power monitoring
- 0/4 to 20 mA monitoring
- Operation monitoring
- Temperature monitoring (analog)

Operate "in the background" in the same way as motor protection and motor control. They can be active or not, according to the control function selected.

Monitoring the number of starts

Monitoring the number of starts can protect system parts (motors and switching devices such as soft starters and converters) from too many start processes within a parameterizable time frame and thus prevent damage. This is particularly useful for commissioning or manual control.

Motor protection

The basic unit has several protection mechanisms for current-dependent motor protection:

- Overload protection
- Unbalance protection
- Stalled rotor protection
- Thermistor protection.

Motor stop time monitoring

SIMOCODE pro can monitor the stop times of a motor to avoid plant downtimes due to failed motors caused by either running too long (wearing out) or being stopped for too long.

Multifunction module

Universal module of the SIMOCODE pro S device series with the following functions:

- Digital module function with four digital inputs and two monostable relay outputs
- Ground fault module function with the possibility of implementing powerful external ground-fault monitoring in conjunction with the 3UL23 residual-current transformer
- Temperature module function with one input for connecting an analog PT100, PT1000, KTY83, KTY84 or NTC temperature sensor.

Network Time Protocol

Implementation of a TCP/IP protocol for time synchronization in networks. The NTP procedure uses hierarchical time synchronization, that is, an external clock (e.g. SICLOCK TM or a PC in the network) is used for synchronization.

Octet

Sequence of bytes. Octet n: string of n bytes.

Offset

A reference within an address table.

OPC Unified Architecture (UA)

OPC Unified Architecture (UA) is the next generation technology of the OPC Foundation for secure and reliable data transfer and defines access to industrial communication networks.

OPC UA client

An OPC UA client is a user program that accesses process data via the OPC UA interface. Access to the process data is made possible by the OPC UA server.

OPC UA server

The OPC server provides the OPC client with a wide range of functions with which it can communicate via industrial networks. SIMOCODE pro V PN provides extensive process data via OPC UA.

Operating hours monitoring

The motor operating hours monitoring function enables the operating hours (service life) of a motor to be recorded so that motor maintenance prompts can be generated in good time as applicable.

Operation monitoring

SIMOCODE pro can monitor the operating hours and stop times of a motor and restrict the number of startups in a defined time frame in order to avoid plant downtimes due to failed motors caused by running or being stopped for too long.

Operational Protection Off (OPO)

The "Operational Protection Off (OPO)" function block puts the positioner into a safe position and switches the motor off.

Operator panel with display (OPD)

The operator panel with display can be used as an alternative to the standard operator panel (OP). It displays the current measured values, operating and diagnostic data, status information for the motor feeder at the switchgear cabinet and the device-internal error log. It also contains all the status LEDs that are present on the basic unit and facilitates access to the system interface from outside the cabinet. Its keys can be used to control the motor and to navigate the display menu.

Operator panel (OP)

The operator panel controls the motor feeder from the switchgear cabinet. It contains all the status LEDs that are on the basic units, the "TEST/RESET" button and the external system interface.

Organization block

Organization blocks form the interface between the CPU operating system and the user program. The order in which the user program is processed is specified in the organization blocks.

Overload protection

SIMOCODE pro protects three-phase or AC motors in accordance with IEC 60947-4-1 requirements. The trip class can be set to eight different settings ranging from CLASS 5 to CLASS 40.

Pause time

The pause time is the specified time for the cooling down response of the motor when tripped under normal operating conditions (not in the case of an overload trip). After this interval, the thermal memory in SIMOCODE pro is erased and a new cold start is possible. This means that many startups can be performed in a short space of time.

PC cable

The PC cable is used to connect the serial interface of the PC to the system interface of a basic unit for device parameterization.

Note

PC cable variant

For SIMOCODE pro V PN, a serial PC cable 3UF7940-0AA00-0 as from product version *E02* or a USB PC cable 3UF7941-0AA00-0 can be used.

PELV

Protective Extra-Low Voltage. Protective measure against electric shock (formerly referred to as "protective extra low voltage with safe isolation").

In contrast to an SELV circuit, live parts and exposed conductive parts of the equipment may be grounded and connected to the protective conductor. Safe isolation means that the primary circuit of the transformer must be separated from the secondary circuit by double or reinforced insulation. PELV is used whenever operational reasons dictate that live conductors of the low voltage or bodies of the equipment must be grounded. This is the case, for instance, if equipotential bonding is necessary to prevent sparking in containers or hazardous areas. However, owing to the chassis ground, dangerous leakage currents can flow through the body regardless of the low voltage if a fault occurs in the higher-level power system.

Use of power supply units according to IEC 60536, protection class III (SELV or PELV):

See Chapters "Safety-related tripping", "Fail-safe digital modules (DM-F)", and "DM-F Local and DM-F PROFIsafe digital modules".

Performance Level (PL)

Defined by standard EN ISO 13849-1 as "a discrete level specifying the ability of safety-related control parts to execute a safety function under anticipated conditions." Five performance levels are specified (a to e) with defined ranges of the probability of a dangerous failure per hour. PL "e" corresponds to SIL 3 and is specified as the highest level.

Performance Level (PL)

Defined by standard EN ISO 13849-1 as "a discrete level specifying the ability of safety-related control parts to execute a safety function under anticipated conditions." Five Performance Levels are specified (a to e) with defined ranges of the probability of a dangerous failure per hour. PL "e" corresponds to SIL 3 and is specified as the highest level.

Pozidriv (PZ)

Type of fixing screws and cross-tip screwdrivers.

Process Automation (PA)

Automation of continuous production processes. For instance, it controls production processes in the chemical industry or in water supply systems.

PROFIBUS

Process Fieldbus, a European process and fieldbus standard defined in the PROFIBUS standard (EN 50170, Volume 2, PROFIBUS). It specifies the functional, electrical and mechanical characteristics of a bit-serial fieldbus system.

PROFIBUS is a bus system that networks PROFIBUS-compatible automation systems and field devices at the cell and field level. PROFIBUS is available with the DP (= Distributed Peripherals), FMS (= Fieldbus Message Specification), PA (= Process Automation), or TF (= Technological Functions) protocol.

PROFIBUS User Organization (PNO) installation guidelines

The PROFIBUS DP / FMS installation guidelines published by the PROFIBUS User Organization must be complied with when installing PROFIBUS networks. These contain important information about cable routing and the commissioning of PROFIBUS networks.

PROFIBUS DP

PROFIBUS bus system with the DP (distributed I/Os - decentralized peripherals) protocol. The main task of PROFIBUS DP is to manage the fast, cyclic data exchange between the central DP devices and the I/O devices.

PROFIBUS DP interface

SIMOCODE pro has an integrated PROFIBUS DP interface (SUB-D socket or terminal connection on the basic units).

PROFIBUS DPV1

Extension of the DP protocol. It enables acyclic data exchange of parameter, diagnostic, receive and test data.

PROFIenergy

Profile for power management in production plants.

PROFIenergy uses the PROFINET communication protocol. It controls the power consumption of automation equipment in production via a PROFINET network.

PROFINET

PROFINET (Process Field Network) is the open Industrial Ethernet Standard from Profibus & Profinet International (PI) for automation.

Within the context of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA), PROFINET is the systematic development of the following systems:

- PROFIBUS DP, the established fieldbus
- Industrial Ethernet, the communications bus for the cell level.

Experiences from both systems have been and are being integrated in PROFINET.

PROFINET IO controller

Device via which the connected IO devices are addressed. This means the IO controller exchanges input and output signals with assigned field devices. The IO controller is often the controller on which the automation program runs.

PROFINET IO device

Distributed field device assigned to one of the IO controllers.

PROFINET IO Supervisor

PG/PC for commissioning and diagnostics.

PROFIsafe

The PROFIBUS safety profile specifies communication between fail-safe I/O devices and fail-safe controllers. It is based on the standards for safety-related applications as well as on the experience of PLC users and manufacturers who are members of PROFIBUS International (PI). The PROFIBUS safety profile has TÜV and BIA (Institute for Occupational Safety and Health of the German Social Accident Insurance) certification. The newest version of the PROFIsafe specification is the Profile for Safety Technology V1.11 specification, published in 07/2001.

Programmable logic controller (PLC)

Controller whose functionality is stored in the control equipment as a software program. The PLC comprises a CPU, memory, input/output modules, and an internal bus system. The I/O and the programming language are oriented toward control engineering needs.

Programming device

A compact and transportable PC, suitable for industrial purposes. Its distinguishing feature is the special hardware and software for SIMATIC programmable logic controllers.

Protection functions

The protection functions

- Overload protection
- Unbalance protection
- Stalled rotor protection
- Thermistor protection.

operate alongside motor control "at a higher level in the background." They can be active or not, according to the control function selected.

Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV)

Protective measure against electric shock (formerly referred to as "protective extra low voltage with safe isolation").

In contrast to an SELV circuit, live parts and exposed conductive parts of the equipment may be grounded and connected to the protective conductor. Safe isolation means that the primary circuit of the transformer must be separated from the secondary circuit by double or reinforced insulation. PELV is used whenever operational reasons dictate that live conductors of the low voltage or bodies of the equipment must be grounded. This is the case, for instance, if equipotential bonding is necessary to prevent sparking in containers or hazardous areas. However, owing to the chassis ground, dangerous leakage currents can flow through the body regardless of the low voltage if a fault occurs in the higher-level power system.

Protocol data unit (PDU)

Consists of function code and the data

Record

Record.

RT communication

As a motor management system, SIMOCODE pro V PN does not have any time-critical communication functions itself but it does support the PROFINET hardware RT used. The integrated 2-port switch is therefore used to forward RT data.

SELV

Safety extra low voltage Low electric voltage that offers significant protection against electric shock due to its low value and insulation. For certain requirements, the highest voltage must be defined below 50 V AC or 120 V smoothed DC, especially if direct contact with live parts is permissible. At a nominal voltage of 120 V, the greatest peak value in a smoothed DC system is 140 V, and at a nominal voltage of 60 V it is 70 C.

Use of power supply units according to IEC 60536, protection class III (SELV or PELV):

SFB

System function block A block integrated in the S7 CPU operating system that can be called like a function block (FB) in the user program if required.

SFC

System function:

A function integrated in the S7 CPU operating system that can be called like a function (FC) in the user program if required.

Shared device

Shared device is the function with which an IO device is used simultaneously by two or more IO controllers.

Use of this function depends on whether the automation system supports the function. It is configured using the configuration tool of the automation system, e.g. with STEP 7 HW Config.

SIL (Safety Integrity Level)

Measure, defined in IEC 61508, for the safety-related performance of an electrical or electronic control device.

The IEC standard defines four SIL levels SIL1 to SIL4, which are defined as the safety implementations of electrical and electronic equipment. The SIL value describes the specified safety function in the event of a fault.

SIMATIC

Name of products and systems for industrial automation from Siemens AG.

SIMATIC PDM

You can also configure SIMOCODE pro using the SIMATIC PDM (Process Device Manager) software. The following options exist:

- SIMATIC PDM as a standalone program
- PDM integrated in STEP 7

SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal)

Standard parameterization software for SIMOCODE pro.

SIMOCODE pro S7 slave

The SIMOCODE pro S7 slave is a special slave with the following characteristics:

- It supports the S7 model (diagnostic interrupts, process interrupts)
- It can be parameterized

SIMOCODE pro object manager (OM)

Part of SIMOCODE ES. When SIMOCODE ES and SIMOCODE pro object manager are installed on a PC/PG, SIMOCODE ES can be called directly from STEP 7 HW Config. This enables simple and universal SIMATIC S7 configuration.

SIMOCODE pro PCS-7 library

The SIMOCODE pro PCS 7 library is used to connect SIMOCODE pro to the SIMATIC PCS 7 process control system. It contains:

- The diagnostics and driver modules corresponding to the diagnostics and driver concept of SIMATIC PCS 7
- The elements (symbols and faceplates) necessary for operating and monitoring.

Service packs and hot fixes:

The PCS 7 libraries are subject to continual updating and improvement. You can download the current service packs and hot fixes in the Industry Online Support.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

Network protocol for monitoring and controlling network elements (e.g. switches).

Slave

PROFIBUS DP is based on a master-slave architecture. Telegrams are sent by the master to the addressed station (slave) and responded to by the slave.

Stalled rotor protection

If the motor current rises above an adjustable stalled rotor protection level (current threshold), a defined and delayable response can be configured for SIMOCODE pro. In this case, for example, the motor can be shut down independently of the overload protection. The stalled rotor protection is only active after the parameterized class time has elapsed, e.g. for Class 10 after 10 seconds, and prevents unnecessarily high thermal and mechanical loads as well as premature aging of the motor.

Standard function

Standard functions are typical motor functions that can be activated according to need and, as applicable, individually set for each motor feeder. They are already available, work independently of the selected control function and can be used/activated as optional additions.

Station

A device that can send, receive or amplify data via the bus, e.g. master, slave.

Statistical data

SIMOCODE pro makes statistical data available, which can be read out, for example, with SIMOCODE ES (TIA Portal) under Commissioning → Service Data / Statistical Data.

STEP7

The basic STEP 7 software is the standard tool for the SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC C7, and SIMATIC WinAC automation systems.

Stop category 0

Non-controlled shutdown by immediately switching off the power to the machine's drive elements.

System interface cover IP54

Cover to protect the system interface on the door adaptor or on the operator panel/operator panel with display from soiling or to seal it.

Temperature module (TM)

The temperature module offers the option of expanding the SIMOCODE pro V device series by an analog temperature monitoring system. With this, up to three analog sensor measuring circuits (two-wire or three-wire systems) can be connected. The temperatures recorded can be fully integrated into the process, can be monitored and are also available for a higher-level automation system. You can, for example, implement analog temperature monitoring of the motor windings, bearings, coolant or gearbox oil. SIMOCODE pro V supports various sensor types (NTC, KTY83/84, PT100 and PT1000) for use with solid, liquid, or gaseous media.

Temperature monitoring

See temperature module (TM).

Terminal block

Insulating part comprised of one or more terminals, insulated from one another, for mounting on a strip.

Test Position Feedback (TPF)

If the motor feeder is in the test position, its main circuit is isolated from the network. However, the control voltage is connected.

The "cold run" function test is performed with the feeder in this state. This means the motor feeder is tested without a current in the main circuit.

Thermistor protection

SIMOCODE pro V provides the option of connecting thermistor sensors (binary PTC) for monitoring the motor temperature.

TN-C system

In a TN-C system (FR Terre Neutre Combiné) 1 wire is used simultaneously as a protective earth (PE) and neutral wire (N).

TN-S system

In a TN-S system (FR Terre Neutre Séparé) the neutral wire and the protective earth are led separately from the transformer up to the appliance.

Trip class

See "Class".

Unbalance protection

The extent of the phase unbalance can be monitored and transmitted to the control system. A definable and delayable response can be triggered when an adjustable limit has been overshot. If the phase unbalance is more than 50 %, the tripping time is also automatically reduced in accordance with the overload characteristic since the heat generation of the motors increases in asymmetrical conditions.

Universal Current (UC)

Universal current. Property of devices that can be operated with both AC and DC.

USB PC cable

The USB-PC cable is used to connect the USB interface of the PC to the system interface of a basic unit for device parameterization.

Voltage monitoring

See monitoring voltage

Voltage monitoring

SIMOCODE pro supports two-phase undervoltage monitoring of either a three-phase network or a one-phase network for freely selectable limits, direction of rotation (for AC) or readiness to start. The response of SIMOCODE pro on reaching a prewarning level or trip level can be freely parameterized and delayed. Voltage measurement is performed using current / voltage measuring modules.

Win SIMOCODE-DP converter

Software tool for converting "old" Win SIMOCODE-DP parameter files (3UF5 device series) into SIMOCODE ES parameter files for SIMOCODE pro.

Y connecting cable

Connecting cable with which a connection can be made via the system interface from a SIMOCODE pro basic unit to both an initialization module and a current measuring module.

Index

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

Y